

Owner's Manual

LC 500 / LC 500h



©2025 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine <hybrid system>, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, light bulbs)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

For your information 6
Reading this manual 11
How to search 12
Pictorial index 14

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 30
For safe driving 31
Seat belts 33
SRS airbags (except Convertible) 38
SRS airbags (Convertible) 46
Pop Up Hood 52
Active roll bar (Convertible) 54
Exhaust gas precautions 57

1-2. Child safety
Riding with children 58
Child restraint systems (except Convertible) 58
Child restraint systems (Convertible) 70

1-3. Emergency assistance
Lexus Connected Services 83

1-4. Hybrid system
Hybrid system (LC500h) 87
Hybrid system precautions (LC500h) 90

1-5. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system <Immobilizer system> 95
Double locking system 96
Alarm 97

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 102
Gauges and meters 108
Multi-information display 112
Head-up display 118
Energy monitor/consumption screen 123

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information
Keys 128

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Doors 132
Trunk 136
Smart entry & start system 140

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 146
Driving position memory 148
Head restraints 152

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 154
Inside rear view mirror 155
Outside rear view mirrors 156

3-5. Opening, closing the windows
Power windows 159
Soft top roof (Convertible) 163

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 174
Cargo and luggage 181
Trailer towing 182

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch (LC500) 183
Power (ignition) switch (LC500h) 186
EV drive mode (LC500h) 190
Automatic transmission (LC500) 192
Hybrid transmission (LC500h) 199
Turn signal lever 206
Parking brake 207
Brake Hold 210

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 212
AHB (Automatic High Beam) . 214
Windshield wipers and washer 217

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 221

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 224
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 229
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 239
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 248
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 251
Driving mode select switch 263
Lexus parking assist-sensor 264
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 271
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 275
Active rear wing 280
Fixed rear wing 283
Driving assist systems 284

4-6. Driving tips

Hybrid electric vehicle driving tips (LC500h) 291
Winter driving tips 293

5 Interior features

5-1. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge 296

5-2. Using the air conditioning system

Automatic air conditioning system 298
Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators/neck heaters 305

5-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 308

5-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 311
Trunk features 313

5-5. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 315

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 320
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 324

Cleaning the artificial leather (Alcantara®) 330

6-2. Matte clear coat care guide

Basic knowledge about matte clear coat 332

Washing your vehicle (vehicles with matte clear coat) 336

Frequently Asked Questions (vehicles with matte clear coat) 338

6-3. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 341

6-4. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 343

Hood 345

Positioning a floor jack 345

Engine compartment 347

12-volt battery 354

Tires 357

Replacing the tire 364

Tire inflation pressure 371

Wheels 372

Air conditioning filter 373

Electronic key battery 375

Checking and replacing fuses 377

Light bulbs 380

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 382

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 382

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising 383

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 385

If you think something is wrong 389

Fuel pump shut off system (LC500) 390

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 391

If a warning message is displayed 399

If you have a flat tire 405

If the engine will not start (LC500) 406

If the hybrid system will not start (LC500h) 407

If you lose your keys 409

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 409

If the electronic key does not operate properly 410

If the 12-volt battery is discharged 412

If the soft top roof cannot be closed (Convertible) 420

If your vehicle overheats (LC500) 428

If your vehicle overheats (LC500h) 430

If the vehicle becomes stuck 434

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 436

Fuel information 446

8-2. Customization
Customizable features 447
8-3. Items to initialize
Items to initialize 459

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 462
Alphabetical index 465

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Also, remodeling like this will have an effect on advanced safety equipment such as Lexus Safety System + and there is a danger that it will not work properly or the danger that it may work in situations where it should not be working.

Cyber Attack Risk

Installing electronic devices and radios increases the risk of cyber attacks through the installed parts, which may lead to unexpected accidents and leakage of personal information. Lexus does not make any guarantees for problems caused by installing non-genuine Lexus products.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Hybrid system
- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injec-

tion system

- Lexus Safety System +
- Anti-lock brake system
- Vehicle dynamics integrated management
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus dealer.

LC500h: High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid electric vehicles emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as the conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances despite of their electromagnetic shielding.

LC500h: Unwanted noise may occur in the reception of the radio frequency transmitter (RF-transmitter).

Vehicle data recordings

The vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed / Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems
- Images from the cameras
  Your vehicle is equipped with cameras. Contact your Lexus dealer for the location of recording cameras.

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

- Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

- Recorded image information can be erased by your Lexus dealer.

The image recording function can be disabled. However, if the function is disabled, data from when the system operates will not be available.

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

- Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed

and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

"QR Code"

The word "QR Code" is registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and other countries.

Caution symbols attached to the high voltage components

High voltage components, such as the power control unit, may have labels attached indicating care required.

Each caution symbol indicates the following:

Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates danger
	Indicates high voltage part
	Indicates not to touch
	Indicates high temperature part

WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

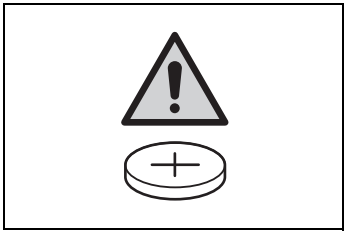
■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

WARNING

■ General precaution regarding a coin battery and button battery



This product contains a coin battery or button battery.

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Keep away new and removed batteries from children.
- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- If a battery is swallowed, it may cause severe chemical burns in as little as 2 hours and may result in death or serious injury.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.

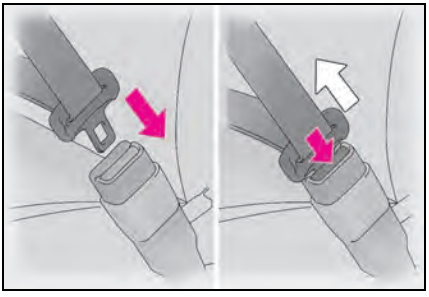
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual

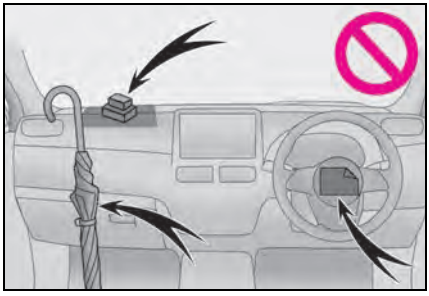
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	CAUTION: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
1 2 3...	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means **Do not**, **Do not do this**, or **Do not let this happen**.

Different writing styles for gasoline and hybrid electric vehicles

Information for hybrid electric vehicles is written in brackets next to the information for gasoline vehicles

Example

Turn the engine switch[*1] <power switch>[*2] to ON.

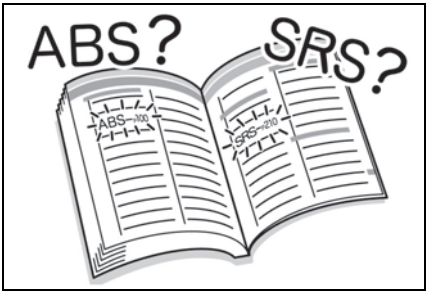
[*1]: LC500

[*2]: LC500h

How to search

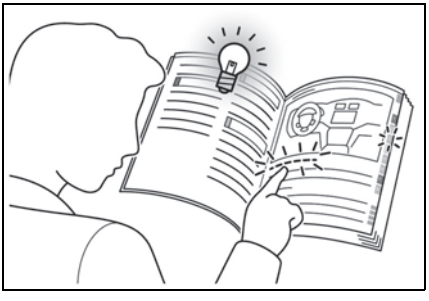
Searching by name

- Alphabetical index: →P.465



Searching by installation position

- Pictorial index: →P.14



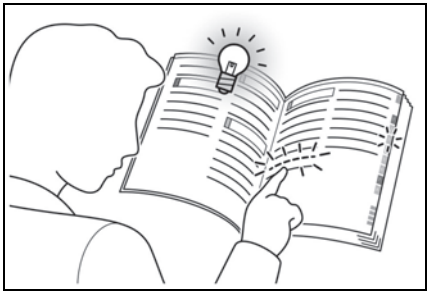
Searching by symptom or sound

- What to do if... (Troubleshooting): →P.462



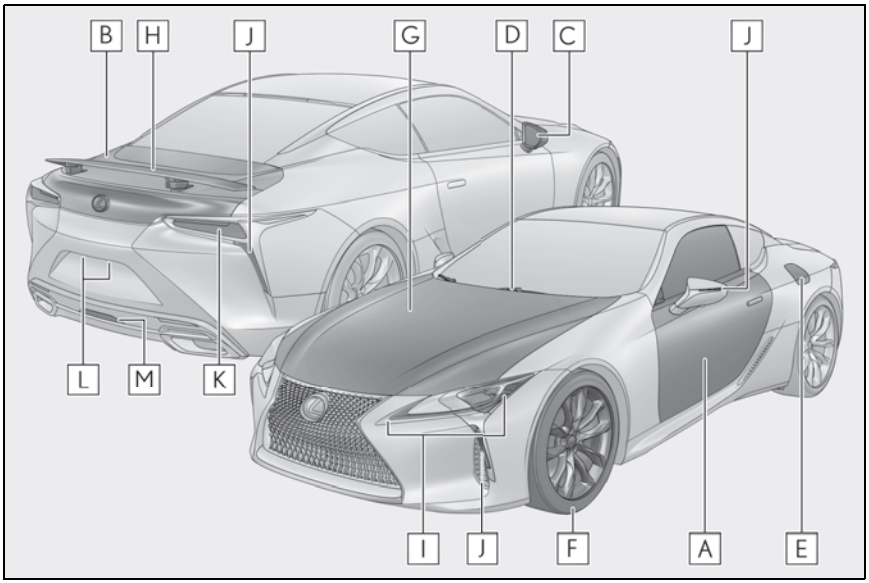
Searching by title

- Table of contents: →P.2



Pictorial index

■Exterior (except Convertible)



A Doors **P.132**
Locking/unlocking P.132
Opening/closing the side window P.159
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key P.411
Warning messages P.135

B Trunk **P.136**
Opening from inside the cabin P.138
Opening from outside P.138
Opening by using the mechanical key P.412
Warning messages P.135

C Outside rear view mirrors **P.156**
Adjusting the mirror angle P.156
Folding the mirrors P.157
Driving position memory P.148
Defogging the mirrors P.299

D **Windshield wipers** **P.217**
Precautions against winter season P.293
Precautions against car wash P.322

E **Fuel filler door** **P.221**
Refueling method P.221
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity P.438

F **Tires** **P.357**
Tire size/inflation pressure P.444
Winter tires P.293
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system P.357
Coping with flat tires P.405

G **Hood** **P.345**
Opening P.345
Engine oil P.439
Coping with overheating P.428, 430
Warning messages P.399

H **Active rear wing*** **P.280**
Fixed rear wing* **P.283**

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P.380, Watts: P.445)

I **Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights/cornering lights** **P.212**

J **Turn signal lights** **P.206**

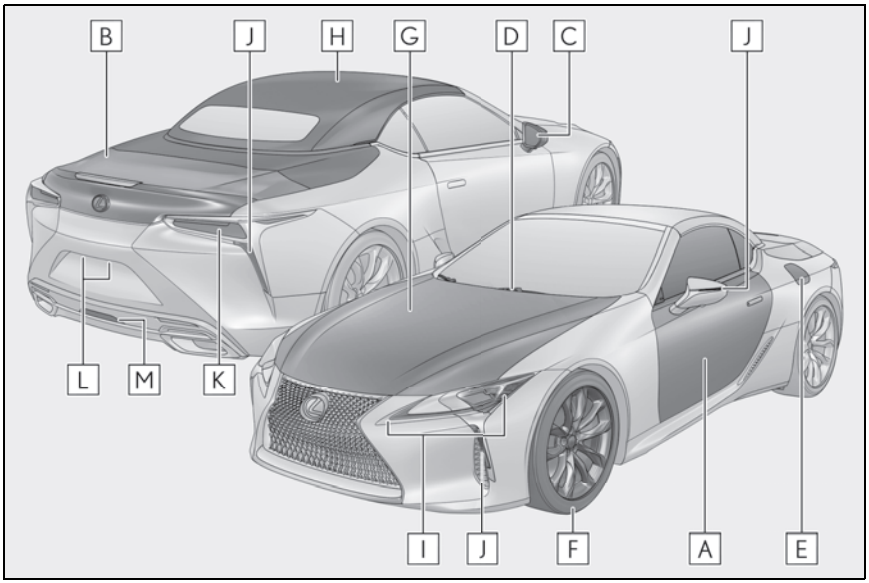
K **Tail lights** **P.212**
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal P.285

L **License plate lights** **P.212**

M **Back up lights**
Shifting the shift lever to R P.193, 200

*: If equipped

■Exterior (Convertible)



A Doors **P.132**
Locking/unlocking P.132
Opening/closing the side window/rear quarter window P.159
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key P.411
Warning messages P.135

B Trunk **P.136**
Opening from inside the cabin P.138
Opening from outside P.138
Opening by using the mechanical key P.412
Warning messages P.135

C Outside rear view mirrors **P.156**
Adjusting the mirror angle P.156
Folding the mirrors P.157
Driving position memory P.148
Defogging the mirrors P.299

D **Windshield wipers** **P.217**
Precautions against winter season P.293
Precautions against car wash P.322

E **Fuel filler door** **P.221**
Refueling method P.221
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity P.438

F **Tires** **P.357**
Tire size/inflation pressure P.444
Winter tires P.293
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system P.357
Coping with flat tires P.405

G **Hood** **P.345**
Opening P.345
Engine oil P.439
Coping with overheating P.428
Warning messages P.399

H **Soft top roof** **P.163**
Opening/closing the soft top roof P.163
If it does not operate properly P.165
Cleaning P.320, 324

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P.380, Watts: P.445)

I **Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights/cornering lights** **P.212**

J **Turn signal lights** **P.206**

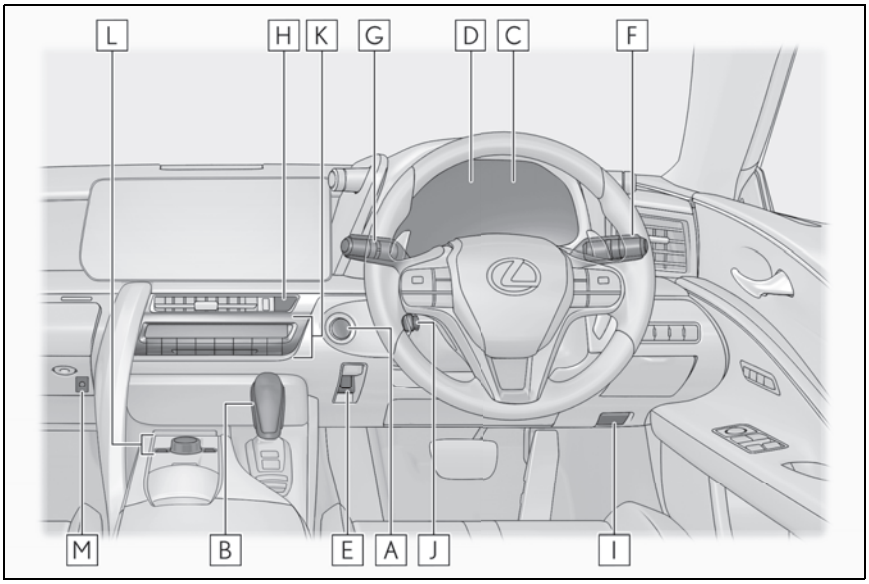
K **Tail lights** **P.212**
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal P.285

L **License plate lights** **P.212**

M Back up lights

Shifting the shift lever to R.....P.193

Instrument panel



A Engine switch <power switch> P.183, 186
Starting the engine <hybrid system>/changing the mode P.183, 186
Emergency stop of the engine <hybrid system> P.382
When the engine <hybrid system> will not start P.406, 407
Warning messages P.184, 187, 399

B Shift lever P.192, 199
Changing the shift position P.193, 200
Precautions against towing P.385

C Meters P.108
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lights P.108
Warning lights/indicator lights P.102
When the warning lights come on P.391

D Multi-information display P.112
Display P.112
When the warning messages are displayed P.399

E **Parking brake switch** **P.207**
Applying/releasing P.207
Precautions against winter season P.294
Warning buzzer/message P.394, 399

F **Turn signal lever** **P.206**
Headlight switch **P.212**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P.212
AHB (Automatic High Beam) P.214

G **Windshield wiper and washer switch** **P.217**
Usage P.217
Adding washer fluid P.353
Warning messages P.400
Headlight cleaners P.217

H **Emergency flasher switch** **P.382**

I **Hood lock release lever** **P.345**

J **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** **P.154**
Adjustment P.154
Driving position memory P.148

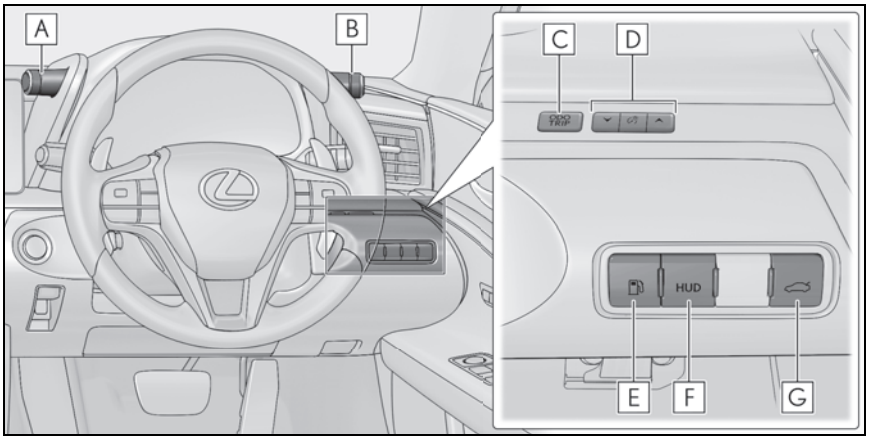
K **Air conditioning system** **P.298**
Usage P.298
Rear window defogger P.299

L **Audio system***

M **Trunk opener main switch** **P.139**

*: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■Switches



A Driving mode select switch P.263

B VSC OFF/snow mode switch..... P.197, 203, 286

C Odometer/trip meter/trip meter reset button P.111

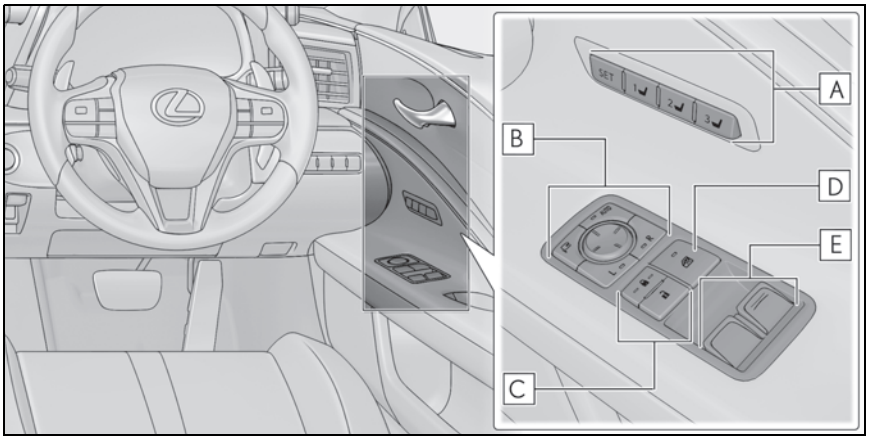
D Instrument panel light control switches P.111

E Fuel filler door opener switch..... P.222

F HUD (Head-up display) switch* P.118

G Trunk opener switch..... P.138

*: If equipped



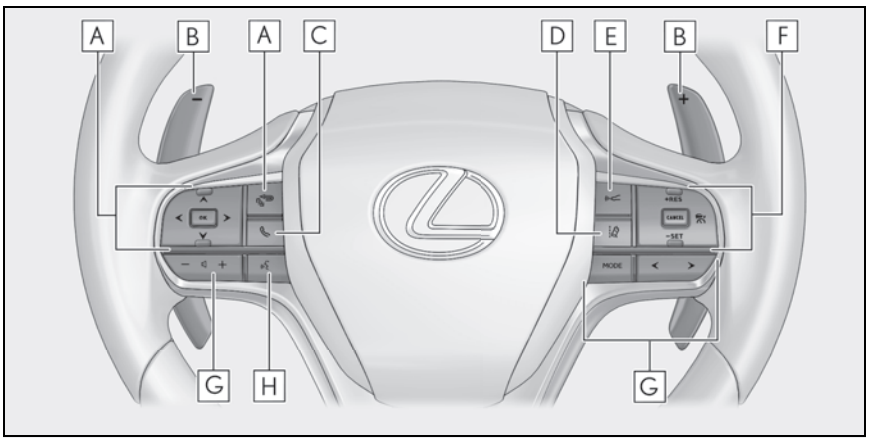
A Driving position memory switches P.148

B Outside rear view mirror switches P.156

C Door lock switches P.135

D Window lock switch P.162

E Power window switches P.159



A Meter control switches P.113

B Paddle shift switches P.197, 204

C Telephone switch*

D LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch P.239

E Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch P.256

F Cruise control switches

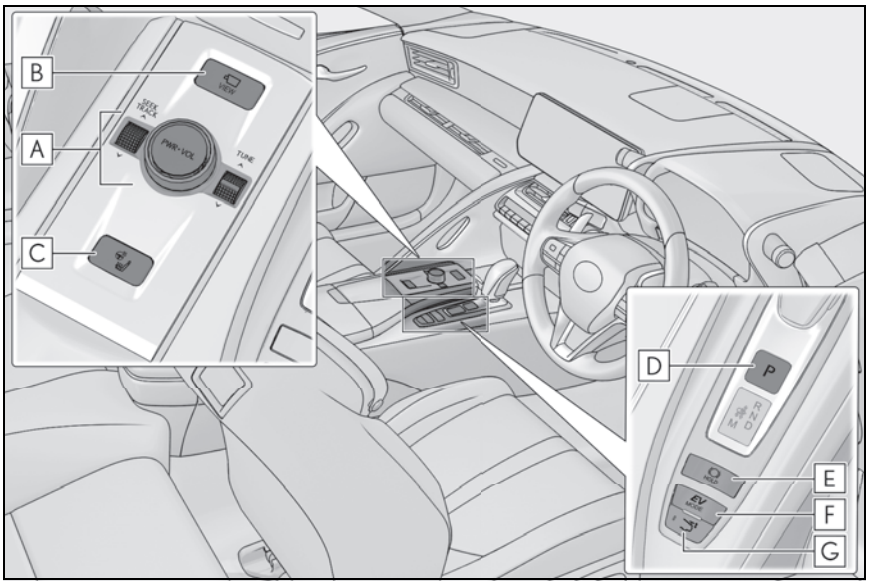
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range P.251

G Audio remote control switches*

H Talk switch*

*: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

▶ Except Convertible



A Audio control switches*1

B Camera switch*1

C Seat air conditioning display switch P.305

D P position switch P.193, 200

E Brake hold switch P.210

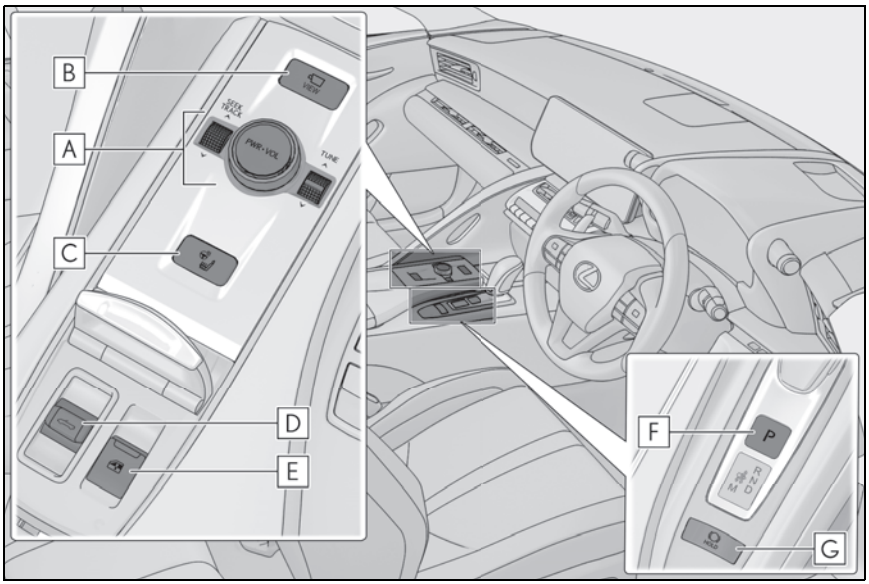
F EV drive mode switch*2 ..... P.190

G Active rear wing switch*2 ..... P.280

*1: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped

▶ Convertible



A Audio control switches*

B Camera switch*

C Seat air conditioning display switch P.305

D Roof switch P.163

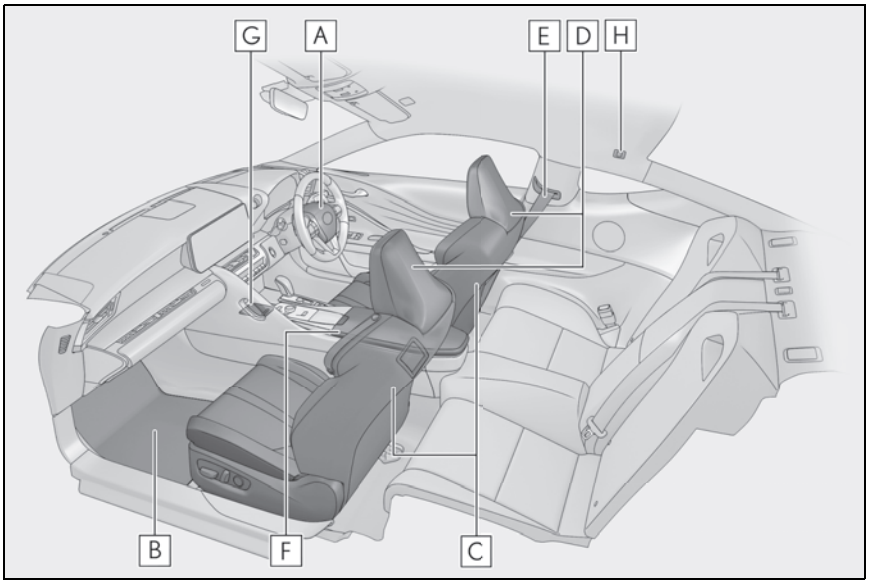
E All window control switch P.159

F P position switch P.193

G Brake hold switch P.210

*: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Interior



A SRS airbags P.38

B Floor mats P.30

C Front seats P.146

D Head restraints P.152

E Seat belts P.33

F Console box/auxiliary box P.312

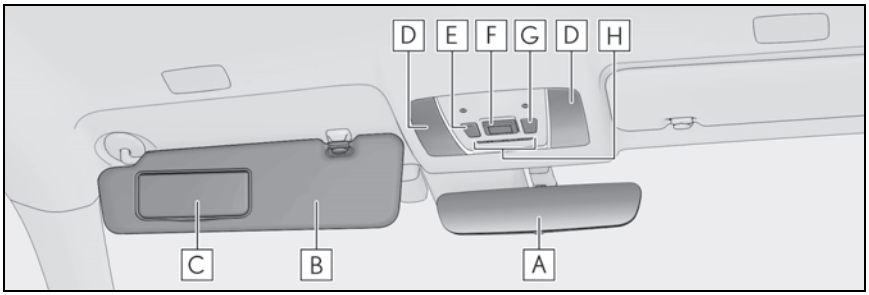
G Cup holder P.312

H Coat hooks* P.317

*: If equipped

■Ceiling

▶ Except Convertible



A Inside rear view mirror P.155

B Sun visors*1 ..... P.315

C Vanity mirrors P.315

D Personal lights P.310

E Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch P.98

F "SOS" button*2 ..... P.83

G Door-linked personal light switch P.310

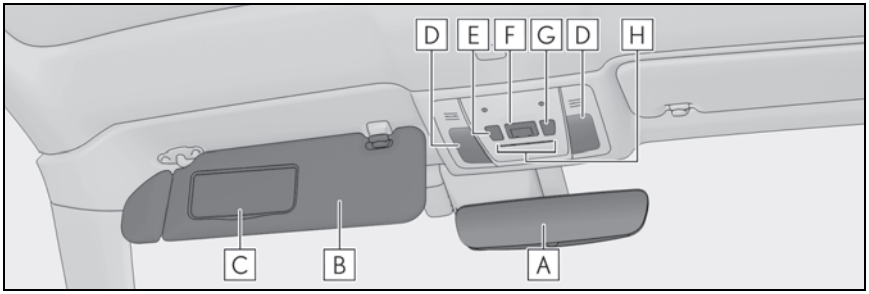
H Seat lights P.308
Shift lever light P.308

*1: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.60)



*2: If equipped

▶ Convertible



A Inside rear view mirror P.155
B Sun visors*1 ..... P.315
C Vanity mirrors P.315
D Personal lights P.310
E Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch P.98
F "SOS" button*2 ..... P.83
G Door-linked personal light switch P.310
H Seat lights P.308
Shift lever light P.308

*1: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.60)



*2: If equipped

1-1. For safe use

Before driving 30

For safe driving 31

Seat belts 33

SRS airbags (except Convertible) 38

SRS airbags (Convertible) 46

Pop Up Hood 52

Active roll bar (Convertible) 54

Exhaust gas precautions 57

1-2. Child safety

Riding with children 58

Child restraint systems (except Convertible) 58

Child restraint systems (Convertible) 70

1-3. Emergency assistance

Lexus Connected Services 83

1-4. Hybrid system

Hybrid system (LC500h) 87

Hybrid system precautions (LC500h) 90

1-5. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system <Immobilizer system> 95

Double locking system 96

Alarm 97

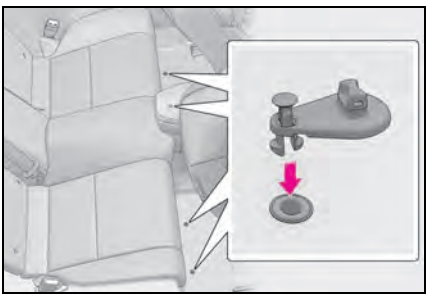
Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

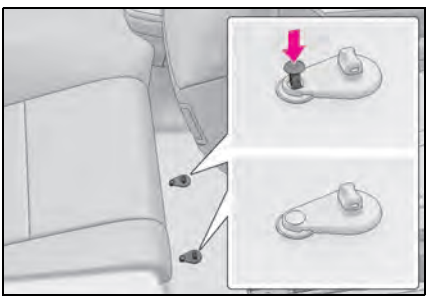
The retaining hooks (clips) installation method for the rear floor mats (if equipped)

Be sure to follow the procedure below to install and secure the rear floor mats.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the rear floor mat eyelets (4 tabs) as shown in the illustration.



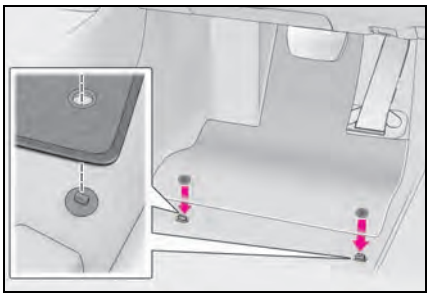
2 Secure the inserted retaining hooks (clips).



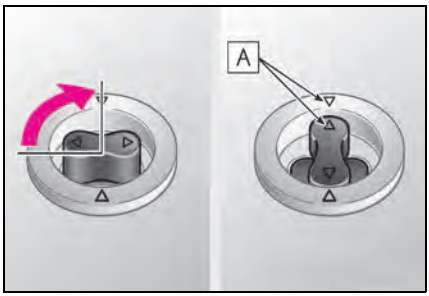
Installing floor mats (if equipped)

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



Always align the △ marks A .

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

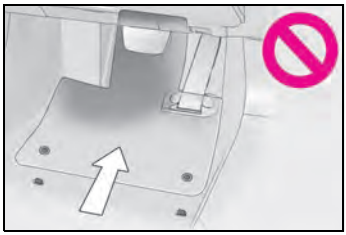
WARNING

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.

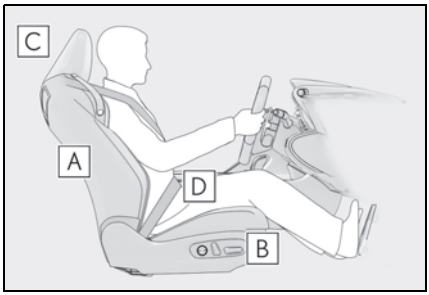


- With the engine <hybrid system> stopped and the shift position in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



A Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.146)

B Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.146)

C Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P.152)

D Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.34)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.34)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.58)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P.155, 156)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

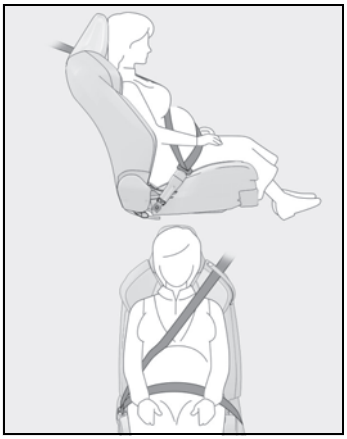
WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.34)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.34)

■ When children are in the vehicle

→P.58

■ Seat belt damage and wear

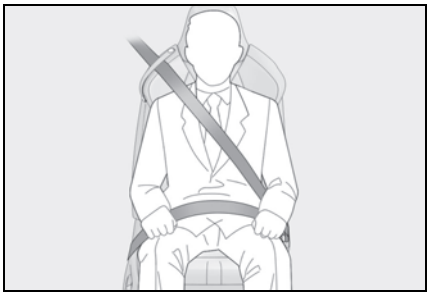
- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.

WARNING

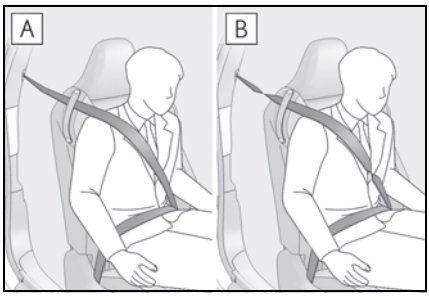
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.



- Do not twist the seat belt.



A Not twisted

B Twisted

Child seat belt usage

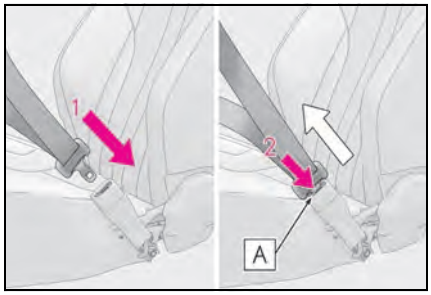
The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.58)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage.

Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 To release the seat belt, press the release button [A].

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

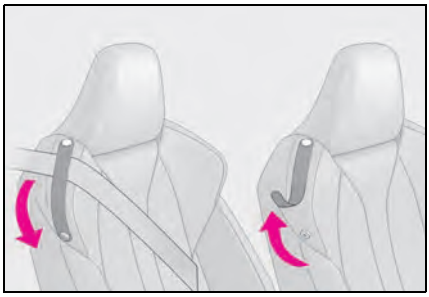
The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Seat belt guide (except Convertible)

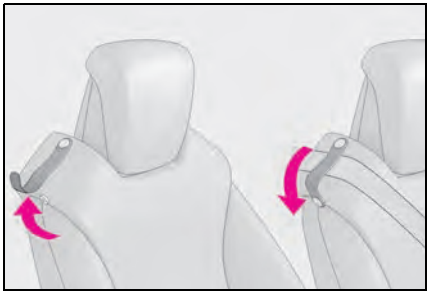
The front seats are equipped with guides to allow the seat belts to be extended easily. When it is difficult to extend the seat belt, pass the seat belt through the guide.

When getting into or out of a rear seat, release the seat belt from the guide.

▶ Vehicles with manual type head restraint



▶ Vehicles with power type head restraint



WARNING

■ When using the seat belt guide

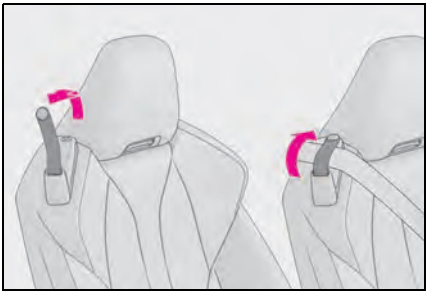
Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Always make sure that the belt is not twisted, and runs freely through the guide.
- Regardless of whether the guide is used or not, always secure the seat belt guide button.
- Do not hang from or pull the guide forcefully.

Seat belt guide (Convertible)

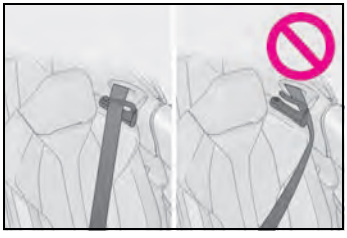
The front seats are equipped with guides to pass the seat belt. When using the seat belt, make sure to pass the seat belt through the guide.

When getting into or out of a rear seat, release the seat belt from the guide.



WARNING

■ **Seat belt guide**



Make sure to pass the seat belt through the seat belt guide when using the seat belt.

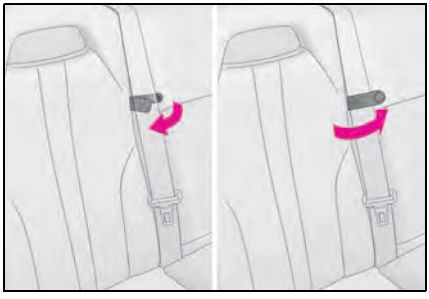
■ **When using the seat belt guide**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Always make sure that the belt is not twisted, and runs freely through the guide.
- Regardless of whether the guide is used or not, always secure the seat belt guide button.
- Do not hang from or pull the guide forcefully.

Rear seat belt holder (Convertible)

The rear seats are equipped with belt holders to secure the seat belt. When the seat belt flaps in the wind, secure the seat belt using the belt holder.



WARNING

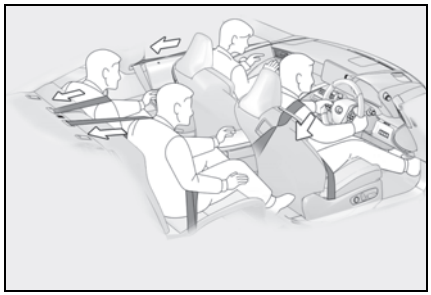
■ **When using the rear seat belt**

Make sure to release the seat belt from the belt holder.

Seat belt pretensioners

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.



Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

WARNING

Seat belt pretensioners

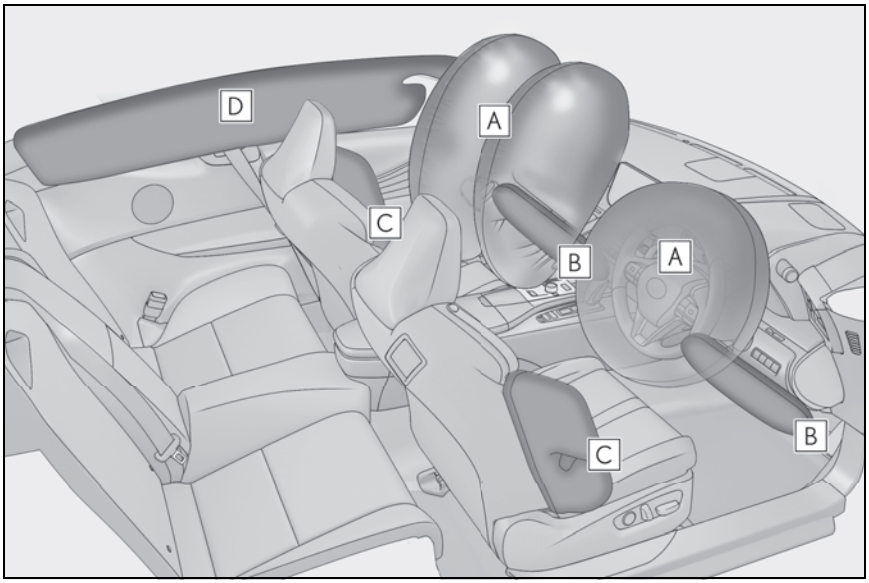
If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

SRS airbags (except Convertible)

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags



▶ SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

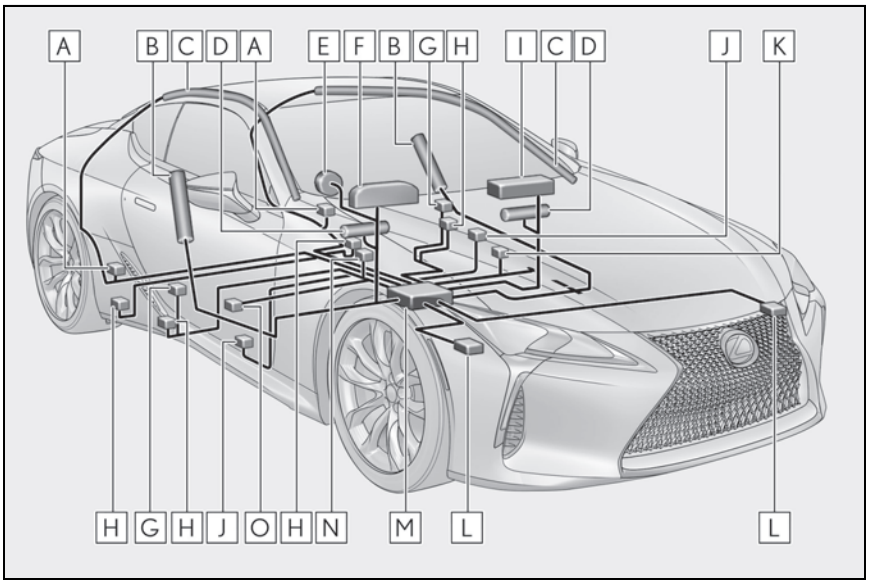
B SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

C SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

D SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants

■ SRS airbag system components



A Side impact sensors (rear)

B Side airbags

C Curtain shield airbags

D Knee airbags

E Driver airbag

F SRS warning light

G Side impact sensors (front)

H Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters

I Front passenger airbag

J Side impact sensors (door)

K Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch

L Front impact sensors

M Airbag sensor assembly

N Driver's seat belt buckle switch

O Driver's seat position sensor

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- LC500h: The hybrid system will be stopped and fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.93)
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.133)
- The brakes and stop lights will be controlled automatically. (→P.285)
- The interior lights will turn on automatically. (→P.309)
- The emergency flashers will turn on automatically. (→P.382)
- LC500: Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.390)
- Vehicle with Lexus Connected Services: If any of the following situations occur, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P.83)

• An SRS airbag is deployed.
• A seat belt pretensioner is activated.
• The vehicle is involved in a severe rear-end collision.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform). However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

• If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
• If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck

- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

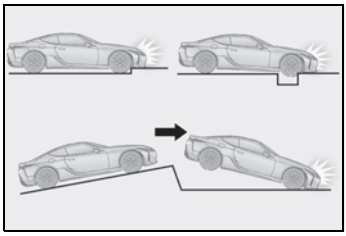
■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- Both SRS curtain shield airbags may deploy in the event of a severe side collision.
- Both SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

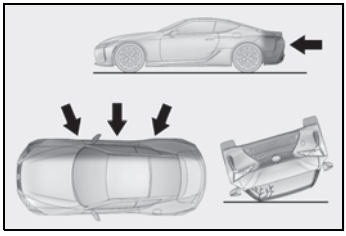
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

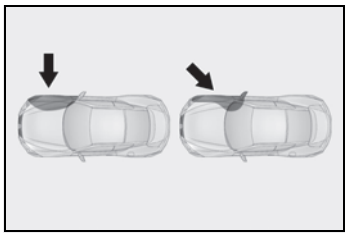
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags

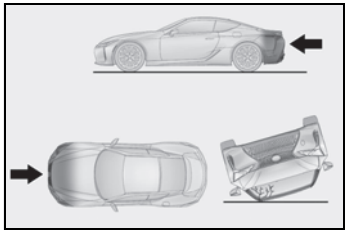
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



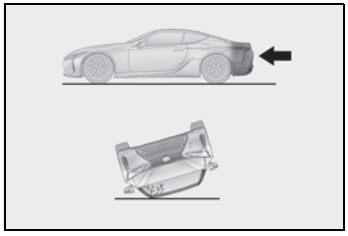
The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

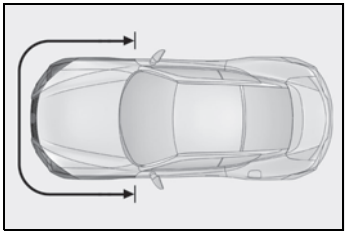
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



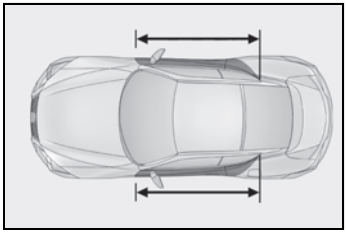
■ **When to contact your Lexus dealer**

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

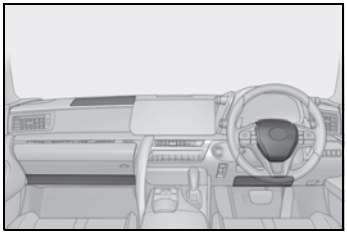
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



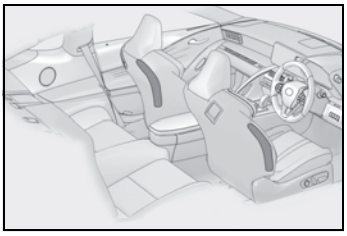
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



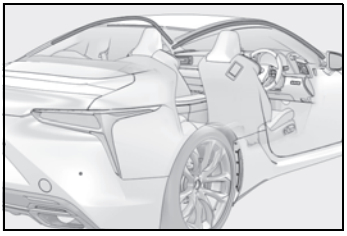
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the SRS curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



WARNING

■ **SRS airbag precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

WARNING

- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

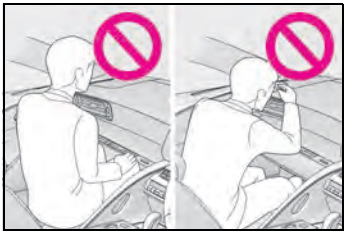
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

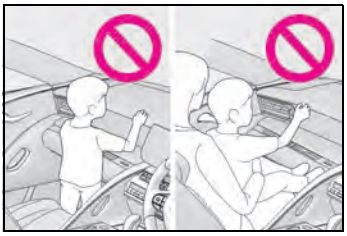
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.58)

- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.

WARNING

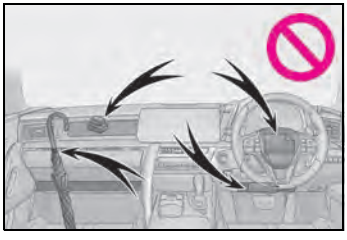
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



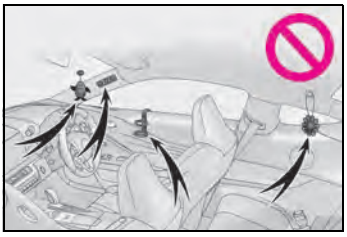
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side window, front or rear pillar and roof side rail.



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components or the doors. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

WARNING

- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

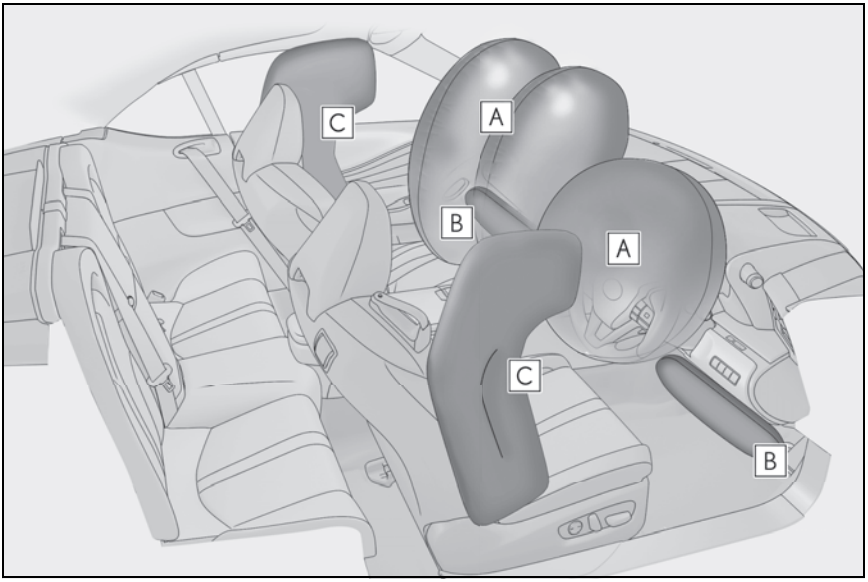
- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars, roof side rails, door panels, door trims or door speakers
- Modifications to the door panel (such as making a hole in it)
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

SRS airbags (Convertible)

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags



▶ SRS front airbags

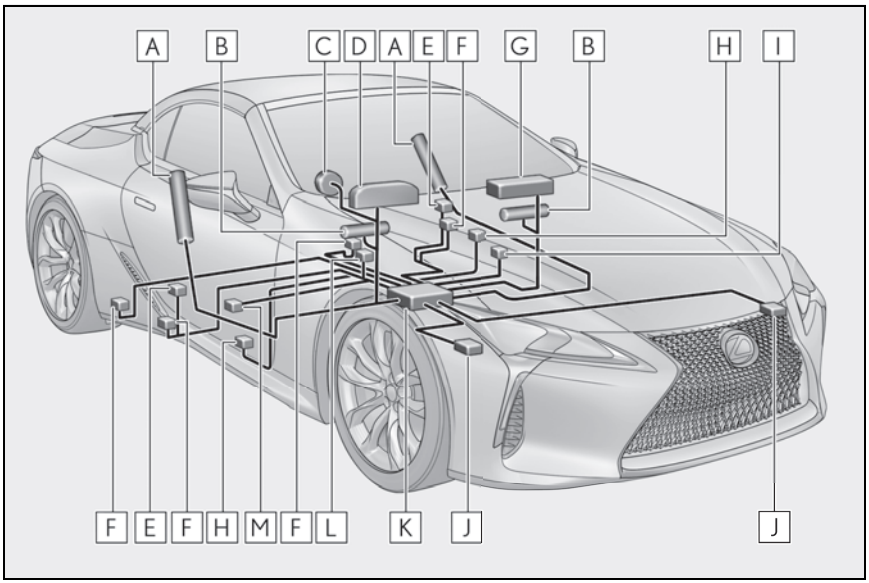
A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side airbags

C SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

■ SRS airbag system components



A Side airbags

B Knee airbags

C Driver airbag

D SRS warning light

E Side impact sensors (front)

F Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters

G Front passenger airbag

H Side impact sensors (door)

I Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch

J Front impact sensors

K Airbag sensor assembly

L Driver's seat belt buckle switch

M Driver's seat position sensor

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain

the motion of the occupants.

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.133)
- The brakes and stop lights will be controlled automatically. (→P.285)
- The interior lights will turn on automatically. (→P.309)
- The emergency flashers will turn on automatically. (→P.382)
- Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.390)
- Vehicle with Lexus Connected Services: If any of the following situations occur, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P.83)
  - An SRS airbag is deployed.
  - A seat belt pretensioner is activated.
  - The vehicle is involved in a severe rear-end collision.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform). However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:
  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

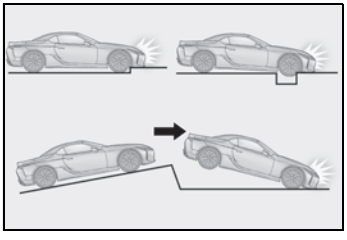
■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags)**

The SRS side airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

■ **Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision**

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

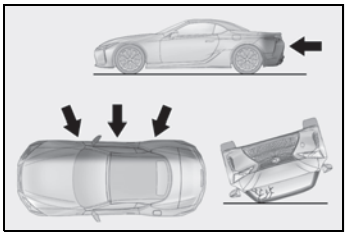
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

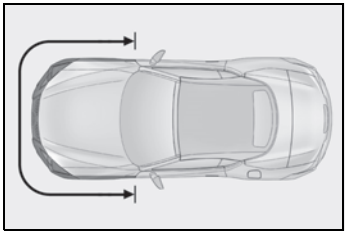
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



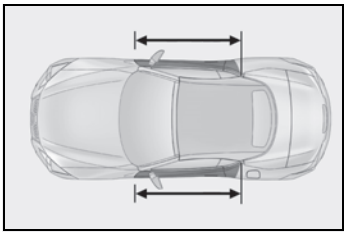
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

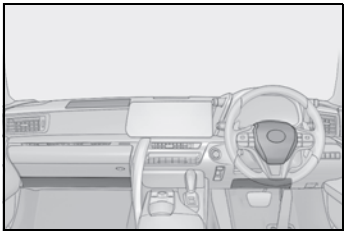
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



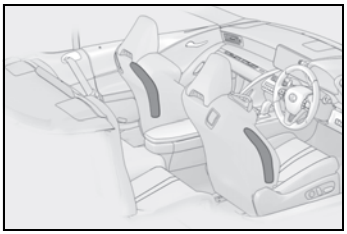
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



WARNING

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

WARNING

- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

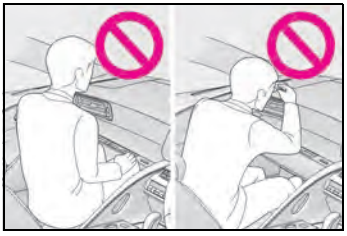
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

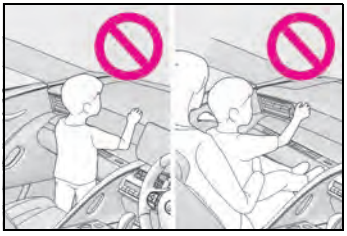
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.

- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.70)

- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.

- Do not lean against the front door.

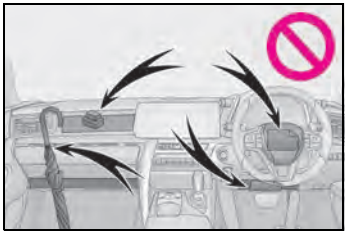


WARNING

- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.
These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield and side window.



- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.

- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components or the doors.
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.

- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.

- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so.
Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags

- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, door panels, door trims or door speakers

- Modifications to the door panel (such as making a hole in it)

WARNING

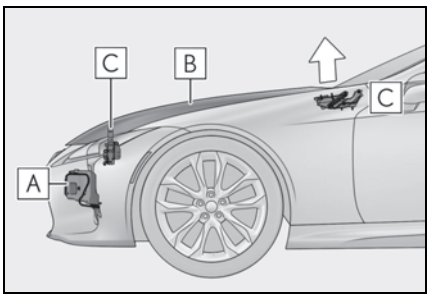
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, or front bumper
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows, winches or roof luggage carrier
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

Pop Up Hood

In the event of a frontal collision with a body, such as a pedestrian, the Pop Up Hood system raises the hood to reduce the possibility of a serious impact to the pedestrian's head area by adding clearance to the engine compartment.

When the sensors located at the back of the front bumper detect a frontal impact with a body, such as a pedestrian, which meets or exceeds the threshold level while the vehicle is being driven within the operational speed range, the system operates.

System components



A Sensors

B Hood

C Lifters

Pop Up Hood precautions

- Before scrapping your vehicle, make sure to contact your Lexus dealer.
- The Pop Up Hood system cannot be reused once it has operated. Have it

replaced by your Lexus dealer.

Pop Up Hood operational conditions

The Pop Up Hood will operate when the vehicle detects an impact such as the following:

- The front bumper detects a frontal impact equivalent to or greater than that of a pedestrian while the vehicle being driven within the operational speed range of approximately 25 to 55 km/h (16 to 34 mph). (The system is operated by an impact of threshold level or greater, even in the case of a minor collision that may not leave a trace on the front bumper. Also, depending on the impact conditions or vehicle speed, the system may operate by a collision with a light or small object or a small animal.)
- In other situations such as the following, the system may operate when an impact is applied to the lower part of the vehicle or front bumper:
  - Colliding with a curb
  - Falling into a deep hole
  - Landing hard
  - Hitting the slope of a parking lot, an undulating road, a protruding object or falling object

Conditions under which the Pop Up Hood may not operate properly

- If a pedestrian collides with the right or left corner of the front bumper or the side of the vehicle. As such impacts may be difficult to detect, the system may not operate.
- If the vehicle speed is not detected correctly, such as if the vehicle is sliding sideways, the system may not operate properly.

Conditions under which the Pop Up Hood will not operate

The Pop Up Hood will not operate in the following situations:

- Colliding with a lying person
- A frontal impact applied to the front bumper while driving at speeds outside of the operational speed range
- A side impact or rear impact
- A vehicle rollover (In some accident situations, the Pop Up Hood may operate.)

WARNING

When the Pop Up Hood is operated

- Do not pull the hood lock release lever. Doing so after the Pop Up Hood has operated will further raise the hood and may cause an injury. Do not drive with the hood raised, as doing so may block the driver's vision, possibly causing an accident.
- Do not forcibly push down the hood. As the popped up hood cannot be lowered by hand, doing so may deform the hood or cause an injury.
- If the Pop Up Hood has operated, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer. If the Pop Up Hood has operated, stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not touch the lifters immediately after the Pop Up Hood has operated, as the lifters may be hot and burn you.

NOTICE

Pop Up Hood precautions

- Make sure to close the hood before driving, as the system may not operate properly if the hood is not fully closed.
- Make sure that all 4 tires are of the specified size and inflated to the specified tire pressure. If tires of a different size are used, the system may not operate properly.
- If something has hit the area around the front bumper, the sensors may be damaged even if the Pop Up Hood has not operated. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

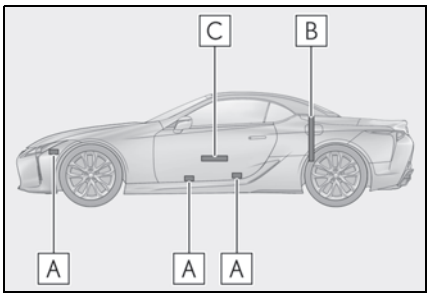
NOTICE

- Do not remove or repair the parts or wiring of the Pop Up Hood, as doing so may cause accidental operation or prevent the system from operating properly. If repair or replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not remove such components as the front bumper, hood or suspension, or replace them with non-genuine parts, as doing so may prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not install anything to the front bumper or hood, as doing so may prevent the sensors from detecting an impact correctly and prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not close the hood with force or apply load to the lifters, as doing so may damage the lifters and prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not modify the suspension, as changes made to the vehicle height may prevent the system from operating properly.

Active roll bar (Convertible)

The active roll bar is the mechanism that ensure the bar to pop out upward when the sensors detect a frontal or side impact, or vehicle rollover.

System components



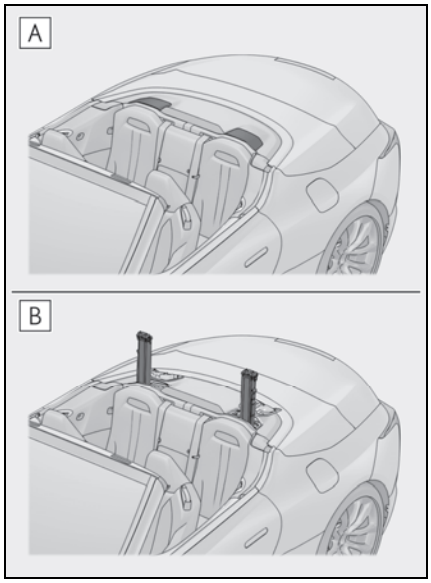
A Sensors

B Active roll bar

C ECU

Operation of the active roll bar

The active roll bar is stored behind the rear seats. When the system operates, the bars pop out upward.



A Before operating

B After operating

■ **Active roll bar precautions**

- Before scrapping your vehicle, make sure to contact your Lexus dealer.
- If the active roll bar operates when the soft top roof is opened, the soft top roof cannot be closed.
- The active roll bar cannot be reused once it has operated. Have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Active roll bar operational conditions**

- The active roll bar operates regardless of the opening/closing state of the soft top roof.
- The active roll bar will operate in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform, or the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

- If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
- If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle underrides, or goes under, the bed of a truck

- The active roll bar operates when the vehicle rolls over.
- The active roll bar may also operate if a serious impact occurs to the underside of the vehicle, such as in the following situation.
  - Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
  - Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
  - Landing hard or falling
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - The vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts when the vehicle has slided sideways and collided with a curb, etc.

■ **Conditions under which the active roll bar may not operate**

The active roll bar does not generally operate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal or side collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, operation of the active roll bar may occur.

- Collision from the rear
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

■ **When the active roll bar operates**

The soft top roof cannot be opened or closed while the active roll bar is operating.

■ **Warning message**

If "Active Roll Bar System Malfunction Visit

Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

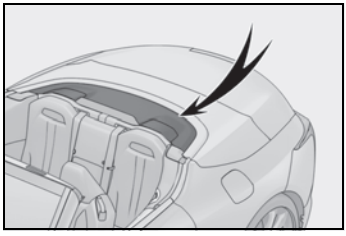
WARNING

■ Active roll bar precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the active roll bar.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Make sure that all passengers no not have any part of their body in the operating range of the active roll bar. Also, do not sit on the package tray.



- Do not put anything on the package tray. An object on the package tray may fly when the active roll bar operates.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the active roll bar components.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the active roll bar has operated, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so.

Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

■ When the active roll bar has operated

- If the active roll bar has operated, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer. If the active roll bar have operated, stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not touch the active roll bar immediately after it has operated, as the bars may be hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ Active roll bar precautions

Observe the following precautions to ensure the active roll bar can operate correctly.

- If something has hit the area around the front bumper or front doors, the sensors may be damaged even if the active roll bar has not operated. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not remove or repair the parts or wiring of the active roll bar, as doing so may cause accidental operation or prevent the system from operating properly. If repair or replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not place anything on the package tray.

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine <hybrid system>.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running <hybrid system operating> for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running <hybrid system operating> in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running <hybrid system is operating>, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the window lock switch to avoid children operating the power window accidentally. (→P.162)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, trunk, seats etc.

WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems (except Convertible)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

- Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.
- The use of a Lexus genuine child restraint system is recommended, as it is safer to use in this vehicle. Lexus genuine child restraint systems are made specifically for Lexus vehicles. They can be purchased at a Lexus dealer.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.59

When using a child restraint system: P.60

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.62

Child restraint system installation method: P.65

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.66
- Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor:

P.68
- Using a child restraint anchor fitting: P.69

Points to remember

- Prioritize and observe the warnings, as well as the laws and regulations for child restraint systems.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles. Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions.

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

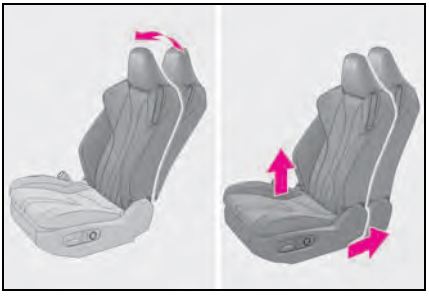
- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.62) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk.

When using a child restraint system

When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint system to the rear seats.
When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Raise the seatback as much as possible
- Move the seat to the rearmost position
- Raise the seat to the highest position
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
  Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.



WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it! This is because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
  There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING

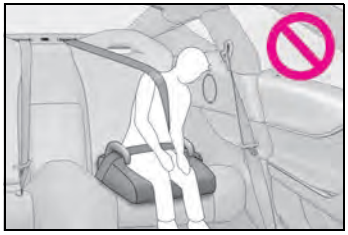


WARNING

- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



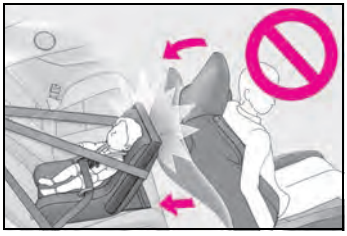
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.

WARNING

- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the left-hand rear seat. (→P.64)



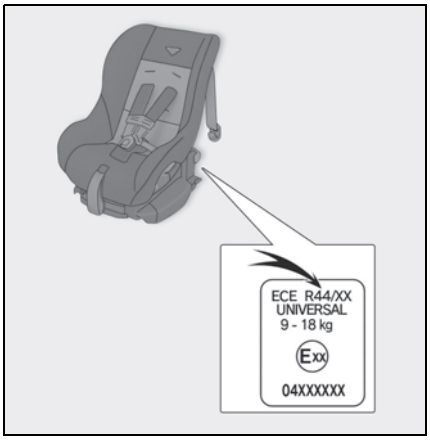
Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.63) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



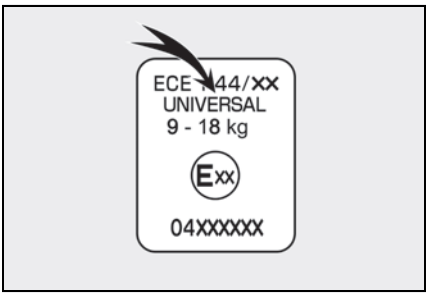
Example of the displayed regulation Number

UN(ECE) R44 approval mark[*2]
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"

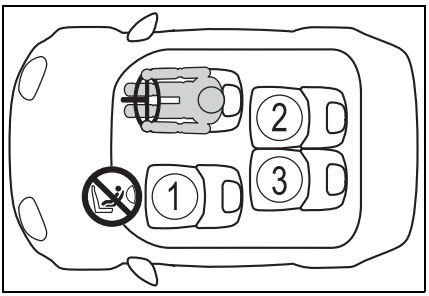
- "vehicle specific"



*1: UN(ECE) R44 is U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



1 *1, 2, 3	U *4
2	
3	

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

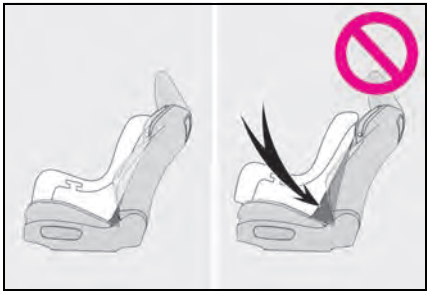
Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

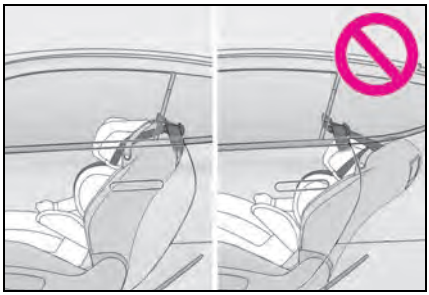
Seating position			
Seat position number	①	②	③
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	No	No
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X	F2X
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Fixture	Description
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

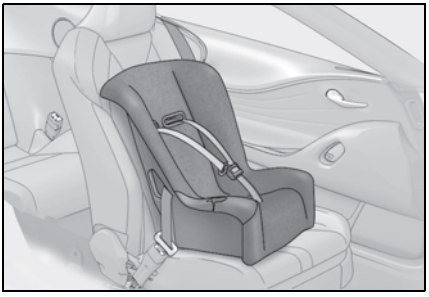
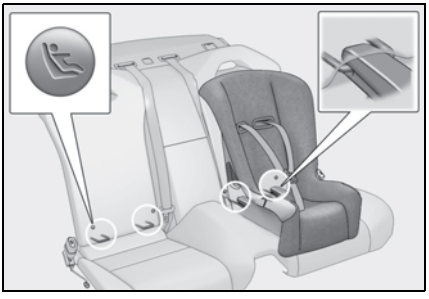
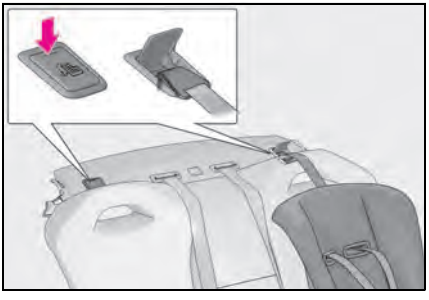
- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.66
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment		P.68
Child restraint anchor fitting attachment		P.69

■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

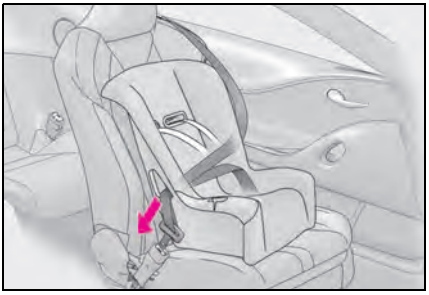
If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.62, 63)

1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.60 for front passenger seat adjustment.

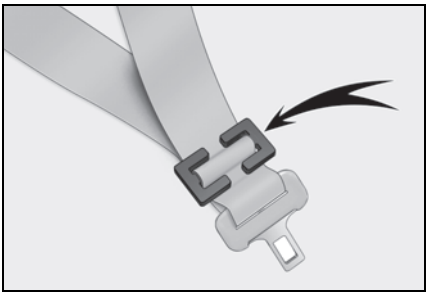
2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be

removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.152)

3 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



4 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.67)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.

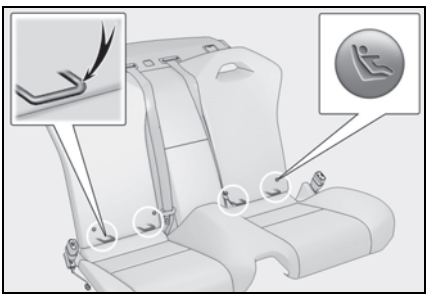
WARNING

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor

■ ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the each rear seat. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



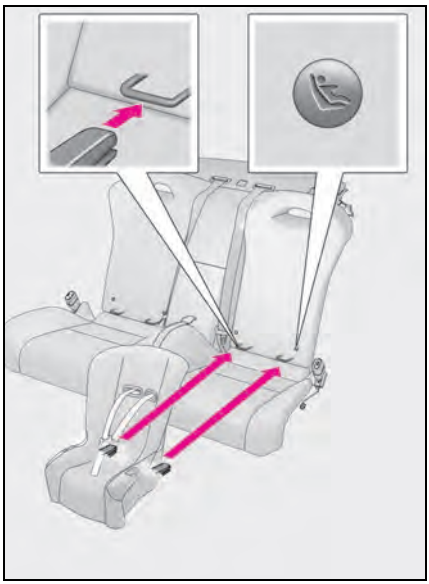
■ Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.62, 63)

1 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



2 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.67)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Using child restraint anchorages

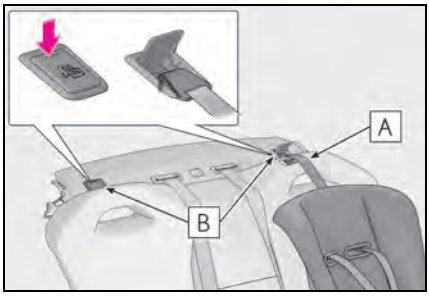
WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Using a child restraint anchor fitting

■ Child restraint anchor fitting

Anchor fittings are provided for the each rear seat.

Use anchor fitting when fixing the strap.



A Upper anchorage strap

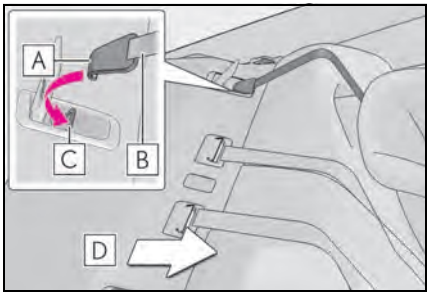
B Anchor fittings

■ Fixing the strap to the anchor fitting

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

Open the anchor fitting cover, latch the attaching clip onto the anchor fitting and tighten the upper anchorage strap.

Make sure the upper anchorage strap is securely latched. (→P.67)



A Attaching clip

B Upper anchorage strap

C Anchor fitting

D Front of the vehicle

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the upper anchorage strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the upper anchorage strap to anything other than the anchor fitting.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Using child restraint anchorages

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ Child restraint anchor fitting

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

Child restraint systems (Convertible)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

- Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.
- The use of a Lexus genuine child restraint system is recommended, as it is safer to use in this vehicle. Lexus genuine child restraint systems are made specifically for Lexus vehicles. They can be purchased at a Lexus dealer.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.71

When using a child restraint system: P.72

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.74

Child restraint system installation method: P.77

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.78
- Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor:

P.80
- Using a child restraint anchor fitting: P.81

Points to remember

- Prioritize and observe the warnings, as well as the laws and regulations for child restraint systems.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles. Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions.

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.74) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk.

When using a child restraint system

When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint system to the rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Raise the seatback as much as possible
- Move the seat to the rearmost position
- Raise the seat to the highest position
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

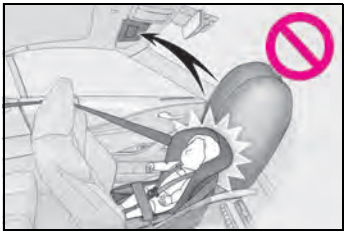


WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it! This is because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
  There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.

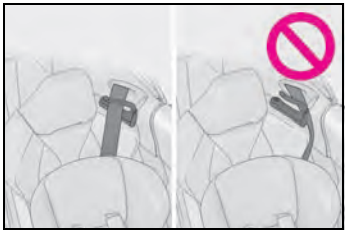


WARNING



WARNING

- When unavoidably installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure to pass the seat belt through the seat belt guide and fasten the button.



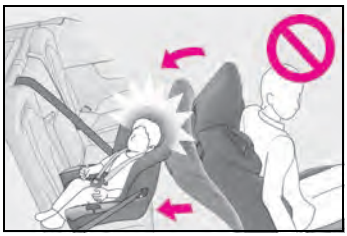
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat from which the SRS side airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.

WARNING

- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the left-hand rear seat. (→P.76)



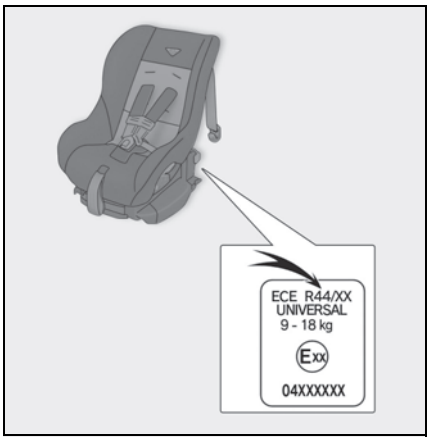
Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.75) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44*1.
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



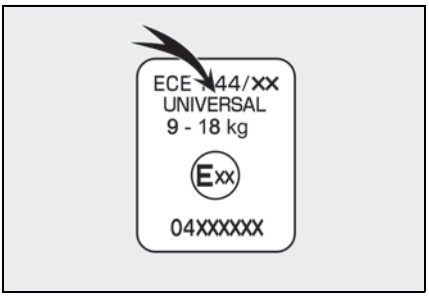
Example of the displayed regulation Number

UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*2
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties,

check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

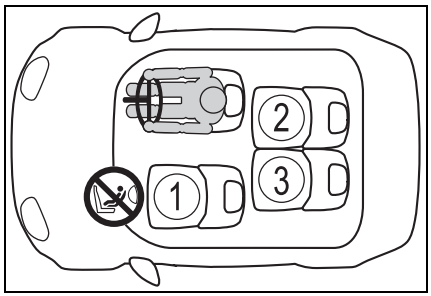
- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



*1: UN(ECE) R44 is U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



1 *1, 2, 3	U *4
2	
3	

U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

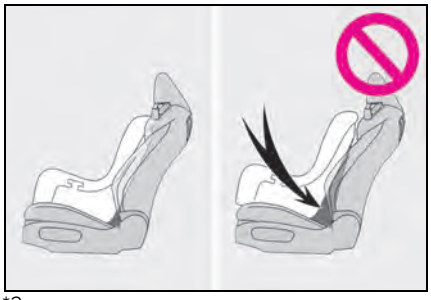
Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

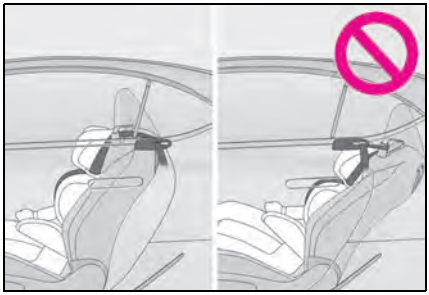
■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position			
Seat position number	①	②	③
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	No	No
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X	F2X
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

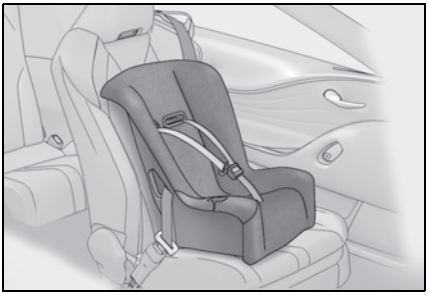
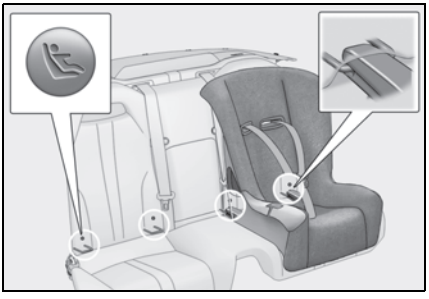
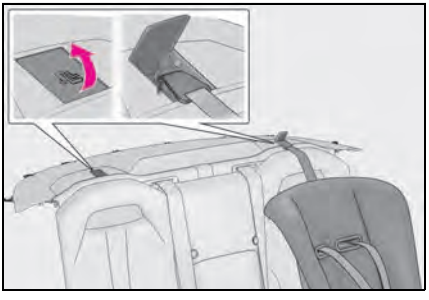
- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.78
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment		P.80
Child restraint anchor fitting attachment		P.81

■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

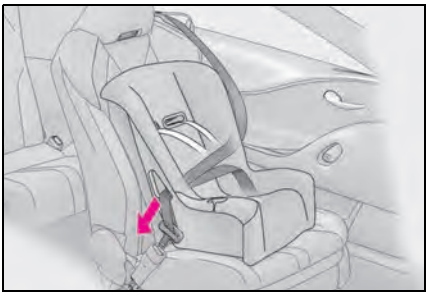
If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.74, 75)

1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.72 for front passenger seat adjustment.

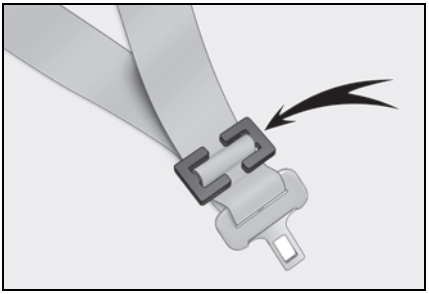
2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installa-

tion, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.152)

3 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



4 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.79)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.

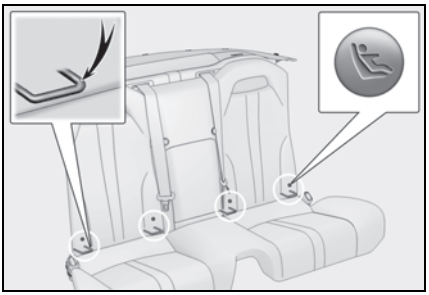
WARNING

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor

■ ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the each rear seat. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



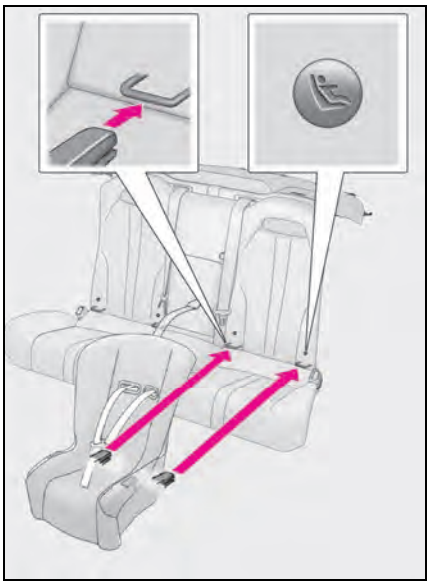
■ Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.74, 75)

1 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



2 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.79)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Using child restraint anchorages

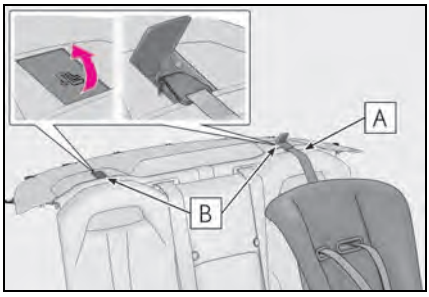
WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Using a child restraint anchor fitting

■ Child restraint anchor fitting

Anchor fittings are provided for the each rear seat.

Use anchor fitting when fixing the strap.



A Upper anchorage strap

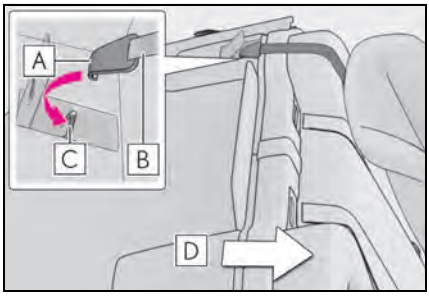
B Anchor fittings

■ Fixing the strap to the anchor fitting

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

Open the anchor fitting cover, latch the attaching clip onto the anchor fitting and tighten the upper anchorage strap.

Make sure the upper anchorage strap is securely latched. (→P.79)



A Attaching clip

B Upper anchorage strap

C Anchor fitting

D Front of the vehicle

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the upper anchorage strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the upper anchorage strap to anything other than the anchor fitting.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Using child restraint anchorages

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ Child restraint anchor fitting

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

Lexus Connected Services*1, 2

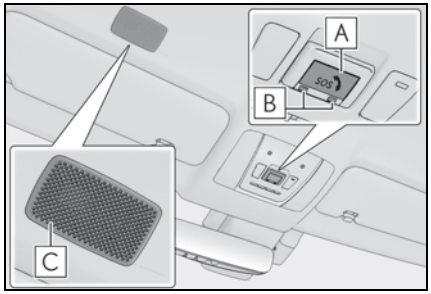
*1: If equipped

*2: Operates within the Lexus Connected Services coverage.

Lexus Connected Services are telematics services that use Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to enable the following emergency calls to be made: ACN (Automatic Collision Notification) and SOS Emergency Call (Manual emergency service notification) (by pressing the "SOS" button). For more information about Lexus Connected Services, please visit: https://www.lexus.com.au/connectivity

System components

▶ Except Convertible (vehicles without sunshade)

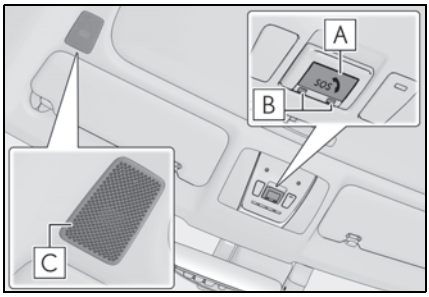


A "SOS" button*

B Indicator lights

C Microphone

▶ Except Convertible (vehicles with sunshade)

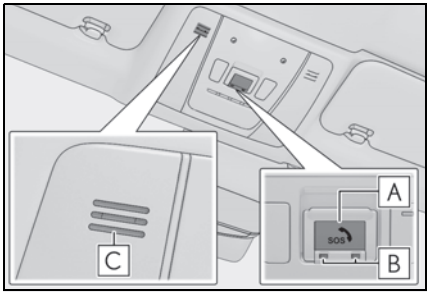


A "SOS" button*

B Indicator lights

C Microphone

▶ Convertible



A "SOS" button*

B Indicator lights

C Microphone

*: This button is intended for communication with the Emergency Call Centre. Other SOS buttons available in other systems of a motor vehicle do not relate to the device and are not intended for communication with the Emergency Call Centre.

Lexus Connected Services

■ ACN (Automatic Collision Notification)

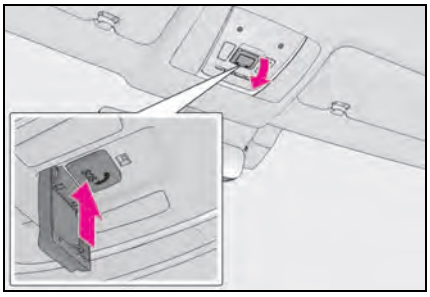
If any airbag deploys, the system is designed to automatically call the Emergency Call Centre.* The Call Centre Agent will determine your vehicle's location, the time of the incident and the vehicle VIN, and attempt to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the situation. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the Call Centre Agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and contacts emergency services to describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to the location.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.85)

■ SOS Emergency Call (Manual emergency service notification)

In the event of an emergency, press the "SOS" button to call the Emergency Call Centre.* The Call Centre Agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the situation, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

Make sure to open the cover before pressing the "SOS" button.



If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the Call Centre Agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.85)

Indicator lights

When the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON, the red/green indicator lights will blink intermittently, then the green indicator light will remain ON, indicating that the system is enabled. The indicator lights indicate the following:

- If the green indicator light illuminates and stays on, the system is enabled.
- If the green indicator light flashes twice per second, the ACN/SOS service is being made.
- If the red indicator light illuminates at any time other than immediately after the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON, the system may be malfunctioning or the backup battery may be depleted. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS).

The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

http://www.opensourceautomotive.com/dcm/lexus/19MC/

WARNING

When the ACN/SOS may not be made

- It may not be possible to make ACN/SOS in any of the following situations. In such cases, report to emergency services provider (000 system etc.) by other means such as nearby public phones.
  - Even when the vehicle is in the cellular phone service area, it may be difficult to connect to the Emergency Call Centre if the reception is poor or the line is busy. In such cases, you may not be able to connect to the Emergency Call Centre.
  - When the vehicle is out of the cellular phone service area, the ACN/SOS cannot be made.
  - When any related equipment (such as the "SOS" button panel, indicator lights, microphone, DCM, antenna, or any wires connecting the equipment) is malfunctioning, damaged or broken, the ACN/SOS cannot be made.
  - Enabled Lexus vehicles collect and transmit vehicle data to provide connected services. SOS and Automatic Collision Notification may be disabled if green LED under SOS button is not illuminated. For more info including reactivation, visit https://www.lexus.com.au/privacy
  - During an ACN/SOS service the system makes repeated attempts to connect to the Emergency Call Centre. However, if it cannot connect to the Emergency Call Centre due to poor radio wave reception, the system may not be able to connect to the cellular network and the call may finish without connecting. A voice prompt notification will play from the vehicle speaker to indicate call disconnection.
- If the battery's voltage decreases or there is a disconnection, the system may not be able to connect to the Emergency Call Centre.
- The ACN/SOS system might not work outside of Australia region, depending on the available infrastructure in the country.

When the ACN/SOS system is replaced with a new one

The ACN/SOS system should be registered. Contact your Lexus dealer.

For your safety

- Please drive safely.
  The function of this system is to assist you in contacting the appropriate emergency services in case of accidents such as traffic accidents or sudden medical emergencies, and it does not protect the driver or passengers in any way. Please drive safely and fasten your seatbelts at all times for your safety.
- In case of an emergency, ensure preservation of life is prioritised first.
- If you smell anything burning or other unusual smells, leave the vehicle and evacuate to a safe area immediately.
- If the airbags deploy when the system is operating normally, the system makes emergency call. The system also makes emergency call when the vehicle is struck from the rear or rolls over, even if the airbags do not deploy.

WARNING

- For safety, do not press the "SOS" button while driving.
  Making calls during driving may cause mishandling of the steering wheel, which may lead to unexpected accidents.
  Stop the vehicle and confirm the safety of your surroundings before pressing the "SOS" button.
- When changing fuses, please use the specified fuses. Using other fuses may cause ignition or smoke in the circuit and lead to a fire.
- Using the system while there is smoke or an unusual smell may cause a fire. Stop using the system immediately and consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage**

Do not pour any liquids onto the "SOS" button panel, etc. and do not impact it.

■ **If the "SOS" button panel, speaker or microphone malfunctions during an ACN/SOS service**

It may not be possible to make ACN/SOS, confirm the system status, or communicate with the Call Centre Agent. If any of the above equipment is damaged, please consult your Lexus dealer.

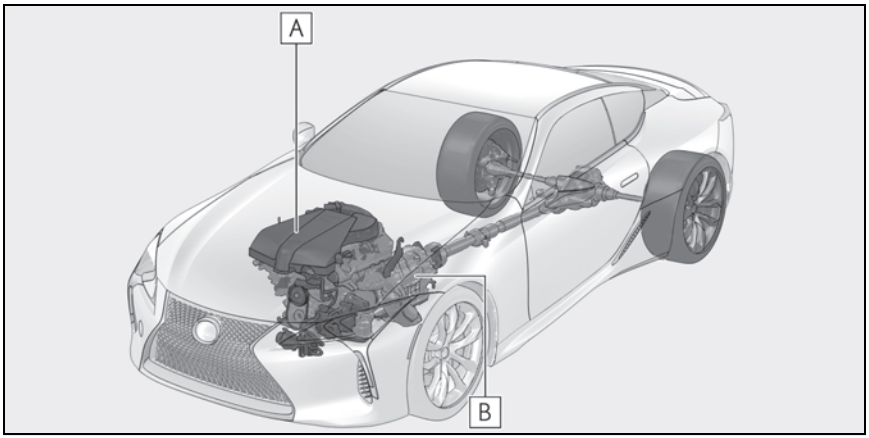
Hybrid system (LC500h)

Your vehicle is a hybrid electric vehicle. It has characteristics different from conventional vehicles. Be sure you are closely familiar with the characteristics of your vehicle, and operate it with care.

The hybrid system combines the use of a gasoline engine and an electric motor (traction motor) according to driving conditions, improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.

In addition to the conventional system, exclusive control is performed for four driving conditions (starting off, accelerating, low-speed driving and high-speed cruising) to optimize the drive force and fuel efficiency, allowing for a more powerful drive and a higher fuel efficiency.

System components



The illustration is an example for explanation and may differ from the actual item.

A Gasoline engine

B Electric motor (traction motor)

■ When stopped/during start off

The gasoline engine stops* when the vehicle is stopped. During start off, the electric motor (traction motor) drives the vehicle. When the accelerator pedal is only slightly depressed, such as when traveling on a level surface or down a gentle slope, the engine is stopped* and the electric motor (traction motor) is used.

When the shift position is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) is not

being charged.

*: When the hybrid battery (traction battery) requires charging or the engine is warming up, etc., the gasoline engine will not automatically stop.

■ During normal driving

The gasoline engine is predominantly used. The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery) as necessary.

■ When accelerating sharply

When the accelerator pedal is depressed heavily, the power of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is added to that of the gasoline engine via the electric motor (traction motor).

■ When braking (regenerative braking)

The wheels operate the electric motor (traction motor) as a power generator, and the hybrid battery (traction battery) is charged.

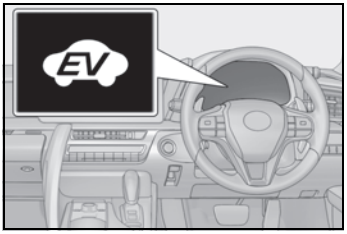
■ Regenerative braking

In the following situations, kinetic energy is converted to electric energy and deceleration force can be obtained in conjunction with the recharging of the hybrid battery (traction battery).

- The accelerator pedal is released while driving with the shift position in D or M.
- The brake pedal is depressed while driving with the shift position in D or M.

■ EV indicator

The EV indicator comes on when the vehicle is driven using only the electric motor (traction motor) or the gasoline engine is stopped.



■ Conditions in which the gasoline engine may not stop

The gasoline engine starts and stops automatically. However, in any of the following situations, it may not stop automatically, possibly reducing fuel economy*:

- During gasoline engine warm-up
- During hybrid battery (traction battery) charging
- When the temperature of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is high or low
- When the heater is switched on
- When the shift position is in M
- When repeatedly accelerating/decelerating rapidly
- When repeatedly operating the hybrid system for a long time
- When driving down a long slope

*: Depending on the circumstances, the gasoline engine may also not stop automatically in other situations.

■ Charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)

As the gasoline engine charges the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery does not need to be charged from an outside source. However, if the vehicle is left parked for a long time the hybrid battery (traction battery) will slowly discharge. For this reason, be sure to drive the vehicle at least once every few months for at least 30 minutes or 16 km (10 miles). If the hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes fully discharged and you are unable to start the hybrid system, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Charging the 12-volt battery

→P.417

After the 12-volt battery has discharged or when the terminal has been removed and installed during exchange, etc.

The gasoline engine may not stop even if the vehicle is being driven by the hybrid battery (traction battery). If this continues for a few days, contact your Lexus dealer.

Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle

Because there is no engine sound or vibration, it is easy to mistake the hybrid vehicle for being off when it is actually still running, as indicated by the "READY" indicator being illuminated. For safety, make sure to always shift the shift position to P and apply the parking brake when parked.

The following sounds or vibrations may occur when the hybrid system is operating and are not a malfunction:

- Motor sounds may be heard from the engine compartment.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid battery (traction battery) behind the rear seats when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Relay operating sounds such as a snap or soft clank will be emitted from the hybrid battery (traction battery), behind the rear seats, when the hybrid system is started or stopped.
- Sounds from the hybrid system may be heard when the trunk lid is open.
- Sounds may be heard from the transmission when the gasoline engine starts or stops, when driving at low speeds, or during idling.
- Engine sounds may be heard when accelerating sharply.
- Sounds may be heard due to regenerative braking when the brake pedal is depressed or as the accelerator pedal is released.
- Vibration may be felt when the gasoline engine starts or stops.
- Cooling fan sounds may be heard from the air intake vents under the rear seats.

Maintenance, repair, recycling, and disposal

Contact your Lexus dealer regarding maintenance, repair, recycling and disposal. Do not dispose of the vehicle yourself.

Customization

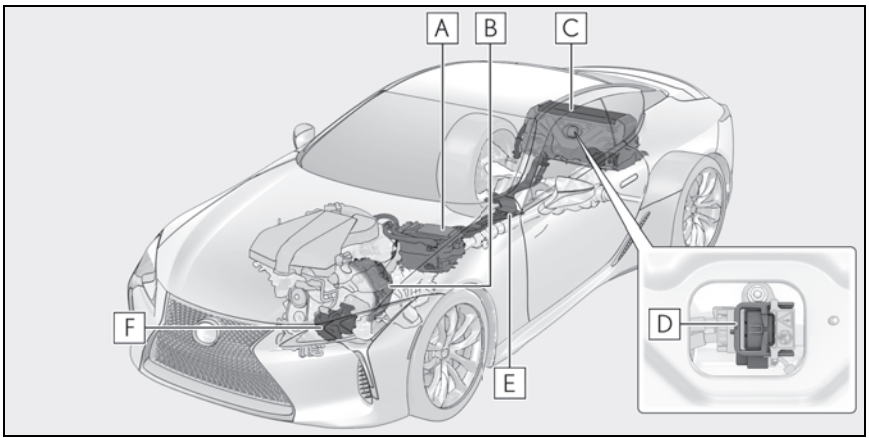
Settings (e.g. on/off operation of the EV indicator) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

Hybrid system precautions (LC500h)

Take care when handling the hybrid system, as it is a high voltage system (about 650 V at maximum) as well as contains parts that become extremely hot when the hybrid system is operating. Read the following descriptions carefully before using the hybrid system, and handle the hybrid system correctly.

Note that warning labels with a ⚠ mark are attached to the high voltage components, to remind you of careful handling required.

System components



The illustration is an example for explanation and may differ from the actual item.

A Power control unit

B Electric motor (traction motor)

C Hybrid battery (traction battery)

D Service plug

E High voltage cables (orange)

F Air conditioning compressor

Running out of fuel

When the vehicle has run out of fuel and the hybrid system cannot be started, refuel the vehicle with at least enough gasoline to make the low fuel level warning light (→P.395) go off. If there is only a small amount of fuel, the hybrid system may not be able to start. (The standard amount of fuel is about 12.1L [3.2 gal., 2.7 Imp.gal.], when the vehicle is on a level surface. This value may vary when the vehicle is on a slope. Add extra fuel when the vehicle is

inclined.)

Electromagnetic waves

- High voltage parts and cables on hybrid electric vehicles incorporate electromagnetic shielding, and therefore emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances.
- Your vehicle may cause sound interference in some third party-produced radio parts.

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

The hybrid battery (traction battery) has a limited service life. The lifespan of the hybrid battery (traction battery) can change in accordance with driving style and driving conditions.

Starting the hybrid system in an extremely cold environment

When the hybrid battery (traction battery) is extremely cold (below approximately -35°C [-31°F]) under the influence of the outside temperature, it may not be possible to start the hybrid system. In this case, try to start the hybrid system again after the temperature of the hybrid battery increases due to the outside temperature increase etc.

Declaration of conformity

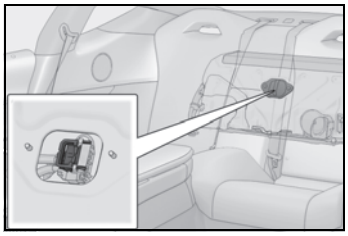
This model conforms to hydrogen emissions according to regulation ECE100 (Battery electric vehicle safety).

WARNING

High voltage precautions

This vehicle has high voltage DC and AC systems as well as a 12-volt system. DC and AC high voltage is very dangerous and can cause severe burns and electric shock that may result in death or serious injury.

- Never touch, disassemble, remove or replace the high voltage parts, cables or their connectors.
- Do not touch the high voltage components. They are extremely hot, especially after driving.
- Never try to open the service plug access hole located behind the rear seats. The service plug is used only when the vehicle is serviced and is subject to high voltage.



Road accident cautions

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place to prevent subsequent accidents. While depressing the brake pedal, apply the parking brake and shift the shift position to P to stop the hybrid system. Then, slowly release the brake pedal.
- Do not touch the high voltage parts, cables and connectors.
- If electric wires are exposed inside or outside your vehicle, an electric shock may occur. Never touch exposed electric wires.
- Do not touch the battery if liquid is leaking from or adhering to it.
  If electrolyte (carbonic-based organic electrolyte) from the hybrid battery (traction battery) comes into contact with the eyes or skin, it could cause blindness or skin wounds. In the unlikely event that it comes into contact with the eyes or skin, wash it off immediately with a large amount of water, and seek immediate medical attention.

WARNING

- If electrolyte is leaking from the hybrid battery (traction battery), do not approach the vehicle.
  Even in the unlikely event that the hybrid battery (traction battery) is damaged, the internal construction of the battery will prevent a large amount of electrolyte from leaking out. However, any electrolyte that does leak out will give off a vapor. This vapor is an irritant to skin and eyes and could cause acute poisoning if inhaled.
- Do not bring burning or high-temperature items close to the electrolyte. The electrolyte may ignite and cause a fire.
- If a fire occurs in the hybrid electric vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Never use a fire extinguisher that is not meant for electric fires. Using even a small amount of water may be dangerous.
- If your vehicle needs to be towed, do so with rear wheels raised. If the wheels connected to the electric motor (traction motor) are on the ground when towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity. This may cause a fire. (→P.385)
- Carefully inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system may have been damaged. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

■ Hybrid battery (traction battery)

- Your vehicle contains a sealed lithium-ion battery.
- Never resell, hand over or modify the hybrid battery. To prevent accidents, hybrid batteries that have been removed from a disposed vehicle are collected through Lexus dealer. Do not dispose of the battery yourself.

Unless the battery is properly collected, the following may occur, resulting in death or serious injury:

- The hybrid battery may be illegally disposed of or dumped, and it is hazardous to the environment or someone may touch a high voltage part, resulting in an electric shock.
- The hybrid battery is intended to be used exclusively with your hybrid electric vehicle. If the hybrid battery is used outside of your vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, heat generation, smoke generation, an explosion and electrolyte leakage may occur.

When reselling or handing over your vehicle, the possibility of an accident is extremely high because the person receiving the vehicle may not be aware of these dangers.

- If your vehicle is disposed of without the hybrid battery having been removed, there is a danger of serious electric shock if high voltage parts, cables and their connectors are touched. In the event that your vehicle must be disposed of, the hybrid battery must be disposed of by your Lexus dealer or a qualified service shop. If the hybrid battery is not disposed of properly, it may cause electric shock that can result in death or serious injury.

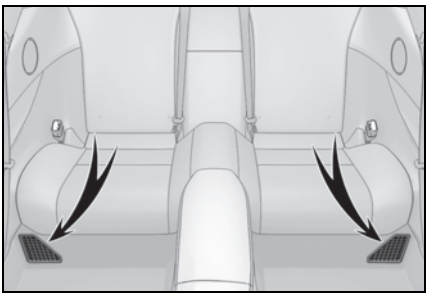
NOTICE

■ **Hybrid battery (traction battery)**

Do not carry large amounts of water such as water cooler bottles in the vehicle. If water spills onto the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery may be damaged. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Hybrid battery (traction battery) air intake vents

There are air intake vents under the rear seats for the purpose of cooling the hybrid battery (traction battery). If the vents become blocked, the hybrid battery input and output may be restricted, leading to a reduction in hybrid battery (traction battery) output.



NOTICE

■ **Hybrid battery (traction battery) air intake vents**

- Make sure no to block the air intake vents with anything, such as a seat cover, plastic cover, or luggage. If the vents become blocked, the hybrid battery (traction battery) input and output may be restricted, leading to a reduction in hybrid battery (traction battery) output and a malfunction.
- When dust etc. has accumulated in the air intake vents, periodically clean them with a vacuum cleaner to prevent the vents from clogging.
- Filters are installed to the air intake vents. When the filters remain noticeably dirty even after cleaning the air intake vents, filter cleaning or replacement is recommended. When cleaning or replacing the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.
  Refer to P.326 for details on how to clean the filters.
- Do not get water or foreign materials in the air intake vents as this may cause a short circuit and damage the hybrid battery (traction battery).

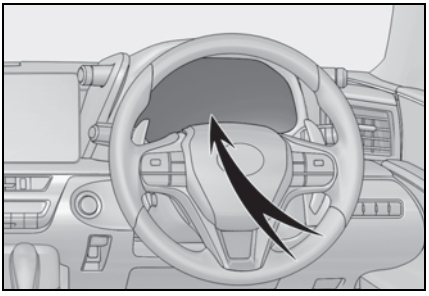
Emergency shut off system

When a certain level of impact is detected by the impact sensor, the emergency shut off system blocks the high voltage current and stops the fuel pump to minimize the risk of electrocution and fuel leakage. If the emergency shut off system activates, your vehicle will not restart. To restart the hybrid system, contact your Lexus dealer.

Hybrid warning message

A message is automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in the hybrid system or an improper operation is attempted.

If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.



■ **If a warning light comes on, a warning message is displayed, or the 12-volt battery is disconnected**

The hybrid system may not start. In this case, try to start the system again. If the "READY" indicator does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer.

Engine immobilizer system <Immobilizer system>

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine <hybrid system> from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

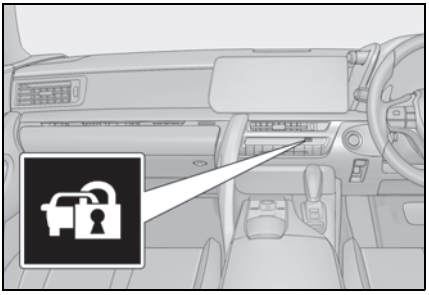
Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch <power switch> has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch <power switch> has been turned to ACC or ON to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system <immobilizer system>.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

NOTICE

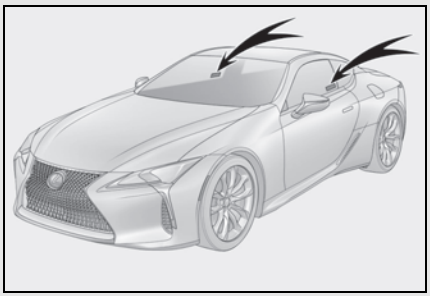
■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Double locking system

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the side windows.



Setting/canceling the double locking system

■ **Setting**

Turn the engine switch <power switch> off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that both side doors are closed.

Press twice within 5 seconds.

■ **Canceling**

Using the entry function: Push the edge of the door handle to unlock the doors.

Using the wireless remote control:

Press .

WARNING

■ **Double locking system precaution**

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because both side doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (Example: an intruder breaks a window and gets into the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.

Setting/canceling/stopping the alarm system

Items to check before locking the vehicle

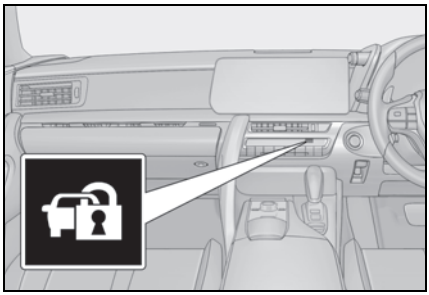
To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Setting

Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock both side doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Canceling or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors or open the trunk.
- Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ACC or ON, or start the engine <hybrid system>. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

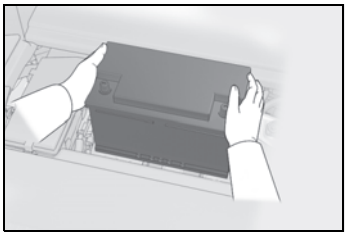
Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood, or unlocks the vehicle using a door lock switch.



- The 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.417)



■ Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery

■ Customization

The alarm can be set to activate when the mechanical key is used to unlock. (Customizable features: →P.447)

> ⚠ NOTICE
>
> **■ To ensure the system operates correctly**
>
> Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

■ Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor detection

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system are designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P.97)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

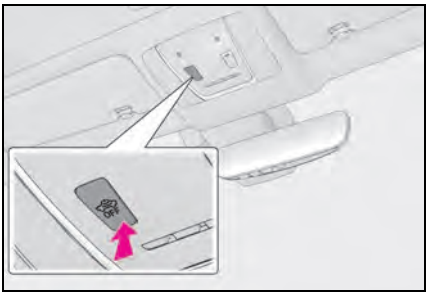
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as it will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1. Turn the engine switch <power switch> off.
2. Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

Press the switch again to re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.

Each time the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled/set, a message will be shown on the multi-information display in

the instrument cluster.



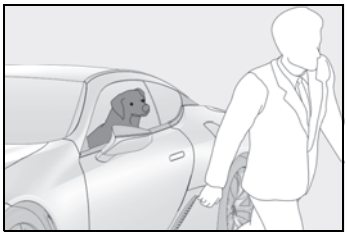
Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch <power switch> or unlocking the doors using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.

Intrusion sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

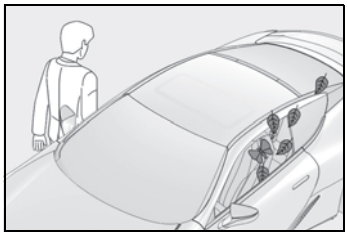
- People or pets are in the vehicle.



- A window or the soft top roof* is open.

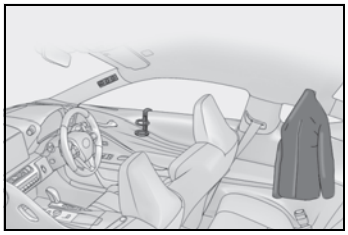
In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

- Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
- Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
- The movement of people outside the vehicle



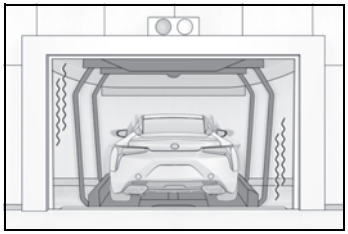
*: Convertible

- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks*, are in the vehicle.

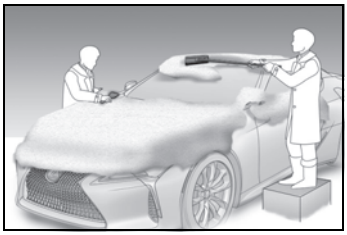


*: Except Convertible

- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.

NOTICE

To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly

- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

Vehicle status information and indicators

2

2-1. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators 102

Gauges and meters 108

Multi-information display..... 112

Head-up display 118

Energy monitor/consumption screen 123

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster, center panel and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

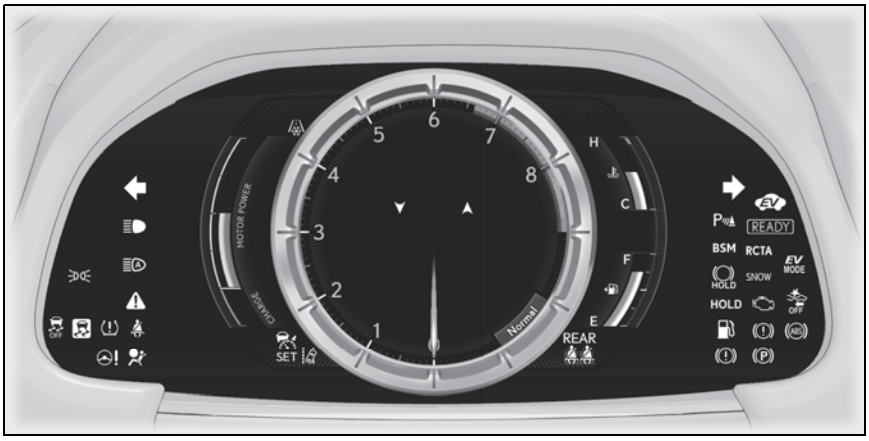
Instrument cluster

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustrations display all warning lights and indicators illuminated.

▶ LC500



▶ LC500h



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle systems.


(red)

Brake system warning light*1 (→P.391)



Charging system warning light*2 (→P.391)



Low engine oil pressure warning light*2 (→P.391)



Malfunction indicator lamp*1 (→P.392)



SRS warning light*1 (→P.392)



ABS warning light*1 (→P.392)


(red)

Electric power steering system warning light*1 (→P.392)


(yellow)

Electric power steering system warning light*1 (→P.392)


(Flashes or illuminates)

PCS warning light*1 (→P.393)


(orange)

LTA indicator (→P.393)



Slip indicator*1 (→P.393)



Brake Override System warning light*2 (→P.394)/Drive-Start Control warning light*2 (→P.394)



Brake hold operated indicator*1, 3 (→P.394)



Parking brake indicator*3 (→P.394)


(yellow)

Brake system warning light*1 (→P.394)



Low fuel level warning light (→P.395)



Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P.395)



Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (→P.395)



Master warning light*1 (→P.395)



Tire pressure warning light*1, 3 (→P.396)



High coolant temperature warning light*2 (→P.396)


(if equipped)

Hybrid system overheat warning light*2 (→P.396)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine <hybrid system> is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*3: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

WARNING

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine <hybrid system>, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P.206)


Tail light indicator (→P.212)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P.213)


AHB indicator*1 (→P.214)


(if equipped)
Gear Shift Indicator*2 (→P.205)


Cruise control indicator*2 (→P.251)


Dynamic radar cruise control indicator*2 (→P.251)



Cruise control "SET" indicator*2 (→P.251)


(white)
LTA indicator*3 (→P.244)


(green)
LTA indicator*3 (→P.229, 244)


(orange)
LTA indicator*3 (→P.244)


Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P.264)


Slip indicator*1, 4 (→P.286)



VSC OFF indicator*1 (→P.286)



PCS warning light*1, 5 (→P.229)


BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) outside rear view mirror indicators*6, 7 (→P.271)



BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) indicator (→P.271)



RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) indicator (→P.275)



Brake hold standby indicator*1 (→P.210)



Brake hold operated indicator*8 (→P.210)


Security indicator*8 (→P.95, 97)


Smart entry & start system indicator*2 (→P.183, 186)



(if equipped)
"READY" indicator (→P.186)


Low outside temperature indicator*2, 9 (→P.108)



(if equipped)
Eco Driving Indicator Light*1 (→P.106)



(if equipped)
EV indicator (→P.88)


Parking brake indicator (→P.207)



Snow mode indicator (→P.197, 203)



EV drive mode indicator (→P.190)
(if equipped)



"Normal" indicator*2 (→P.263)



"Eco" indicator*2 (→P.263)



"Sport S" indicator*2 (→P.263)



"Sport S+" indicator*2 (→P.263)



"Comfort" indicator*2 (→P.263)



"Custom" indicator*2 (→P.263)



"EXPERT" indicator*2 (→P.286)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine <hybrid system> is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*3: Depending on the operating condition, the color and illuminating/flashing state of the light change.

*4: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*5: The light comes on when the system is turned off.

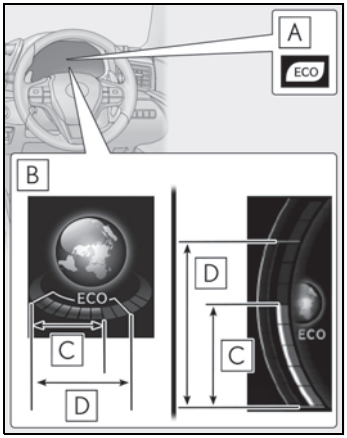
*6: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:
When the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON while the BSM main switch is turned on.
When the BSM main switch is turned on while the engine switch <power switch> is in ON.
If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds.
If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system.
If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*7: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*8: This light illuminates on the center panel.

*9: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

■ Eco Driving Indicator (LC500)



A Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

Eco Driving Indicator can be enabled on the multi-information display. (→P.112)

B Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

When the driving mode is Normal mode or Comfort mode, switch the display to the side position. (→P.111)

C Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

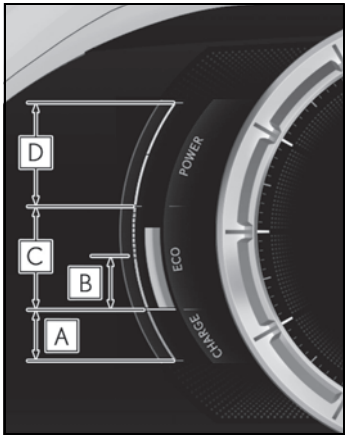
The part that exceeds the Zone of Eco driving illuminates in white.

D Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift position is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- The driving mode is SPORT S mode or SPORT S+ mode.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

■ Hybrid System Indicator (LC500h)



A Charge area

Shows regeneration* status. Regenerated energy will be used to charge the hybrid battery (traction battery).

B Hybrid Eco area

Shows that gasoline engine power is not being used very often.

The gasoline engine will automatically stop and restart under various conditions.

C Eco area

Shows that the vehicle is being driven in an Eco-friendly manner.

By keeping the indicator needle within Eco area, more Eco-friendly driving can be achieved.

D Power area

Shows that an Eco-friendly driving range is being exceeded (during full power driving etc.)

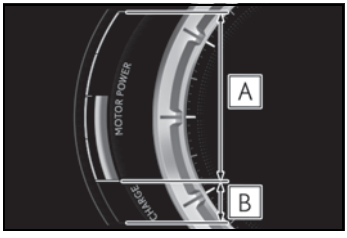
In the following situation, the Hybrid System

Indicator does not operate.

- The shift position is in other than D or M.
- The driving mode is other than Eco mode.

*: When used in this manual, "regeneration" refers to the conversion of energy created by the movement of the vehicle into electrical energy.

■ **Motor power display (LC500h)**



A Motor power area

Shows that the power of the motor assists the engine.

B Charge area

Shows regeneration* status. Regenerated energy will be used to charge the hybrid battery (traction battery).

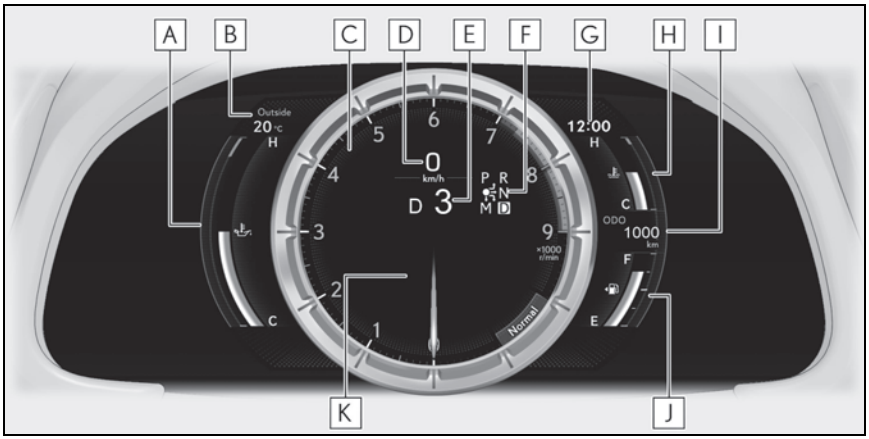
*: When used in this manual, "regeneration" refers to the conversion of energy created by the movement of the vehicle into electrical energy.

Gauges and meters

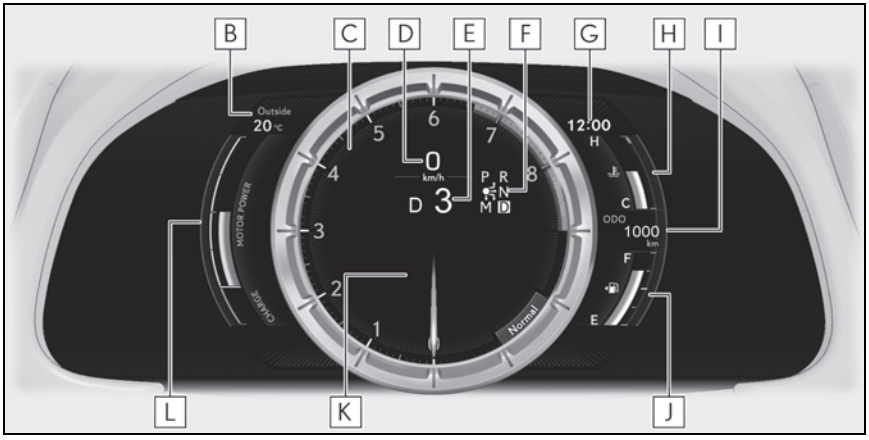
When the main meter is in the side position, some of the meter displays and the gauge layout will be changed.

Meter display

▶ LC500



▶ LC500h



A Engine oil temperature gauge/Eco Driving Indicator (LC500)

Displays the engine oil temperature or Eco Driving Indicator (→P.106)

B Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower

C Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

D Speedometer

E Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.192, 199)

F Shift position indicator (→P.193, 200)

G Clock

H Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature
If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator enters the red zone, a buzzer sounds and the high coolant temperature warning light comes on

I Odometer and trip meter display

Odometer:
Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven
Trip meter:
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset
Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently

J Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

K Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.112)
Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.399)

L Motor power display/Hybrid System Indicator (LC500h)

Displays the motor power display (→P.107) or Hybrid System Indicator (→P.106)

■ **Rev indicator**

When the engine reaches a set speed or the red zone, a ring-shaped indicator will be displayed on the tachometer.

The indicators will be displayed in amber (A) when the engine speed reaches a set speed, and in red (B) when the engine speed reaches the red zone. This setting can be enabled on the multi-information display. (→P.116)



■ **Rev peak**

When the engine speed reaches or exceeds the following, an afterimage of the tachometer will be displayed at the highest engine speed for approximately 1 second.

LC500: 3600 r/min

LC500h: 4000 r/min



■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.

■ **Variable red zone (LC500)**

To help protect the engine, the engine speed is controlled by starting the red zone of the tachometer at different engine speeds ranging from 3700 r/min to 7300 r/min depending on the engine coolant temperature.

Before driving under extremely high load conditions, make sure to sufficiently warm up the engine.



■ **Instrument panel brightness adjustment**

The brightness of the instrument panel lights is automatically adjusted based on the light sensor detecting how bright the surroundings are.

■ **Outside temperature display**

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "- -" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning.
  Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **Pop-up display**

- In some situations, such as when a switch operation is performed, a pop-up display will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display.
- Some pop-up displays can be set on/off. (→P.116)

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ **Customization**

The meter display can be customized on the multi-information display. (→P.447)

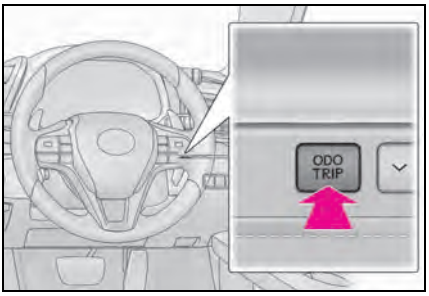
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator of the tachometer enter the red zone, as it represents the engine speed range which exceeds the maximum safe engine speed.
- In the following situations, the engine may be overheating. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.428, 430)
  - The engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H).
  - LC500: The engine oil temperature gauge is in the red zone (H).

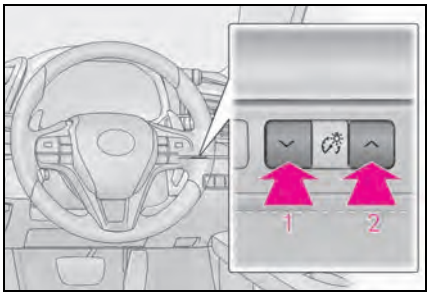
Changing between the odometer and trip meter

The odometer and trip meter displays can be switched. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.



Changing the instrument panel light brightness

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Darker

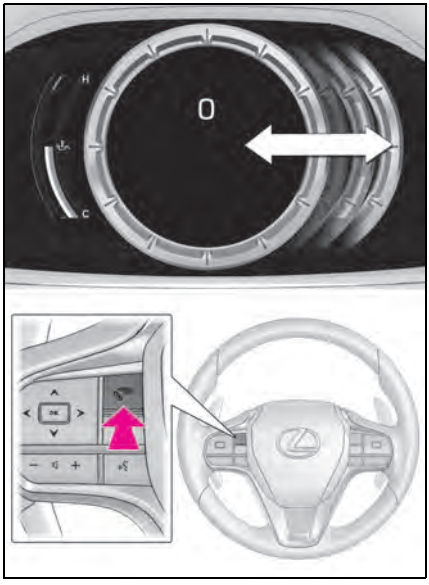
2 Brighter

■ Instrument panel brightness adjustment

The instrument panel brightness levels when the tail lights are on and off can be adjusted individually. However, when the surroundings are bright (daytime, etc.), turning on the tail lights will not change the instrument panel brightness.

Changing the display

The display can be switched between the center and side positions.



Multi-information display

Display and menu icons

■ Display

▶ When the main meter is in the center position

Displays various drive information on the main meter.

Some of the contents which are displayed when the main meter is in the side position cannot be displayed.

▶ When the main meter is in the side position

Selecting a menu icon displays a variety of vehicle data or allows vehicle settings to be customized.



■ Menu icons

Drive information (→P.113)

Navigation system-linked display (→P.115)

Audio system-linked display (→P.116)

Driving support system information display (→P.116)

Warning message display (→P.399)

Settings display (→P.116)

■ Opening image display

When the engine switch <power switch> is in ACC or ON, the opening image is displayed on the multi-information display.

While the opening image is being displayed, the meter display cannot be changed even if the drive mode is changed. When the opening image is finished, the meter display for the currently selected mode will be displayed.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting 12-volt battery terminals

Record of the maximum G-forces will be reset.

■ Liquid crystal display

→P.110

WARNING

■ Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

WARNING

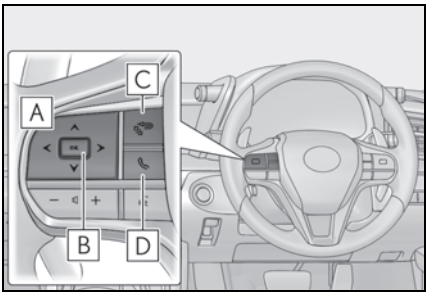
■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

Changing the meter display

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



A ◀/▶: Switch menu
▲/▼: Change displayed content, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor up/down

B Press: Enter/Set
Press and hold: Reset

C Return to the previous screen and move the main meter

D Call sending/receiving and history display

Linked with the hands-free system, sending or receiving call is displayed. For details regarding the hands-free system, refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Drive information

■ Content of drive information

Select to display various drive data.

Up to 2 of the following items can be selected.

Items displayed can be switched by pressing ◀ or ▶ of the meter control switches to select ⓘ and pressing ▲ or ▼.

- Current fuel consumption*1

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

- Average fuel economy (after reset*2/after start/after refuel)*1

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset, the engine <hybrid system> was started, and the vehicle was refueled, respectively

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

- Average speed (after reset*2/after start)*1

Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset and the engine <hybrid system> was started, respectively

- Elapsed time (after reset*2/after start)*1

Displays the elapsed time since the function was reset and the engine <hybrid sys-

tem> was started, respectively

● Distance (range/after start)*1

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining and the distance driven after the engine <hybrid system> was started respectively.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
  When refueling, turn the engine switch <power switch> off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch <power switch> off, the display may not be updated.

*1: Displayed when the item is set in "Drive Info 1" or "Drive Info 2".

*2: The function can be reset by pressing "OK" of the meter control switches for longer than 1 second when the item to reset is displayed.
If there is more than one item that can be reset, the item selection screen will appear.

■ **Eco Driving Indicator/engine oil temperature gauge (LC500)**

→P.106, 108

■ **Hybrid System Indicator/motor power display (LC500h)**

→P.106

■ **Energy monitor (LC500h)**

→P.123

■ **Tire pressure**

→P.359

■ **Gear positions**

Displays the current shift range or gear position when the shift position is in D or M.

■ **Units**

The units of measure used can be changed while driving.

Unlike the units setting performed on the settings display, the units setting performed on the drive information menu can be changed while driving.

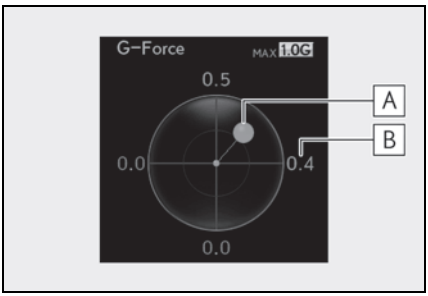
■ **G-force**

Displays lateral G-forces on the vehicle

● Reading the display

- Normal display

Displays the following on the multi-information display



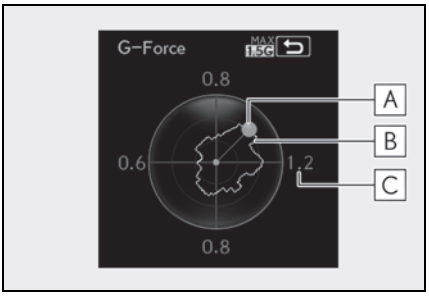
A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

- Advanced display

Displays the following on the multi-information display and main meter

Multi-information display:



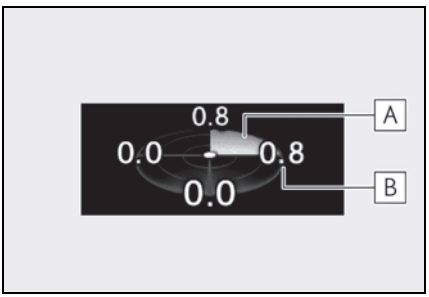
A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Record of the maximum G-forces

C Value of the maximum G-force since display reset (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

Main meter:



A G-force direction

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

- Switching the display

To switch to advanced display, press "OK".

To return to normal display, press "OK".

- Resetting the record of maximum G-forces

With the record of maximum G-forces displayed, press and hold "OK" to reset the display.

- Peak hold function (advanced display only)

If lateral G-forces of 0.5 G or greater are generated, the G-force value displayed on the main meter will turn yellow and be held for 3 seconds.



Rear wing position (if equipped)

Displays the raised/retracted state of the active rear wing

Display off

A blank screen is displayed

Navigation system-linked display

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.

- Route guidance
- Compass display

Audio system-linked display

The operating conditions of the audio system can be displayed on the multi-information display.

Driving support system information display

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (→P.239)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.251)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (→P.248)

Warning message display

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected. (→P.399)

Settings display

Select to change the meter display settings.

■ Language

Select to change the language on the display.

■ Units

Select to change the unit of measure for fuel consumption.

■ Eco Driving Indicator Light (LC500)

Select to activate/deactivate the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

■ EV indicator (LC500h)

Select to activate/deactivate the EV indicator.

■ Drive information 1/Drive information 2

Select up to 2 items that will be displayed on the "Drive Info 1" screen and "Drive Info 2" screen respectively. (→P.113)

■ Pop-up display

Select to set the following pop-up displays, which may appear in some situations, on/off.

- Route guidance display of the navigation system-linked system
- Making call display of the hands-free phone system
- Audio system operation display
- Instrument panel brightness adjustment display

■ Ring position memory

Select to change the meter ring position when the engine <hybrid system> is started.

The position before the engine <hybrid system> is stopped or the center position can be selected.

■ Accent color

Select to change the accent color on the screen, such as the cursor color.

■ Rev indicator

Select to set the rev indicator on/off.

When set to on, proceed to select the engine speed at which the rev indicator will be displayed.

Rev peak

Select to set the rev peak on/off.

Clock

Select to switch between 12-hour display and 24-hour display.

Initialization

Select to reset the meter display settings.

Suspension of the settings display

In the following situations, operation of the settings display will be temporarily suspended.

- When a warning message appears on the multi-information display
- When the vehicle begins to move

Customization

The settings can be changed on of the multi-information display.

- Settings of the driving assist systems (→P.447)
- Vehicle settings (→P.119, 360, 362, 447)

WARNING

Cautions during setting up the display

As the engine <hybrid system> needs to be running <operating> during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

While setting up the display

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running <hybrid system is operating> while setting up the display features.

Suggestion function

Displays suggestions to the driver in the following situations. For some suggestions, a response to a displayed suggestion can be selected. To select a response, use the meter control switches.

The suggestion function can be turned on/off.

Suggestion to turn on the headlights

If the headlight switch is in other than or AUTO, and the vehicle speed is 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher for a certain amount of time when the surroundings are dark, a suggestion message will be displayed.

Suggestion to turn off the headlights

If the headlights are left on for a certain amount of time after the engine switch <power switch> has been turned off, a suggestion message will be displayed.

When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position:

The message asking if you wish to turn the headlights off is displayed. To turn the headlights off, select “Yes”.

If a door is opened after the engine switch

<power switch> is turned off, this suggestion message will not be displayed.

■ **Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to windshield wiper operation)**

If the windshield wipers are operated with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows. To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ **Suggestion to unlock the power windows**

Except Convertible: If it is attempt to close the passenger's side window using the power window switch on the driver's door, a suggestion message will be displayed.

Convertible: If it is attempt to close the passenger's side window using the power window switch on the driver's door or all window control switch, a suggestion message will be displayed.

■ **Customization**

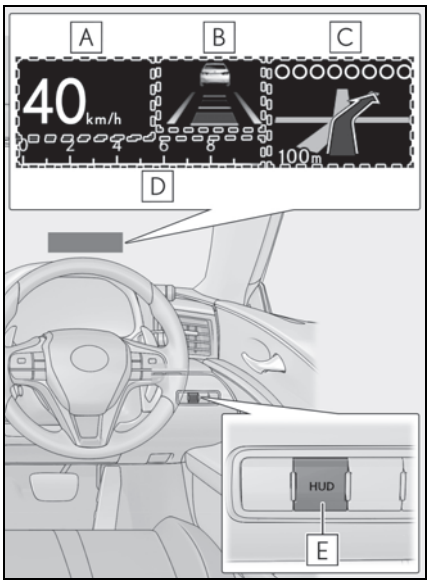
The suggestion function can be turned on/off. (Customizable features: →P.447)

Head-up display*

*: If equipped

The head-up display is linked to the meters and navigation system and projects a variety of information in front of the driver, such as the current vehicle speed and route guidance to a set destination.

System components



A Vehicle speed display

B Driving support system status display area

Displays the current shift position, and shift range/gear position, or the operational status of the following systems:

- Pre-collision warning (Pre-Collision System) (→P.229)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.251)

• LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (→P.239)

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanations of each system.

C Navigation system-linked display area (→P.121)

RSA (Road Sign Assist) display area (→P.248)

Displays the following items, which are linked to the navigation system:

- Street name
- Route guidance to destination
- Compass

D Information display area (→P.121)

Displays the following items:

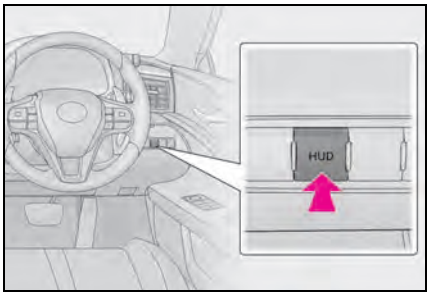
- Warning/message
- / icon (→P.121)
- Audio system operation status
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range status (→P.251)
- Hands-free system status (→P.121)
- Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer (LC500) (→P.122)
- Hybrid System Indicator/motor power display/tachometer (LC500h) (→P.122)

E HUD (Head-up display) switch

Using the head-up display

■ Enabling/Disabling the head-up display

Pressing the switch turns the head-up display on/off.



■ Changing settings of the head-up display

Select on the multi-information display (→P.112) to change the following settings:

● Display brightness/position

Select to adjust the brightness and position of the head-up display.

● Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer (LC500)

Select to display Eco Driving Indicator, tachometer or no content.

● Hybrid System Indicator/motor power display/tachometer (LC500h)

Select to display Hybrid System Indicator, tachometer or no content.

Motor power display can be displayed when Hybrid System Indicator is selected while the driving mode (→P.263) is other than the Eco drive mode.

● Display content

Select to enable/disable the following items:

- Route guidance to destination
- Driving assist system status
- Compass
- Audio system operation status

● Display angle

Select to adjust the angle of the head-up display.

■ **Head-up display**

- The head-up display may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses. Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.
- When the head-up display is turned off, it will remain off even if the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ACC or ON after the engine switch <power switch> has been turned off.
- The startup image will be displayed on the head-up display after the engine switch <power switch> has been turned to ON while the head-up display switch is set to on.

■ **Display brightness**

The brightness of the head-up display can be adjusted on of the multi-information display. Also, it is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

■ **Head-up display automatic position adjustment**

If the display position is recorded into memory, the head-up display will be automatically adjusted to the desired position. (→P.148)

■ **When the 12-volt battery is disconnected**

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. display) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.447)

WARNING

■ **Before using the head-up display**

- Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

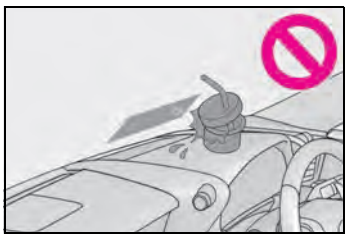
■ **Caution for changing settings of the head-up display**

As the engine needs to be running <hybrid system needs to be operating> while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to components**

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.



- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector. Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.

NOTICE

- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.

When changing the settings of the head-up display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running <hybrid system is operating> while changing the settings of the head-up display.

Information display area

Displays the following items in the appropriate situation:

Warning/message

Displays the following warning/messages:

- Master warning message
- Notification message (Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range)
- Other messages

/ icons

Displays the following multi-information display linked icons:

: Master warning icon

Displayed when a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.399)

: Information icon

Displayed when a suggestion/advice pop-up display is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.117)

Hands-free system status

Displayed when the hands-free system is operated.

Audio system operation status

Displayed when the audio system is operated.

Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer (LC500)

Displays either of Eco Driving Indicator or the tachometer.

Hybrid System Indicator/motor power display/tachometer (LC500h)

Displays either of Hybrid System Indicator or the tachometer.

Motor power display can be displayed when Hybrid System Indicator is selected while the driving mode (→P.263) is other than the Eco drive mode.

Navigation system-linked display area

Displays the following items which are linked to the navigation system:

Street name

When the navigation system is performing route guidance, the name of the next street will be displayed on the top of the display area.

Route guidance to destination

Displayed when the navigation system is performing route guidance. When approaching an intersection, an arrow

will be displayed to indicate the suggested direction of travel.

■ Compass

Displays the direction of travel.

■ Street name display

Only street names which are included in the map data will be displayed.

Pop-up display

Warning/suggestion/advice message or the operating state of a relevant systems will be displayed when necessary.

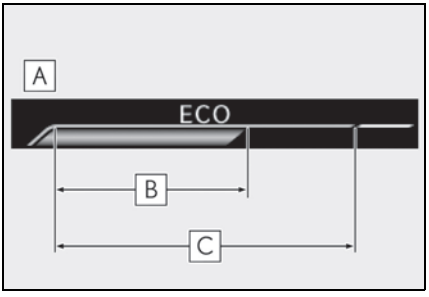
- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (→P.229)
- Brake Override System (→P.175)
- Drive-Start Control (DSC) (→P.175)

■ When a pop-up display is displayed

When a pop-up display is displayed, a current display may no longer be displayed. In this case, the display will return after the pop-up display disappears.

Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer (LC500)

■ Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

B Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

C Zone of Eco driving

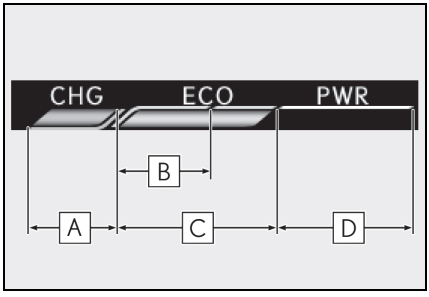
Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display (Eco Driving Indicator). For details, refer to P.106.

■ Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

Hybrid System Indicator/motor power display/tachometer (LC500h)

■ Hybrid System Indicator



A Charge area

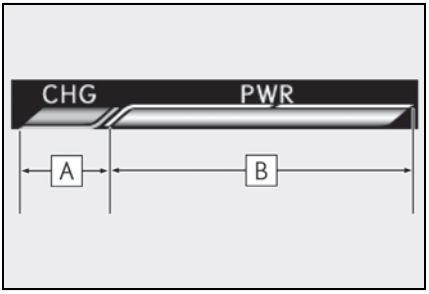
B Hybrid Eco area

C Eco area

D Power area

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the meter (Hybrid System Indicator). For details, refer to P.106.

■ Motor power display



A Charge area

B Power area

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the meter (Motor power display). For details, refer to P.107.

Motor power display can be displayed when Hybrid System Indicator is selected while the driving mode (→P.263) is other than the Eco drive mode.

■ Tachometer

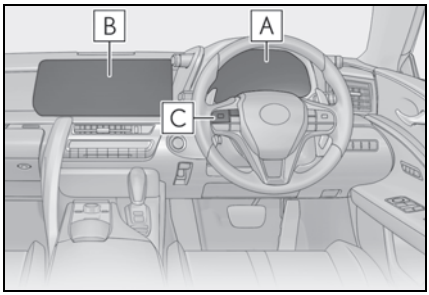
Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

Energy monitor*/consumption screen

*: If equipped

You can view the status of your hybrid system (LC500h) and fuel consumption information on the multi-information display and Center Display.

System components



A Multi-information display (LC500h)

B Center Display

C Meter control switches (LC500h)

Energy monitor (LC500h)

The energy monitor can be used to check the vehicle drive status, hybrid system operation status and energy regeneration status.

■ Display procedure

▶ Multi-information display

Press ◀ or ▶ of the meter control switches and select ⓘ, and then press

or to select the energy monitor display.

▶ Center Display

1 Select on the main menu.

2 Select “Energy flow”.

■ Reading the display

The arrows will appear in accordance with the energy flow. When there is no energy flow, arrows will not be displayed.

The color of the arrows will change as follows

Blue: When the hybrid battery (traction battery) is regenerated or charged.

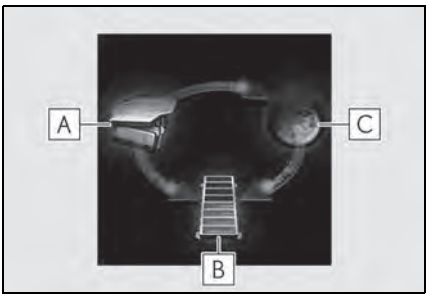
Yellow*1/Orange*2: When the hybrid battery (traction battery) is in use.

Red: When the gasoline engine is in use.

*1: Multi-information display

*2: Center Display

▶ Multi-information display



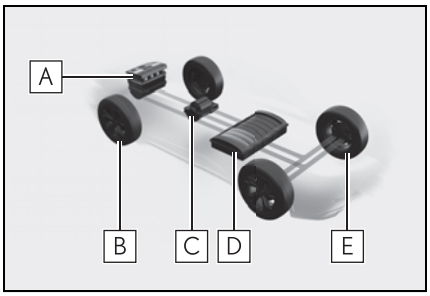
The image shows all the arrows as an example. The actual display will vary depending on conditions.

A Gasoline engine

B Hybrid battery (traction battery)

C Tires

▶ Center Display



The image shows all the arrows as an example. The actual display will vary depending on conditions.

A Gasoline engine

B Front tires

C Electric motor (traction motor)

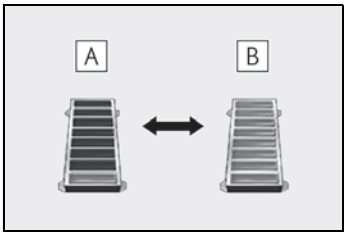
D Hybrid battery (traction battery)

E Rear tires

■ Hybrid battery (traction battery) status

The display changes in 8 levels according to the remaining charge amount of the hybrid battery (traction battery).

- The figure shows the multi-information display as an example for explanation.
- These images are examples only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.



A Low

B High

■ **Remaining charge amount warning of hybrid battery (traction battery)**

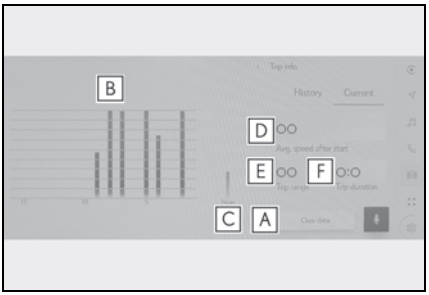
- The buzzer sounds intermittently when the hybrid battery (traction battery) remains without charging while the shift lever is in N, or the remaining charge amount drops below a certain level. If the remaining charge amount drops further, the buzzer sounds continuously.
- When a warning message is shown on the multi-information display and the buzzer sounds, follow the instructions displayed on the screen to perform troubleshooting.

Current screen

■ **Display procedure**

1. Select on the main menu.
2. Select "Trip information".
3. Select "Current".

■ **Display**



A Resetting the history data

B Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

C Current fuel consumption

D Average vehicle speed since the engine <hybrid system> was started.

E Trip range

F Elapsed time since the engine <hybrid system> was started.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

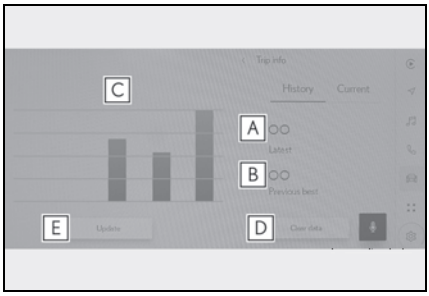
The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

History screen

■ **Display procedure**

1. Select on the main menu.
2. Select "Trip information".
3. Select "History".

■ **Display**



A Latest fuel consumption

B Best recorded fuel consumption

C Previous fuel consumption record

D Resetting the history data

E Updating the latest fuel consumption data

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ **Updating the history data**

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting "Update" to measure the current

fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting “Clear data”.

■ **Trip range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

3-1. Key information

Keys 128

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Doors 132

Trunk 136

Smart entry & start system 140

3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats 146

Driving position memory 148

Head restraints 152

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel 154

Inside rear view mirror 155

Outside rear view mirrors 156

3-5. Opening, closing the windows

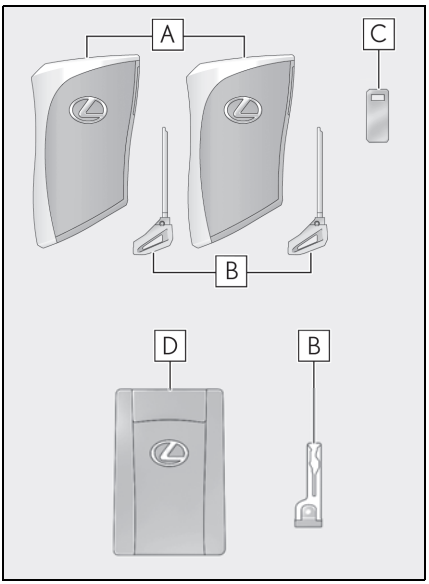
Power windows 159

Soft top roof (Convertible) 163

Keys

Key types

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.140)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

B Mechanical keys

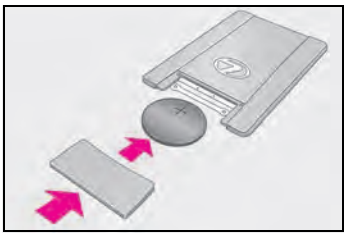
C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.140)

■ Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc. (→P.130)



■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is from one year to one year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine <hybrid system> is stopped.
- Electronic keys that will not be used for long periods of time can be set to the battery-saving mode in advance. (→P.142)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P.375)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface

does not turn on.

You can replace the battery by yourself (→P.375). However, as there is a danger that the electronic key may be damaged, it is recommended that the replacement be carried out by your Lexus dealer.

- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers

■ Replacing the battery

→P.375

■ Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

■ If "A New Key has been Registered Contact Your Dealer for Details" is shown on the multi-information display

This message will be displayed each time the driver's door is opened when the doors are unlocked from the outside for approximately 10 days after a new electronic key has been registered.
If this message is displayed but you have not had a new electronic key registered, ask your Lexus dealer to check if an unknown electronic key (other than those in your possession) has been registered.

NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers.
- Do not place the keys near medical electrical equipment such as low-frequency therapy equipment or microwave therapy equipment, and do not receive medical attention with the keys on your person.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

→P.410

■ When an electronic key is lost

→P.409

■ Handling the card key (if equipped)

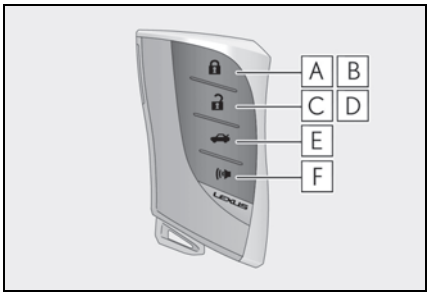
- Except Convertible: Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.

NOTICE

- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover.
  Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



A Locks the doors (→P.132)

B Closes the windows* (→P.132)

C Unlocks the doors (→P.132)

D Opens the windows* (→P.132)

E Opens the trunk (→P.138)

F Sounds the alarm

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Theft deterrent panic mode

When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

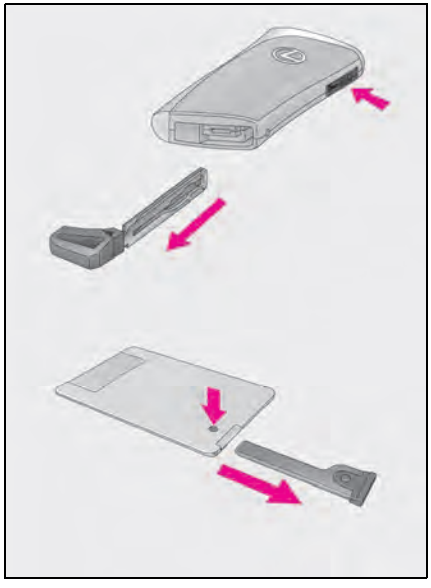


Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.410)



■ When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off and lock the glove box (→P.311) as circumstances demand.
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ If you lose your mechanical keys

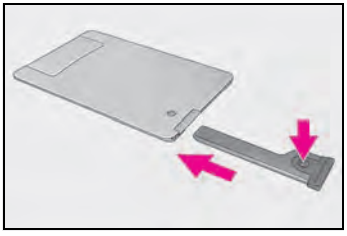
→P.409

■ If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely, isolated from the internal mechanism.

■ Card key (if equipped)

- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.

NOTICE

■ Handling the card key (if equipped)

Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key.

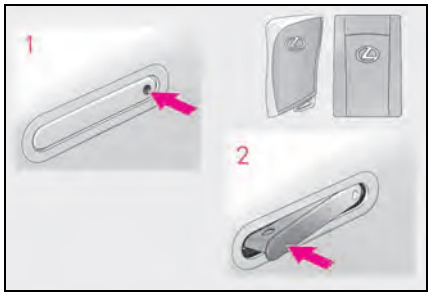
Doing so may damage the card key.

Doors

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

■ Smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Push the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Push the depression on the front edge of the passenger's door handle to unlock both side doors.*

The outside door handles will be extended.

The extended outside door handles are automatically retracted in approximately 60 seconds.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed.

2 Push the rear edge of the extended door handle to lock the doors.

If the outside door handles are extended, they will be retracted.

After locking the doors, check that the door is securely locked with the door lock indicator (→P.135).

■ Wireless remote control



1 Locks both side doors

The outside door handles will be retracted if they have been extended.

After locking the doors, check that the door is securely locked with the door lock indicator (→P.135).

Press and hold to close the windows.*

2 Unlocks both side doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 5 seconds unlocks the other door.

The outside door handles will be extended.

Press and hold to open the windows.*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Side window open/close function linked to door operation

When a door is opened, its window opens slightly. When a door is closed, its window closes completely.

■ Speed-linked outside door handle retracting function

When the vehicle speed reaches 10 km/h (6 mph), the outside door handles will be retracted.

■ To extend the outside door handles retracted automatically

The outside door handle can be extended by pushing the depression on the front edge of it. To lock the doors, push the rear

edge of the outside door handle after extending it once.

■ **Switching the door unlock function**

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1. Turn the engine switch <power switch> off.
2. Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (→P.98)
3. When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step **3**.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
  Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once	Pushing the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
	Pushing the depression on the front edge of the passenger's door handle unlocks both side doors.
  Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once	Pushing the depression on the front edge of either door handle unlocks both side doors.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.97)

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, both side doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Operation signals**

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows are operating.

Convertible: Depending on the opening/closing state of the soft top roof, the buzzer may be delayed.

■ **Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ **Open door warning buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Setting the alarm**

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.97)

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control**

→P.142

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.410)
Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.375)

■ **If the 12-volt battery is discharged**

The doors cannot be locked and unlocked using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control. Lock or unlock the doors using the mechanical key. (→P.410)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant being thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that both side doors are properly closed.
- Except Convertible: Do not pull the inside door handle while driving.
  The driver's door may opened even if they are locked.
- Convertible: Do not pull the inside door handle while driving.

The doors may opened even if they are locked.

■ **Side window open/close function linked to door operation**

Do not hold the upper edge of the side window when you close the door. Otherwise, your fingers or hand may be caught in the window.

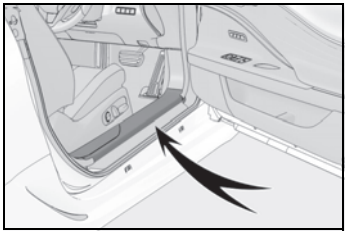
■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows**

Operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.

WARNING

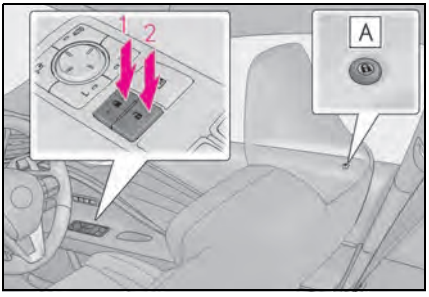
■ When entering and exiting the vehicle

Do not step on the scuff plate. Slipping on the surface may result in injury.



Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

■ Door lock switches



1 Locks both side doors

The indicator A comes on.

2 Unlocks both side doors

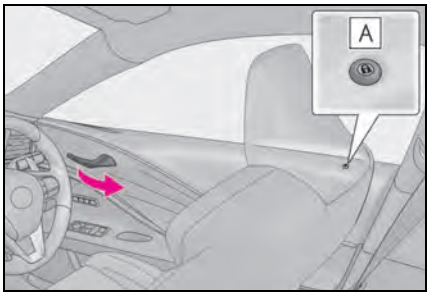
The indicator A turns off.

■ Inside door handles

Pull the inside door handle to unlock the door.

The door lock indicator A turns off.

The doors can be opened by pulling the inside door handle even if the door lock indicator A illuminates.



■ Door lock indicator

The door lock indicator turns on when the door is locked. When the engine switch <power switch> is off, the door lock indicator will turn off automatically after 30 seconds.



■ If a symbol indicating one or both side doors open is shown on the multi-information display

The hood, one or both side doors, or trunk is not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), the master warning light flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not fully closed. Make sure to close hood, both side doors and trunk.

■ Customization

The time elapsed before the door lock indicator turns off can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.447)

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P.447

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	Both side doors are automatically locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	Both side doors are automatically locked when the shift position is shifted to a position other than P.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Both side doors are automatically unlocked when the shift position is shifted to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	Both side doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened within approximately 45 seconds after turning the engine switch <power switch> off.

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener switch, entry function or wireless remote control.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before driving

- Make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the trunk may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could suffer from heat exhaustion, suffocation or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

■ Important points while driving

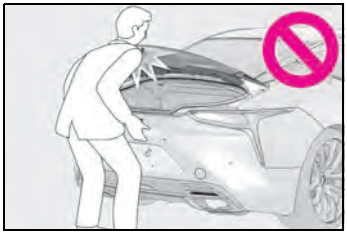
Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ Using the trunk

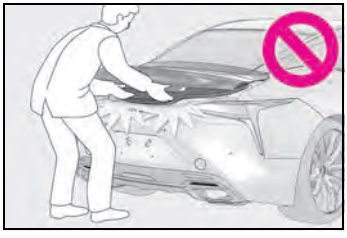
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

WARNING

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- On an incline it is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- When opening the trunk lid, take care so that it does not hit anyone in the face or any other part of the body.



- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.



- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk grip is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not pull on the trunk damper stay to close the trunk lid, and do not hang on the trunk damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the trunk damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

NOTICE

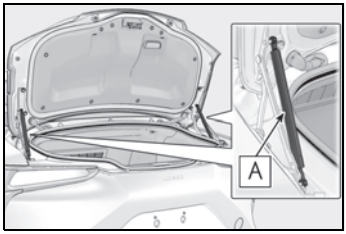
Trunk damper stays

The trunk is equipped with damper stays A that hold the trunk lid in place. Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the trunk damper stay A, resulting in malfunction.

- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid.

NOTICE

● Do not place your hand on the damper stay A or apply lateral forces to it.

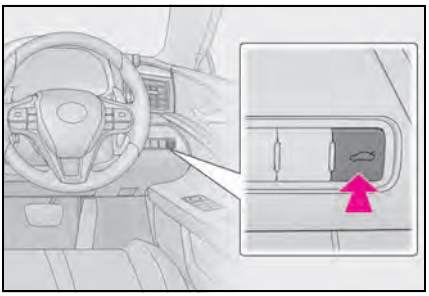


Opening the trunk

■ Trunk opener switch

Press the trunk opener switch.

Convertible: When the doors has been locked using the entry function or wireless remote control, the trunk cannot be opened.

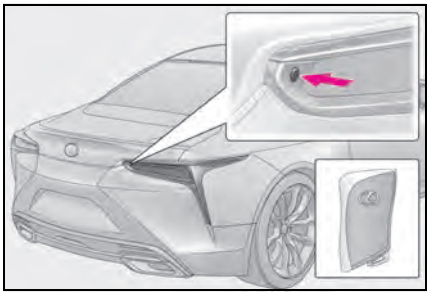


■ Smart entry & start system

While carrying the electronic key, press the button.

When both side doors are unlocked using one of the following methods, the trunk can be opened without the electronic key:

- Entry function
- Wireless remote control
- Door lock switches
- Automatic door unlocking system
- Mechanical key



■ Wireless remote control

Press and hold the switch.

A buzzer sounds.



■ When the operation of the soft top roof has not been completed (Convertible)

The trunk lid cannot be opened. Wait until the soft top roof is fully opened or closed before opening the trunk lid. (→P.163)

■ Trunk light

The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

■ Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside

● When both side doors are locked, closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm. In this case, the trunk lid can be opened by pressing the trunk release button on the trunk lid.

● If the spare electronic key is put in the

trunk with both side doors locked, the key confinement prevention function is activated so the trunk can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.

- If the electronic key is put in the trunk with both side doors locked, the key may not be detected depending on the location of the key and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the trunk to be locked when the trunk lid is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the trunk.
- The key confinement prevention function cannot be activated if either door is unlocked. In this case, open the trunk using the trunk opener switch.
- If the trunk lid is closed by a hand having the electronic key when the both side doors are locked, a warning buzzer may sound. In this case, the trunk is not locked. Do not close the trunk lid by a hand having the electronic key.

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the trunk opener switch to unlock the trunk. (→P.410) Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.375)

■ **If a symbol indicating the trunk opens is shown on the multi-information display**

→P.135

■ **If the 12-volt battery is discharged**

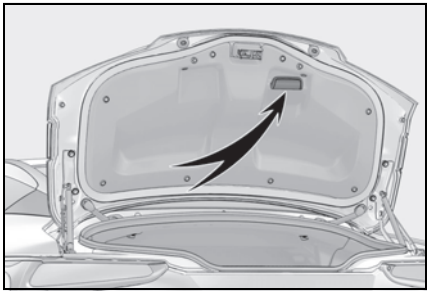
The trunk cannot be locked and unlocked using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control. Lock or unlock the trunk using the mechanical key. (→P.412)

■ **Customization**

The trunk unlocking operation can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.447)

Closing the trunk

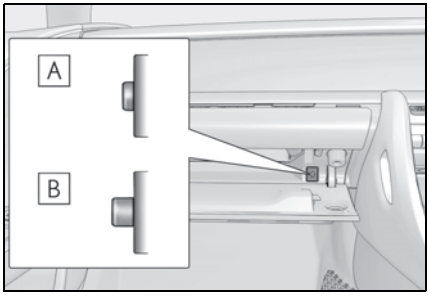
Using the trunk grip, lower the trunk without applying force to the side and push the trunk down from the outside to close it.



Protecting luggage against theft

The trunk opener switch can be temporarily disabled to protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft.

Turn the trunk opener main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.



A On

B Off

When the trunk opener main switch is off, the trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or entry function.

■ **When leaving a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant**

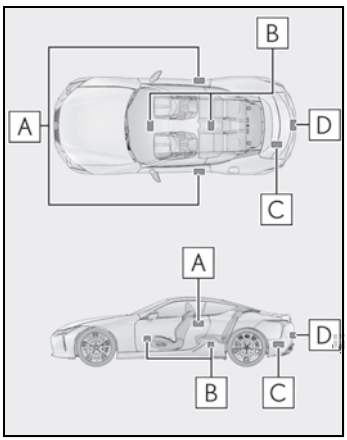
→P.131

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.132)
- Opens the trunk (→P.138)
- Starts the engine <hybrid system> (→P.183, 186)

■ Antenna location (except Convertible)



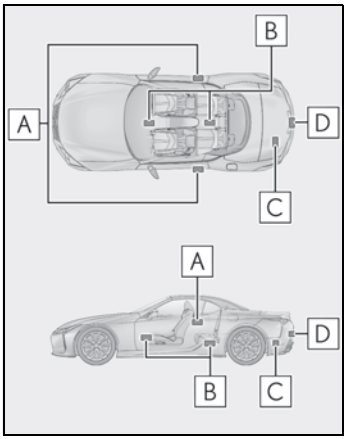
A Antennas outside the cabin

B Antennas inside the cabin

C Antenna inside the trunk

D Antenna outside the trunk

■ Antenna location (Convertible)



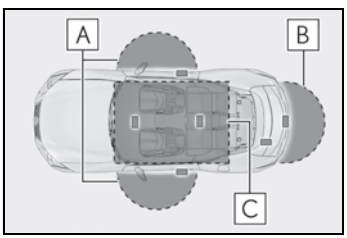
A Antennas outside the cabin

B Antennas inside the cabin

C Antenna inside the trunk

D Antenna outside the trunk

■ Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected) (except Convertible)



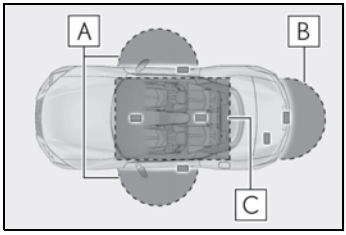
A When locking or unlocking the doors
The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When opening the trunk
The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m

(2.3 ft.) of the trunk release button.

C When starting the engine <hybrid system> or changing engine switch <power switch> modes
The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected) (Convertible)**



A When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When opening the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of the trunk release button.

C When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **If an alarm sounds or a warning message is displayed**

An alarm sounds and warning messages are displayed on the multi-information display to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message.

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

● When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
The trunk was closed while the electronic key was still inside the trunk and both side doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close both side doors and lock the doors again.

● Except Convertible: When an interior alarm sounds continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch <power switch> was turned to ACC while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch <power switch> was in ACC).	Turn the engine switch <power switch> off and close the driver's door.
The engine switch <power switch> was turned off while the driver's door was open.	Close the driver's door.

● Convertible: When an interior alarm sounds continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACC while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACC).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.
The engine switch was turned off while the driver's door was open.	Close the driver's door.

■ **If "Key Detected in Vehicle" is shown on the multi-information display**

An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle. Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the 12-volt battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

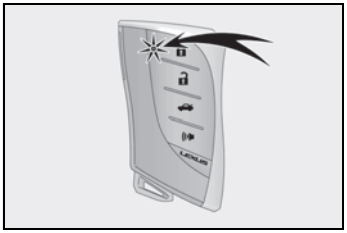
● In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
- The electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
- The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.

● If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at the passenger door. In this case, push the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ **Turning an electronic key to battery-saving mode**

● When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.
While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



● Electronic keys that will not be used for long periods of time can be set to the battery-saving mode in advance.

■ **When electronic key function stops**

If the position of the electronic key has not changed for a certain amount of time such as when the electronic key is left somewhere, the function of the electronic key stops to reduce depletion of the battery. In this case, function can automatically be restored by moving the position of the key such as by lifting it up.

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system <immobilizer system> from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P.410)

● When the electronic key battery is depleted

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices
- When the vehicle is parked in a pay parking spot where radio waves are emitted.

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the center of the rear bumper when the trunk is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine <hybrid system> is started or engine switch <power switch> modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the doors will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine <hybrid system> if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash, when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In this case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle.

(Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.142)

● If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock both side doors.

● If an outside door handle is not retracted during a car wash, a door may be opened or an outside door handle may be damaged. Make sure that the outside door handles are retracted before using the car wash.

● A sudden handle operation or a handle operation immediately after entering the effective range may prevent the doors from being unlocked. Touch the door unlock sensor and check that the doors are unlocked before pulling the door handle again.

● Unlocking the vehicle may take more time if another electronic key is within the effective range.

■ **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**

● To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.

● The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance.

■ **To operate the system properly**

● Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

● Do not leave the electronic key inside the trunk.
The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (the inside edge of the trunk), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (→P.138)

■ **If an electronic key does not work properly**

● If the doors cannot be locked or unlocked and the trunk cannot be opened, perform the following.
- Doors: Bring the electronic key close to the door handle and perform a lock or unlock operation.
- Trunk: Bring the electronic key close to the button on the trunk (→P.138) and press the button.
- Use the wireless remote control.

If the doors cannot be locked or unlocked by perform the above, use the mechanical key. (→P.410)

However, if the mechanical key is used while the alarm system is set, the warning will sound. (→P.97)

● If the engine <hybrid system> cannot be started, refer to P.411

■ **Customization**

Settings (e. g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to the explanations for the following operations.

● Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk:
Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.132, 138, 410)

● Starting the engine <hybrid system> and changing engine switch <power switch> modes: →P.411

● Stopping the engine <hybrid system>: →P.184, 188

WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P.140)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.

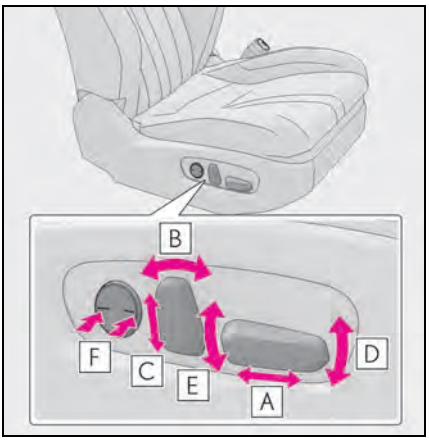
- User of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

Front seats

The seats can be adjusted (longitudinally, vertically, etc.). Adjust the seat to ensure the correct driving posture.

Adjustment procedure



A Seat position adjustment

B Seatback angle adjustment

C Head restraint height adjustment (if equipped) (→P.152)

D Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment

E Vertical height adjustment

F Lumbar support adjustment

■ **When adjusting the seat**

- Make sure that any surrounding passengers or objects are not contact the seat.
- Take care when adjusting the seat so that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling.
- Vehicles with power head restraint: Depending on the position of the front seat, the front head restraint may not be able to be adjusted upward if it is close to the ceiling.

■ **Seat-linked function**

- This function operates when the seat is moved forward, backward or in the reclining direction a certain distance or more.
- Vehicles with power head restraint: When the seat is adjusted forward a certain distance or more, the head restraint moves down.
- Vehicles with power head restraint: When the seat is raised a certain distance or more, the seat stops and the head restraint moves down.

■ **Power easy access system**

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch <power switch> mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.148)

WARNING

■ **When adjusting the seat position**

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

WARNING

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Entering/exiting the rear seats (lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat)

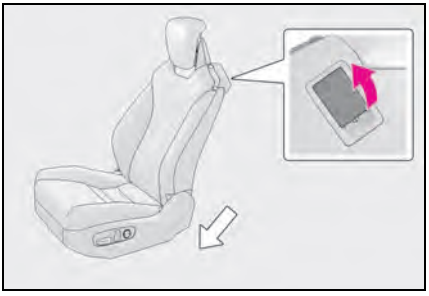
■ Before entering/exiting the rear seats

- Remove the seat belt from the seat belt guide. (→P.35)
- Stow the sun visor.

■ Entering/exiting the rear seat

1 Pull the lever.

The front seat will lower automatically.



2 Fold the seatback completely forward.

The front seat will move forward and the head restraint will move downward* automatically.



*: Power type only

■ Returning the front seat to its original position

Move the seatback backward until it locks. The front seat will return to its original position automatically.

■ Lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat

- After the front seat is moved forward by operating the "Front, Fold & Return" seat lever, if a power seat adjusting switch or a driving position memory switch is pressed, the front seat will not return to its original position even if the front seatback is moved backward until it locks.
- The lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat will not operate in the following situations:
  - The seat belt of the seat to be operated is fastened.
  - The engine switch <power switch> is in ON and the shift position is in a position other than P.
- Operation of the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat will stop in the following situations:
  - A power seat adjusting switch or a driving position memory switch is pressed.
  - The seat belt of the seat which is operating is fastened.
  - The engine switch <power switch> is in ON and the shift position is changed to a position other than P.

● If the front seat is close to the sun visor or other surrounding parts, frontwards and upwards movement may be restricted.

■ **Jam protection function**

While the driving position is recalling or the power easy access system is operating, if an object is stuck behind the front seat, the front seat will stop and then move slightly forward.

While the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat is operating, if an object is stuck either in front of or behind the front seat, the front seat will stop and then move in the opposite direction slightly.

When the jam protection function operates, the seat stops at a position other than the set seat position. Check the seat position.

WARNING

■ **Lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat**

● Before operating the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat, ensure that any surrounding passengers or objects will not contact the seat.

● Make sure the seatback is locked securely before driving.

● Never operate the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat while the vehicle is moving.

■ **Jam protection function**

Do not use a hand, foot, or any other part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

Driving position memory

This feature automatically adjusts the positions of the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Up to 3 different driving positions can be recorded.

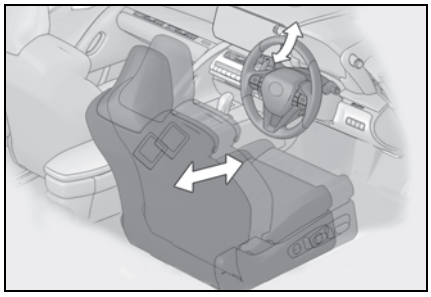
Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

Power easy access system

The seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift position has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch <power switch> has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.



When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch <power switch> has been turned to ACC or ON.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

■ **Operation of the power easy access system**

- When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.
- If the seat or power head restraint (if equipped) position is adjusted during the power easy access system operation, the automatic operating will stop. (The seat will change to manual operation.)
- If the seat or power head restraint (if equipped) position is adjusted during or after the power easy access system operation when the driver is exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system will not operate when entering the vehicle.
- Vehicles with power head restraint: If the head restraint is close to the ceiling when the driver is exiting the vehicle, the head restraint may move down during the power easy access system operation. Also, the head restraint may be restricted from being adjusted upward after the power easy access system operates. When the driver is entering the vehicle, the head restraint returns to its original position.

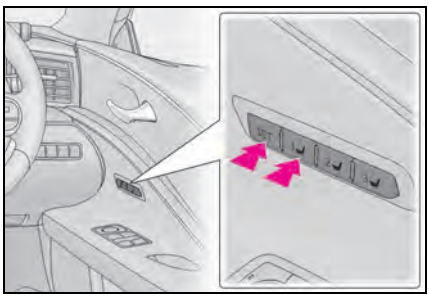
■ **Customization**

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

Recording a driving position into memory

1. Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.
2. Check that the shift position is in P.
3. Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display to the desired positions.
4. While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



■ **Seat positions that can be memorized (→P.146)**

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

■ **In order to correctly use the driving position memory function**

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

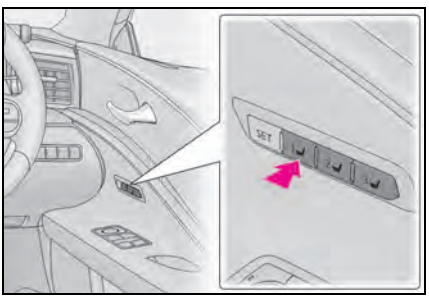
Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Recalling a driving position

1 Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.

2 Check that the shift position is in P.

3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



■ **To stop the position recall operation part-way through**

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).
- Operate the head-up display position adjustment switch (if equipped) (only cancels head-up display position recall).

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch <power switch> off**

Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

■ **When the recorded seat position cannot be recalled**

The seat position may not be recalled in some situations when the seat position is recorded in a certain range. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

Registering/canceling/recalling a driving position to an electronic key (including a card key) (memory recall function)

■ **Registering procedure**

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

1 Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.

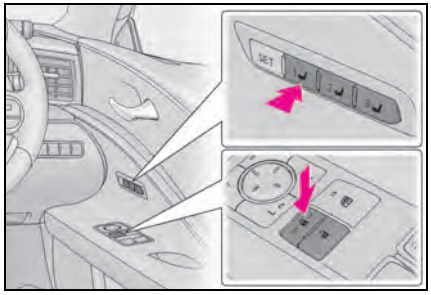
2 Check that the shift position is in P.

3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.

4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch

(either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



■ Cancelation procedure

1 Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

2 Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.

3 Check that the shift position is in P.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If the button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ Recall procedure

1 Make sure that the doors are locked before recalling the driving position. Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel and head-up display).

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ACC or ON, or fasten a seat belt.

The steering wheel and head-up display will move to the recorded position.

■ Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If the passenger's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ Customization

The unlock door settings of the memory recall function can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.447)

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for front seats.

Convertible: For removing and installation of the head restraint, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

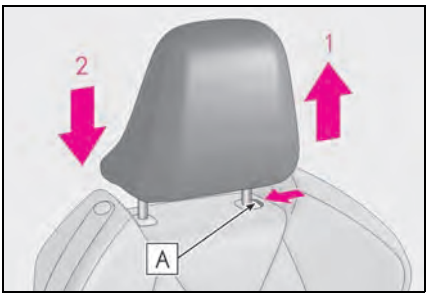
■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Manual type: After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Manual type: Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Vertical adjustment

▶ Manual type



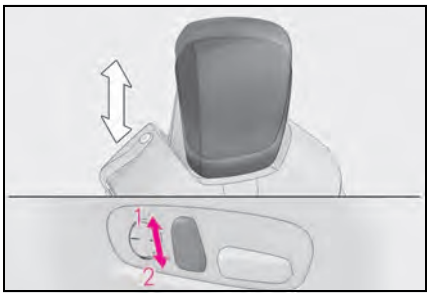
1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button A .

▶ Power type



1 Up

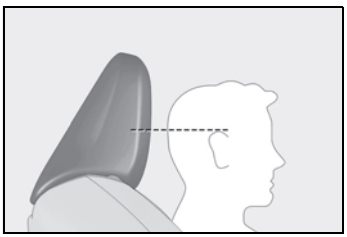
2 Down

■ About the head restraints (power type)

Depending on the position of the front seat, the front head restraint may not be able to be adjusted upward if it is close to the ceiling.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints

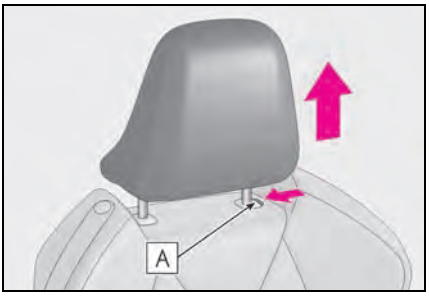
Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



Removing the head restraints (manual type head restraint except for Convertible)

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button A .

If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P.146)



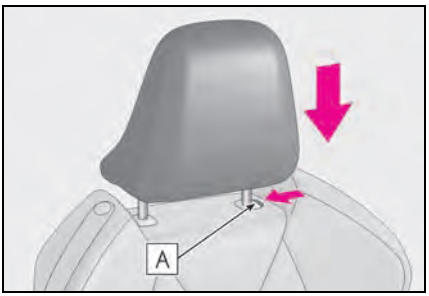
■ **Removing the head restraints (power type only)**

For removing and installation of the head restraint, contact your Lexus dealer.

Installing the head restraints (manual type head restraint except for Convertible)

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

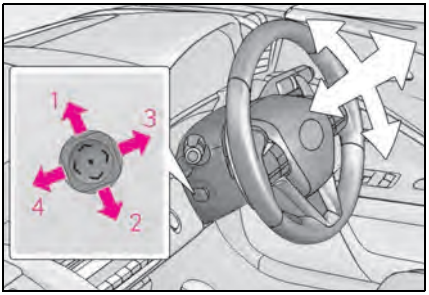
Press and hold the lock release button A when lowering the head restraint.



Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

■ The steering wheel can be adjusted when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ACC or ON.

■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.148)

■ Power easy access system

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch <power switch> mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.148)

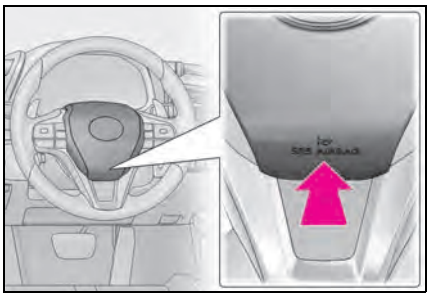
WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Sounding the horn

Press on or close to the mark.



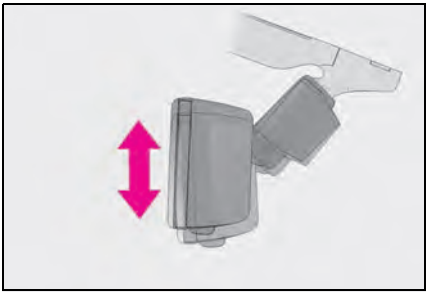
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



WARNING

■ Caution while driving

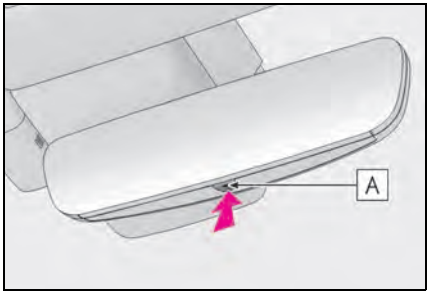
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

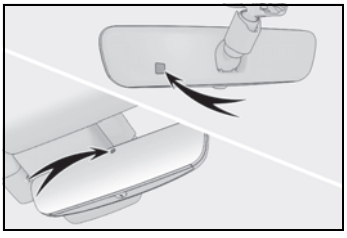
Turn the automatic anti-glare function mode on/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator A illuminates. The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON.
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator A also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

When using the outside rear view mirrors in a cold weather

When it is cold and the outside rear view mirrors are frozen, it may not be possible to fold/extend them or adjust the mirror surface. Remove the ice, snow, etc. covering the outside rear view mirrors.

WARNING

Important points while driving

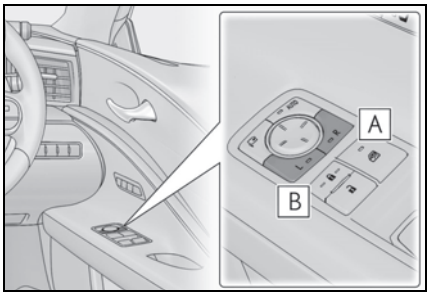
Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

The indicator comes on.

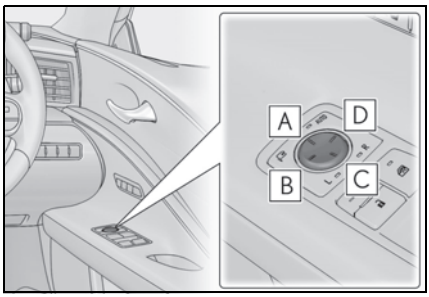


A Right

B Left

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.

2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.



A Up

B Left

C Down

D Right

Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ACC or ON.

Defogging the mirrors

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers.

(→P.299)

■ **Auto anti-glare function**

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P.155)

■ **Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.148)

WARNING

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating**

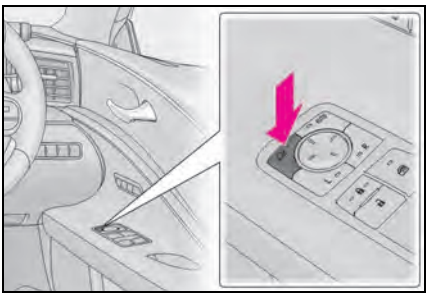
Do not touch the outside rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Folding and extending the mirrors

■ Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



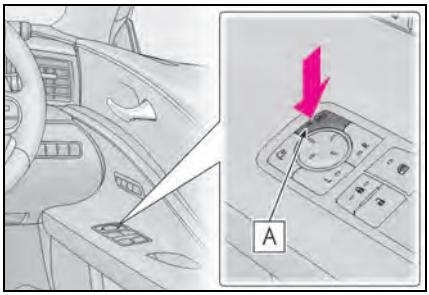
■ Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator A will come on.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting 12-volt battery terminals**

The automatic folding/extending mirror function will return to off as default. To turn the function on, press the switch again to select on.

■ **Customization**

The automatic mirror folding and extending operation can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

WARNING

■ **When a mirror is moving**

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

Linked mirror function when reversing

When either "L" or "R" of the mirror select switch is selected, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. To disable this function,

select neither “L” nor “R”.

■ Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing

With the shift position in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position. The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift position is shifted to R from next time.

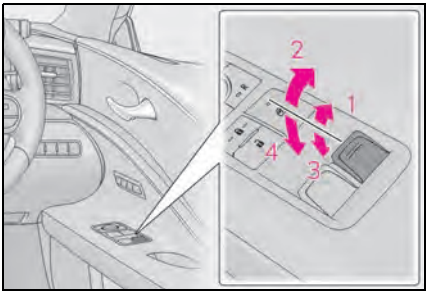
The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift position in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

Power windows

Opening and closing the side windows

The side windows can be opened and closed by one-touch operation of the switches.



1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*1, 2
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*1

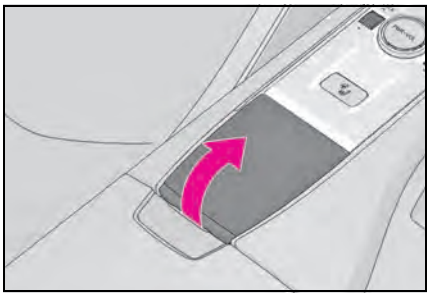
*1: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

*2: It does not operate when the rear quarter windows are stopped partway.

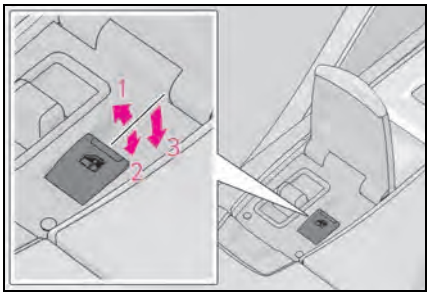
Opening and closing the side windows and rear quarter windows (Convertible)

The side windows and rear quarter windows can be opened and closed by one-touch operation*1 of the switches.

1 Opening the palm rest



2 Operating the switch



1 Closing
2 Opening
3 One-touch opening*2

*1: Only one-touch opening

*2: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine <hybrid system> off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ACC or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

▶ Except Convertible

If an object becomes jammed between the

window and the window frame while the window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

▶ Convertible

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the soft top roof while the window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **Catch protection function**

▶ Window

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

▶ Rear quarter window (if equipped)

If an object becomes caught between the rear quarter window and vehicle body while the rear quarter window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ **When the window cannot be opened or closed**

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the door window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch <power switch> in ON, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the door window can be opened and closed.
- If the door window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

▶ Except Convertible

1. Close both side doors.
2. Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.
3. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the door window.
4. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.
5. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the door window is completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
6. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.
7. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the door window is completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

▶ Convertible

- If the rear quarter window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1. Close both side doors.
2. Turn the engine switch to ON.
3. Close the soft top roof, and then close the side windows.
4. Pull and hold the all window control switch in the closing direction for approximately 6 seconds or more.
5. Press and hold the all window control switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the side windows and rear quarter windows are completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
6. Release the all window control switch for a moment, resume pressing and holding the switch in the one-touch opening direction for approximately 4 seconds or more.

7 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction to close the side windows.

8 Pull and hold the all window control switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the rear quarter windows are completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the windows are moving, start again from the beginning. If the windows reverse and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.410)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.132)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Power windows open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and "Window Open" is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch <power switch> is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.162)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also, do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch <power switch> off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

WARNING

■ **Catch protection function**

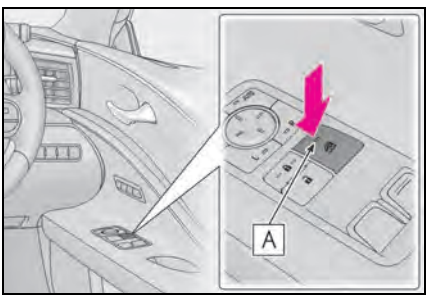
- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

This function can be used to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window and rear quarter window*.

Press the switch.

The indicator A will come on and the passenger window and rear quarter window* will be locked.



*: Convertible

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.

■ **When the 12-volt battery is disconnected**

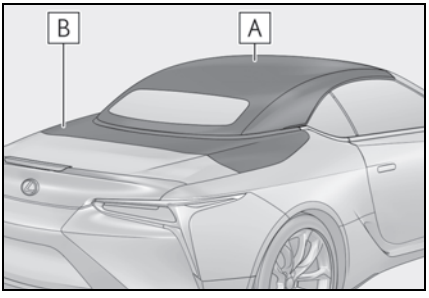
The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

Soft top roof (Convertible)

The soft top roof can be opened or closed by the switch operation.

System components

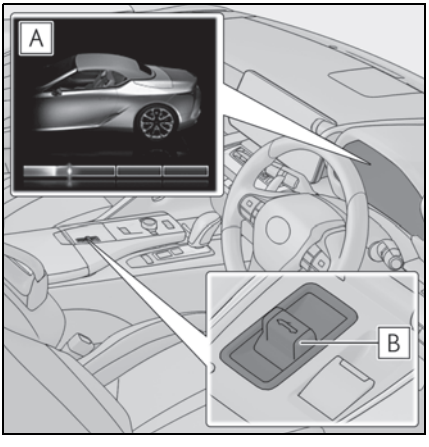
▶ Exterior



A Soft top roof

B Luggage cover

▶ Interior

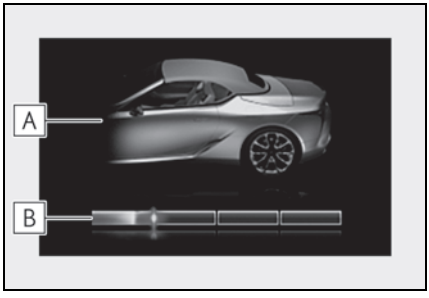


A Multi-information display (→P.112)

Displays opening/closing status of the soft top roof.

B Roof switch

Multi-information display



A Operation display of the soft top roof

Displays operating parts of the soft top roof linked to operation of the roof switch.

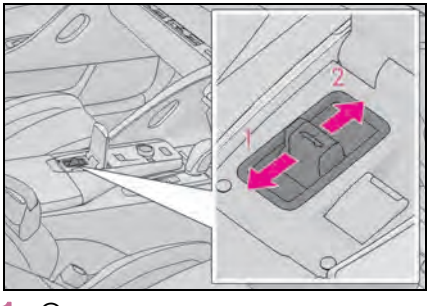
B Bar display

The bar is displayed linked to the operation display. The bar will turn to gray when the operation of the soft top roof has completed.

Opening or closing the soft top roof

1 Open the palm rest. (→P.159)

2 Operate the switch.



1 Open

2 Close

The side windows and rear quarter windows operate linked to opening or closing

the soft top roof.

Opening/closing status of the soft top roof will be displayed on the multi-information display.

When the operation of the soft top roof has completed, the bar will turn to gray and the buzzer will sound.

Continuing to operate the roof switch fully closes the side windows and rear quarter windows.

■ **Operational conditions**

- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (31 mph) (However, it is recommended that the soft top roof is opened or closed when the vehicle is stopped.)
- The engine is running (The soft top roof can operate with the engine switch in ON, however, in order to prevent battery discharge, it is recommended to start the engine.)
- The trunk lid is closed

■ **Situations in which the soft top roof operation stops partway**

In the following situation, operation of the soft top roof stops partway.

- When releasing the roof switch while the soft top roof is operating
- The vehicle speed is approximately 50 km (31 mph) or higher.
- If there is a malfunction in the system
- When operate the soft top roof repeatedly in a short period of time
- If the battery is discharged

■ **Situations in which the soft top roof may not operate properly**

In the following situation, the soft top roof may not operate properly.

- When the jam protection function or catch protection function of the power windows operates
- When starting the engine while operating the roof switch (The soft top roof that is operating stops partway or returns to the previous position.)
- If the roof switch has not been operated for a long period of time during the operation of the soft top roof. ("Soft Top Operation Not Completed Soft Top Will Move Soon" is displayed on the multi-information display for approximately 10 seconds, and then the soft top will move slowly.)
- When the roof switch is operated on a steep incline or large step
- When driving on uneven road surfaces
- In strong wind

■ **Switch operation when the operational conditions are not met**

If the soft top roof is fully closed and the vehicle is stopped, continuously operating the roof switch can operate the side windows and rear quarter windows only even if the operational conditions of the soft top roof are not met.

■ **While the soft top roof is operating**

- The trunk opener switch cannot be operated. Press the switch after the operation of the soft top roof has been completed. (→P.138)
- The side windows and rear quarter windows cannot be operated using the power window switch or all window control switch. They can be operated when the soft top roof operation partway stops, however, they cannot be fully closed.

■ **If water splashes on the soft top roof, such as in the rain or in a car wash**

Wipe away any water before opening the soft top roof. To prevent wrinkles, it is recommended to open the soft top roof after it has completely dried.

■ **Soft top roof open warning buzzer**

A buzzer sounds if opening or closing the soft top roof is not completed. Open or close the soft top roof as soon as possible.

■ **If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected**

If "Soft Top Operation Not Completed" is displayed on the multi-information display after the engine has been started, perform the following procedure.

▶ When the soft top roof of the rear window side stops near the fully closing position.

1 Operate the roof switch to open the soft top roof, and release the switch with the luggage cover opened.

2 Operate the roof switch to fully close the soft top roof.

▶ When the rear soft top roof stops near the fully opening position.

Operate the roof switch to fully close the soft top roof.

If the luggage cover does not operate by performing the procedure above, check that a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display or the operational conditions are met. If the luggage cover still does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the soft top roof cannot be operated properly when the roof switch is operated**

In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table, and then operate the switch again.

● Soft top roof operation stops partway

Situation	Warning message	Action
The engine switch is turned to OFF or ACC while the soft top roof is operating.	-	Start the engine, or turn the engine switch to ON, and then operate the roof switch.
The vehicle speed exceeds approximately 50 km/h (31 mph) while the soft top roof is operating.	"SLOW DOWN to Complete Soft Top Operation"	Decelerate to approximately 50 km/h (31 mph), and then operate the roof switch.
The trunk lid is opened using the mechanical key while the soft top roof is operating.	-	Close the trunk lid, and then operate the roof switch.
A collision is detected.	-	Contact your Lexus dealer.
The catch protection function of a power window is activated.	-	→P.160
The soft top roof is operated manually.	"SLOW DOWN to Complete Soft Top Operation" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed"	Manually return the soft top roof to the previous position. If the soft top roof cannot be operated, repeat opening and closing operations several times.

Situation	Warning message	Action
The outside temperature is low.	-	Operate the roof switch again.
The voltage of the battery drops.	-	Start the engine, and then operate the roof switch.
A thing is put in the operating range of the soft top roof, which prevents the soft top roof from operating.	-	Remove the thing on the upper part of the windshield frame, luggage cover, storing space of the soft top roof.
The vehicle is driven in the strong head wind with the soft top roof not fully closed.	-	Partway open the soft top roof after stopping or decelerating the vehicle, and then close it.
The soft top roof is malfunctioning.	"Soft Top System Malfunction See Owner's Manual"	If the soft top roof cannot be operated even when operating the switch several times, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● Soft top roof operation does not start

Situation	Warning message	Action
The engine switch is turned to OFF or ACC.	-	Start the engine or turn the engine switch to ON, and then operate the roof switch.
The vehicle is driven at the speed of approximately 50 km/h (31 mph) or higher.	"Soft Top System Unavailable Speed must be under 50km/h"	Decelerate to approximately 50 km/h (31 mph), and then operate the roof switch.
The trunk lid is opened.	"Soft Top System Unavailable Close Trunk Lid"	Close the trunk lid, and then operate the roof switch.
The voltage of the battery drops.	"Soft Top System Unavailable Low Power"	Start the engine, and then operate the roof switch.

Situation	Warning message	Action
The soft top roof is operated repeatedly in a short period of time.	"Opening Function Unavailable System Overheated" "Function Temporarily Unavailable System Overheated"	Wait for a while and then operate the roof switch. Depending on the situation, "Soft Top System Available" is displayed on the multi-information display indicating that the roof switch can be operated. If the roof switch cannot be operated, operate the soft top roof manually (→P.420) or have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The roof switch is operated while the luggage cover lock is operating.	-	Operate the roof switch again.
The jam protection function or catch protection function of a power windows is activated.	-	→P.159
The soft top roof is operated manually.	"SLOW DOWN to Complete Soft Top Operation" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed"	Manually return the soft top roof to the previous position. If the soft top roof cannot be operated, repeat opening and closing operations several times.

● Soft top roof opens slowly

Situation	Warning message	Action
The roof switch is released for a long period of time while opening or closing the soft top roof.	"Soft Top Moving Do Not Forget To Close" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed Do Not Forget To Close"	• When the engine is running or the engine switch is in ON "Soft Top Operation Not Completed Soft Top Will Move Soon" is displayed on the multi-information display for approximately 10 seconds, and then the operation is restricted and the soft top roof moves slowly. ▶ When the roof switch can be operated When the roof switch is operated while the soft top roof moves slowly, the soft top roof moves corresponding the switch operation. However, if the soft top roof has been operated repeatedly in a short period of time, it may be only closed. (→P.165) ▶ When the roof switch cannot be operated Wait for a while with the soft top roof operation stops, and then operate the roof switch. If the soft top roof does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Warning message	Action
The roof switch is released for a long period of time while opening or closing the soft top roof.	"Soft Top Moving Do Not Forget To Close" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed Do Not Forget To Close"	• When the engine switch is in ACC or OFF The operation is restricted and the soft top roof moves slowly. ▶ When the engine switch is turned to ON The operation is stopped. After it stops, when the roof switch is operated, the soft top roof moves corresponding the switch operation. However, if the soft top roof has been operated repeatedly in a short period of time, it may be only closed. (→P.165) ▶ When starting the engine or turning the engine switch to ON Wait for a while until the soft top roof operation is stopped. After it stops, when the roof switch is operated, the soft top roof moves corresponding the switch operation. However, if the soft top roof has been operated repeatedly in a short period of time, it may be only closed. (→P.165)

WARNING

■ When opening or closing the soft top roof

Observe the following.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the soft top roof is being operated. If a part of the body or an object is likely to be caught, or if the body is caught, stop the operation immediately.
- If anyone is in the vicinity or in the vehicle, make sure they are safe and let them know that the soft top roof is about to open or close.
- When the rear seat is occupied, be careful that the soft top roof does not hit the passenger.
- Pay extra attention to the operation of the soft top roof and the safety of the area around the vehicle while opening or closing the soft top roof.
- Take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught in moving parts.
- Do not operate the soft top roof while the vehicle is backing up. The driver's rearward vision may be blocked, leading to an accident.
- When the soft top roof starts to move slowly, be careful not to be caught in the soft top roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ While the vehicle is driven

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury or an accident.

- Do not operate the soft top roof more than necessary.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the soft top roof half-opened.
- Do not stand on the seat, sit on the package tray (→P.56), or lean out of the vehicle.

■ When a child is in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow a child operate the soft top roof.
- Never let a child sit in the storing space of the soft top roof.
- Keep children away from the movable range of the soft top roof.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the soft top roof

- Make sure that there is no obstacle within a height of 65 cm (25.6 in.) from the soft top roof.

Also, be careful when passing a place with height restriction, such as a tunnel or underground passage.

- Do not put anything in the storing space of the soft top roof.
- Do not sit on or put luggage on the soft top roof or luggage cover.
- When there is snow or luggage on the soft top roof or luggage cover, remove it before operating the roof switch.

NOTICE

- Do not open or close the soft top roof when anything is put on the trunk lid.
- Do not close the soft top roof when anything is put on the upper part of the windshield frame.
- Do not open or close the soft top roof when the outside temperature is -5°C (23.0°F) or lower or the side windows and rear quarter windows are frozen.
- Do not leave the soft top roof not fully opened or closed for a long period of time.
- Do not leave the soft top roof opened for a long period of time. The soft top roof may have wrinkles or deteriorate.
- When opening the trunk lid using the mechanical key, fully open or close the soft top roof.
- Do not install a roof luggage carrier to the soft top roof.
- Do not operate the soft top roof manually except in an emergency. (→P.420)

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 174

Cargo and luggage 181

Trailer towing 182

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch (LC500) 183

Power (ignition) switch (LC500h) 186

EV drive mode (LC500h) 190

Automatic transmission (LC500) 192

Hybrid transmission (LC500h) 199

Turn signal lever 206

Parking brake 207

Brake Hold 210

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 212

AHB (Automatic High Beam) 214

Windshield wipers and washer 217

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 221

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 224

PCS (Pre-Collision System) 229

LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 239

RSA (Road Sign Assist) 248

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 251

Driving mode select switch .. 263

Lexus parking assist-sensor .. 264

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 271

RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 275

Active rear wing 280

Fixed rear wing 283

Driving assist systems 284

4-6. Driving tips

Hybrid electric vehicle driving tips (LC500h) 291

Winter driving tips 293

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ **Starting the engine <hybrid system>**

→P.183, 186

■ **Driving**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift position to D.

Check that the shift position indicator shows D.

2 If the parking brake is set, release the parking brake. (→P.207)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ **Stopping**

1 Depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

LC500h: If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift position to P. (→P.200)

■ **Parking the vehicle**

1 Depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle completely.

2 If the parking brake is in released, set the parking brake. (→P.207)

3 Shift the shift position to P. (→P.193, 200)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P and the parking brake indicator is illuminated.

4 Press the engine switch <power switch> to stop the engine <hybrid system>.

5 Slowly release the brake pedal.

6 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ **Starting off on a steep uphill**

1 Firmly depress the brake pedal and shift the shift position to D.

The hill-start assist control will be activated.

2 Set the parking brake. (→P.207)

3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

4 Release the parking brake. (→P.207)

■ **For fuel-efficient driving (LC500h)**

Keep in mind that hybrid electric vehicles are similar to conventional vehicles, and it is necessary to refrain from activities such as sudden acceleration. (→P.291)

■ **When parking the vehicle (Convertible)**

In order to prevent theft or effect of the weather on the environment of the vehicle cabin, close the soft top roof when parking the vehicle.

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there

may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Engine speed while driving

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is firmly or quickly depressed

■ Restraining the engine <hybrid system> output (Brake Override System)

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine <hybrid system> output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating. (→P.394)

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

- When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine <hybrid system> output may be restrained.
  - When the shift position is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D*, or P to R* (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
  - When the accelerator pedal is depressed too much while the vehicle is in reverse.

*: Depending on the situation, the shift position may not be changed.

- While Drive-Start Control is being activated, your vehicle may have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow. In such case, deactivate TRC (→P.286) to cancel Drive-Start Control so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (186 miles):

Avoid sudden stops.

- For the first 1000 km (621 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down operation.

■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.438)

■ Brake pads and discs (vehicles with LSD [Limited Slip Differential])

The brake pads and discs are designed for use under high load conditions. Therefore, brake noise may be generated depending on the vehicle speed, braking force and vehicle environment (temperature, humidity, etc.).

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

When starting the vehicle

LC500: Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

LC500h: Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the "READY" indicator is illuminated. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- LC500h: The driver should pay extra attention to pedestrians when the vehicle is powered only by the electric motor (traction motor). As there is no engine noise, the pedestrians may misjudge the vehicle's movement. Even though the vehicle is equipped with the vehicle proximity notification system, drive with care as pedestrians in the vicinity may still not notice the vehicle if the surrounding area is noisy.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine <hybrid system>. Turning the engine <hybrid system> off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, the power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P.382
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.192, 199)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.

WARNING

- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When shifting the shift position

- LC500: Do not let the vehicle roll backward while a forward driving position is selected, or roll forward while the shift position is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
  LC500h: Do not let the vehicle roll backward while a forward driving position is selected, or roll forward while the shift position is in R.
  Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift position to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift position to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift position to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- LC500: Changing the shift position to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
  LC500h: Changing the shift position to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the hybrid system. Regenerative braking is not available with the hybrid system disengaged.
- Convertible: Changing the shift position to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission.

Engine braking is not available when N is selected.

- Be careful not to change the shift position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
  Changing the shift position to any positions other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.
  After changing the shift position, make sure to confirm the current shift position displayed on the shift position indicator inside the meter.

■ Brake pad wear

If any of the following situations occur, have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- If the thickness of the brake pads exceeds the brake pad wear limit when visually checking all four brake pads (for the brake pad wear limit, refer to P.443)

WARNING

- If "Brake Pad Wear Visit Your Dealer" is displayed (only the right-side pads can be detected)

Except Convertible: Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed. Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured. It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

Convertible: Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- LC500: Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
  LC500h: Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
  If the shift position is in any position other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.

- LC500: In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
  LC500h: In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while stopped with the "READY" indicator is illuminated, and apply the parking brake as necessary.

- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.

- Avoid revving or racing the engine. Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.

- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.

- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.

- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.

WARNING

- LC500: Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift position to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift position in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
  LC500h: Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift position to P, stop the hybrid system and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the "READY" indicator is illuminated.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift position in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
- LC500: Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
  LC500h: Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the "READY" indicator is illuminated or immediately after turning the hybrid system off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine <hybrid system> off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine <hybrid system> overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the electronically controlled brake system does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- The brake system consists of 2 or more individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other(s) will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time while driving, as this may restrain the engine <hybrid system> output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.

NOTICE

- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.405)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine <hybrid system>, transmission, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

If the shift control system is damaged by flooding, it may not be possible to shift the shift position to P, or from P to other positions. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always set the parking brake, and shift the shift position to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the package tray
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
  - In front of Center Display
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Engine (ignition) switch (LC500)

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Press the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.207)

The parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

Except Convertible:  and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

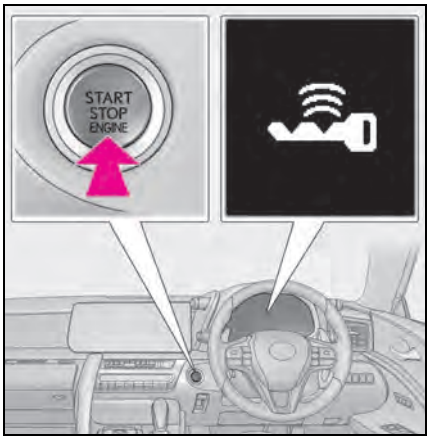
3 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



■ **Engine switch illumination**

According to the situation, the engine switch illumination operates as follows.

- When a door is opened, or the engine switch mode is changed from ACC or ON to off, the engine switch illumination slowly blinks.
- Except Convertible: When depressing the brake pedal with carrying the electronic key on your person, the engine switch illumination rapidly blinks.
- When the engine switch is in ACC or ON, the engine switch illumination illuminates.

■ **If the engine does not start**

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.95) Contact your Lexus dealer.
- If a message related to start-up is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- If the door is unlocked with the mechanical key, the engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.411 to start the engine. However, if the electronic key is carried inside the vehicle and the doors are locked (→P.135), the engine can be started.

■ If the 12-volt battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.414 to restart the engine.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P.128

■ Conditions affecting operation

→P.142

■ Notes for the entry function

→P.143

■ If there is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system

If "Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Electronic key battery

→P.375

■ Operation of the engine switch

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ Customization

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.410.

WARNING

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.207)

3 Press the P position switch. (→P.193)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P and the parking brake indicator is illuminated.

4 Press the engine switch.

The engine will stop, and the meter display will be extinguished (the shift position indicator will be extinguished a few seconds after the meter display).

5 Check that "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is not shown on the meter.

■ Automatic P position selection function

→P.195

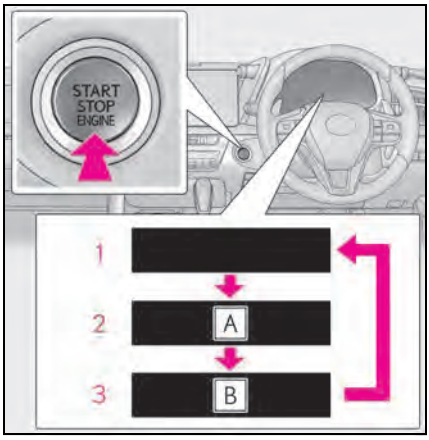
WARNING

■ **Stopping the engine in an emergency**

- If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.382)
  However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- If the engine switch is operated while the vehicle is running, a warning message is shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.
- When restarting the engine after an emergency shutdown, press the engine switch.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



A "ACCESSORY"

B "IGNITION ON"

1 OFF

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACC

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the meter.

3 ON

All electrical components can be used.

"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the meter.

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACC for more than 20 minutes or ON (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift position in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent the 12-volt battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ **When the shift control system malfunctions**

When attempting to turn the engine switch off while there is a malfunction in the shift

control system, the engine switch mode may change to ACC. In this case, ACC may be turned off by applying the parking brake and pressing the engine switch again.

If there is a malfunction in the system, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

NOTICE

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the meter, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.

Power (ignition) switch (LC500h)

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the hybrid system or changes power switch modes.

Starting the hybrid system

1 Press the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.207)

The parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

If it is not displayed, the hybrid system cannot be started.

When the shift position is N, the hybrid system cannot start.

Shift the shift position to P when starting the hybrid system. (→P.200)

3 Press the power switch shortly and firmly.

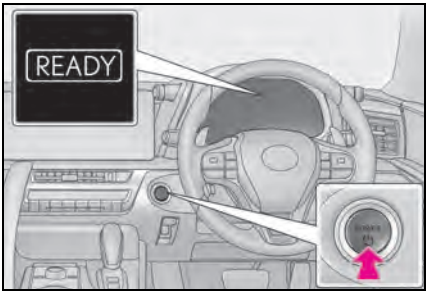
When operating the power switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

If the "READY" indicator turns on, the hybrid system will operate normally.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the "READY" indicator is illuminated.

The hybrid system can be started from any

power switch mode.



4 Check that the "READY" indicator is illuminated.

If the "READY" indicator changes from a flashing light to a solid light and the buzzer sounds, the hybrid system is starting normally.

The vehicle will not move when the "READY" indicator is off.

The vehicle can move when the "READY" indicator is on even if the engine is stopped. (The gasoline engine starts or stops automatically in accordance with the state of the vehicle.)

■ **Power switch illumination**

According to the situation, the power switch illumination operates as follows.

- When a door is opened, or the power switch mode is changed from ACC or ON to off, the power switch illumination slowly blinks.
- When depressing the brake pedal with carrying the electronic key on your person, the power switch illumination rapidly blinks.
- When the power switch is in ACC or ON, the power switch illumination illuminates.

■ **If the hybrid system does not start**

- The immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.95) Contact your Lexus dealer.
- If a message related to start-up is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- If the door is unlocked with the mechanical key, the hybrid system cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.411 to start the hybrid system. However, if the electronic key is carried inside the vehicle and the doors are locked (→P.135), the hybrid system can be started.

■ **When the ambient temperature is low, such as during winter driving conditions**

- When starting the hybrid system, the flashing time of the "READY" indicator may be long. Leave the vehicle as it is until the "READY" indicator is steady on, as steady means the vehicle is able to move.
- When the hybrid battery (traction battery) is extremely cold (below approximately -30°C [-22°F]) under the influence of the outside temperature, it may not be possible to start the hybrid system. In this case, try to start the hybrid system again after the temperature of the hybrid battery increases due to the outside temperature increase etc.

■ **Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid electric vehicle**

→P.89

■ **If the 12-volt battery is discharged**

The hybrid system cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.414 to restart the hybrid system.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P.128

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P.142

■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P.143

■ **If there is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system**

If "Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by

your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the "READY" indicator does not come on**

In the event that the "READY" indicator does not come on even after performing the proper procedures for starting the vehicle, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the hybrid system is malfunctioning**

→P.93

■ **Electronic key battery**

→P.375

■ **Operation of the power switch**

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the power switch mode may not change or the hybrid system may not start.
- If attempting to restart the hybrid system immediately after turning the power switch off, the hybrid system may not start in some cases. After turning the power switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the hybrid system.

■ **Customization**

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.410

WARNING

■ **When starting the hybrid system**

Always start the hybrid system while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the hybrid system under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When starting the hybrid system**

If the hybrid system becomes difficult to start, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the power switch**

If the power switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the hybrid system

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.207)
3. Press the P position switch. (→P.200)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P and the parking brake indicator is illuminated.

4. Press the power switch.

The hybrid system will stop, and the meter display will be extinguished (the shift position indicator will be extinguished a few seconds after the meter display).

5. Check that "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is not shown on the meter.

■ **Automatic P position selection function**

→P.202

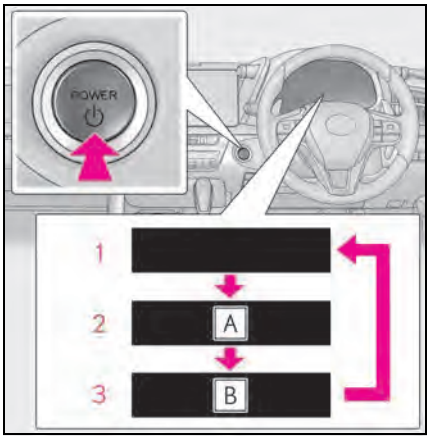
WARNING

■ Stopping the hybrid system in an emergency

- If you want to stop the hybrid system in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the power switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.382)
  However, do not touch the power switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- If the power switch is operated while the vehicle is running, a warning message is shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.
- When restarting the hybrid system after an emergency shutdown, press the power switch.

Changing power switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the power switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



A "ACCESSORY"

B "IGNITION ON"

1 OFF

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACC

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.
"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the meter.

3 ON

All electrical components can be used.
"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the meter.

■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACC for more than 20 minutes or ON (the hybrid system is not operating) for more than an hour with the shift position in P, the power switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent the 12-volt battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the power switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time when the hybrid system is not operating.

■ When the shift control system malfunctions

When attempting to turn the power switch

off while there is a malfunction in the shift control system, the power switch mode may change to ACC. In this case, ACC may be turned off by applying the parking brake and pressing the power switch again.

If there is a malfunction in the system, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

NOTICE

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

- Do not leave the power switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time without the hybrid system on.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the meter, the power switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the power switch off.

EV drive mode (LC500h)

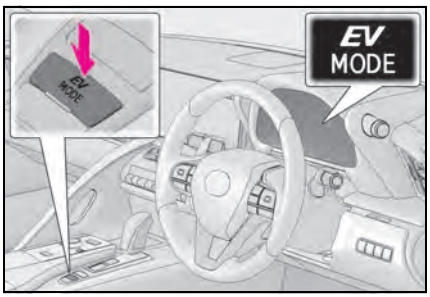
In EV drive mode, electric power is supplied by the hybrid battery (traction battery), and only the electric motor (traction motor) is used to drive the vehicle.

This mode allows you to drive in residential areas early in the morning and late at night, or in indoor parking lots etc. without concern for noises and gas emissions.

Operating instructions

Turns EV drive mode on/off

When EV drive mode is turned on, the EV drive mode indicator will come on. Pressing the switch when in EV drive mode will return the vehicle to normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]).



■ Situations in which EV drive mode cannot be turned on

It may not be possible to turn EV drive mode on in the following situations. If it cannot be turned on, a buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

- The temperature of the hybrid system is high.

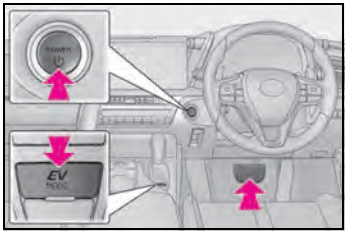
The vehicle has been left in the sun, driven on a hill, driven at high speeds, etc.

- The temperature of the hybrid system is low.
  The vehicle has been left in temperatures lower than about 0°C (32°F) for a long period of time etc.
- The gasoline engine is warming up.
- The hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.
  The remaining battery level indicated in the energy monitor display is low. (→P.123)
- Vehicle speed is high.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.
- The windshield defogger is in use.
- When the shift position is in M.

■ Switching to EV drive mode when the gasoline engine is cold

If the hybrid system is started while the gasoline engine is cold, the gasoline engine will start automatically in order to warm up. In this case, you will become unable to switch to EV drive mode.

To prevent gasoline engine warm up in order to reduce noises, start the hybrid system without starting the gasoline engine, pressing the power switch with fully depressing the brake pedal and pressing the EV drive mode switch.



■ Automatic cancelation of EV drive mode

When driving in EV drive mode, the gasoline engine may automatically restart in the following situations. When EV drive mode is canceled, a buzzer will sound and the EV drive mode indicator will flash and go off.

- The hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes low.
  The remaining battery level indicated in the energy monitor display is low. (→P.123)
- Vehicle speed is high.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.

When it is possible to inform the driver of automatic cancelation in advance, a prior notice screen will appear on the multi-information display.

■ Possible driving distance when driving in EV drive mode

EV drive mode's possible driving distance ranges from a few hundred meters to approximately 1 km (0.6 mile). However, depending on vehicle conditions, there are situations when EV drive mode cannot be used.
(The distance that is possible depends on the hybrid battery [traction battery] level and driving conditions.)

■ Fuel economy

The hybrid system is designed to achieve the best possible fuel economy during normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]). Driving in EV drive mode more than necessary may lower fuel economy.

■ If "EV Mode Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display

The EV drive mode is not available. The reason the EV drive mode is not available (the vehicle is idling, battery charge is low, vehicle speed is higher than the EV drive mode operating speed range or accelerator pedal is depressed too much) may be displayed. Use the EV drive mode when it becomes available.

■ If "EV Mode Deactivated" is shown on the multi-information display

The EV drive mode has been automatically canceled. The reason the EV drive mode is not available (the battery charge is low, vehicle speed is higher than the EV drive mode operating speed range or accelerator pedal is depressed too much) may be

displayed. Drive the vehicle for a while before attempting to turn on the EV drive mode again.

WARNING

■ Caution while driving

When driving in EV drive mode, pay special attention to the area around the vehicle. Because there is no engine noise, pedestrians, people riding bicycles or other people and vehicles in the area may not be aware of the vehicle starting off or approaching them, so take extra care while driving.

Automatic transmission (LC500)

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral (Condition in which the power is not transmitted)
D	Normal driving *1
M	M mode driving *2 (→P.198)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, set the shift position in D for normal driving. You can choose gear range suitable for your driving situation by operating the paddle shift switches.

*2: Any gear range can be fixed when driving in M mode.

■ To protect the automatic transmission

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the vehicle will go into transmission protection mode automatically. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ When driving with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activated

Even when performing the following

actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not be activated because dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

- While driving in the D position, downshifting to 9, 8, 7, 6, 5 or 4.
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P.263)

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

→P.175

■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions. The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift position is in D. (Shifting the shift position to M cancels the function.)

■ If a message about a shift operation is shown

To prevent the shift position from being selected incorrectly or the vehicle from moving unexpectedly, the shift position may be changed automatically or operating the shift lever may be required. In this case, change the shift position following the messages on the multi-information display.

■ After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery

→P.354

WARNING

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift the shift position suddenly.

Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

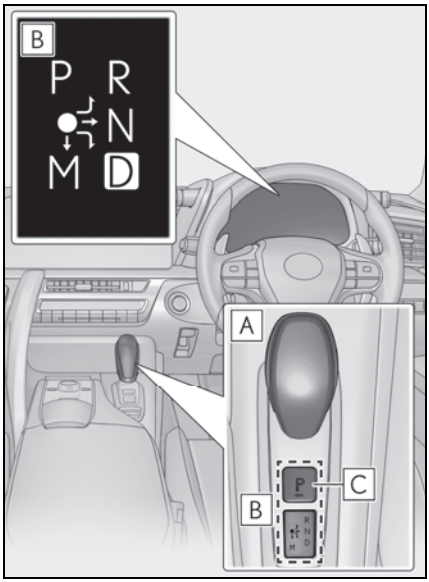
NOTICE

■ Situations where shift control system malfunctions are possible

If any of the following situations occurs, shift control system malfunctions are possible. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place on level ground, apply the parking brake, and then contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the warning message indicating the shift control system appears on the multi-information display. (→P.400)
- The display indicates that no shift position is selected for more than a few seconds.

Shift position display and how to change the shift position



A Shift lever

Operate the shift lever gently and securely in the direction of the arrow on the shift position indicator.

To shift to N, slide the shift lever in the

direction of the arrow and hold it.

Release the shift lever after each shifting operation to allow it to return to its regular position (●).

Shifting to M is only possible when the shift position is in D.

When shifting from P to N, D or R, from N, D, M or R to P, from D or M to R, or from R to D, ensure that the brake pedal is being depressed and the vehicle is stationary.

B Shift position indicator

Meter display:

The current shift position is highlighted.

When any shift position other than D or M is selected, the arrow toward M and M position indicator are displayed in gray.

Shift lever display:

The current shift position is illuminated.

When selecting the shift position, make sure that the shift position has been changed to the desired position by checking the shift position indicator provided on the instrument cluster.

C P position switch

Fully stop the vehicle and set the parking brake, and then press the P position switch.

When the shift position is changed to P, the switch illuminates.

Check that the shift position indicator shows P.

■ **Changing the shift position in each engine switch mode**

- The shift position cannot be changed when the engine switch is in ACC or off.
- When the engine switch is in ON, the shift position can only be changed to N.
- When the engine is running, the shift position can be changed from P to D, N, or R.

■ **Shifting the shift position from P to other positions**

- While depressing the brake pedal firmly, operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the buzzer will sound and the shifting operation will be disabled.
- When selecting the shift position, make sure that the shift position has been changed to the desired position by checking the shift position indicator provided on the instrument cluster.
- The shift position cannot be changed from P to M directly.

■ **The shift position cannot be changed when**

In the following situations, a buzzer will sound to inform you that the shift position cannot be changed. Use the appropriate operation to attempt to change the shift position again.

- When attempting to change the shift position from P with the brake pedal not depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from P with the accelerator pedal depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from N while stopped or driving at an extremely low speed with the brake pedal not depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from N while stopped or driving at an extremely low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from P or N to M
- When the P position switch is pressed while driving

When driving at an extremely low speed, the shift position may change to P.

■ **The shift position automatically changes to N when**

In the following situations, a buzzer will sound to inform you that the shift position has been changed to N. Use the appropri-

ate operation to attempt to change the shift position again.

- When attempting to change the shift position to R while the vehicle is moving forward

When driving at a low speed, the shift position may change to R.

- When attempting to change the shift position to D while the vehicle is moving backward

When driving at a low speed, the shift position may change to D.

- When attempting to change the shift position from R to M

If the N shift position is selected while driving

If the shift lever is moved to N while driving above a certain speed, the shift position will change to N without holding the shift lever in the N position. In this situation, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to inform you that the shift position has been changed to N.

Automatic P position selection function

In the following situations, the shift position is automatically changed to P.

- When pressing the engine switch with the vehicle stopped while the engine switch is in ON and the shift position is in a position other than P (after the shift position has changed to P, the engine switch will turn off)*
- If the driver's door is opened and all of the following conditions are met, while the shift position is in a position other than P

• The engine switch is in ON.
• The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
• The brake pedal is not depressed.

To start off the vehicle after the shift position is changed to P, operate the shift lever again.

- When the vehicle is stopped after the engine has been stopped in an emergency while driving
- When voltage of the 12-volt battery drops while the shift position is in a position other than P

*: When the engine switch is pressed while driving at extremely slow speeds, such as immediately before stopping the vehicle, the shift position may automatically change to P. Make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped before pressing the engine switch.

If the shift position cannot be shifted from P

There is a possibility that the 12-volt battery is discharged. Check the 12-volt battery in this situation. (→P.411)

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.414)

WARNING

For the shift lever

- Do not remove the shift lever knob or use anything but a genuine Lexus shift lever knob. Also, do not hang anything on the shift lever. Doing so could prevent the shift lever from returning to position, causing unexpected accidents to occur when the vehicle is in motion.
- In order to prevent the shift position from accidentally being changed, do not touch the shift lever when not using them.

P position switch

- Do not press the P position switch while the vehicle is moving.
  If the P position switch is pressed when driving at very low speeds (for example, directly before stopping the vehicle), the vehicle may stop suddenly when the shift position switches to P, which could lead to an accident.

WARNING

- In order to prevent the shift position from accidentally being changed, do not touch the P position switch when not using them.

NOTICE

■ Notes regarding shift lever and P position switch operation

Avoid repeatedly operating the shift lever and P position switch in quick succession.
The system protection function may activate and it will not be temporarily possible to shift the shift position other than P. If this happens, please wait for a while before attempting to change the shift position again.

■ When exiting the vehicle (driver's seat only)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P and that the parking brake indicator is illuminated before opening the door and exiting the vehicle.

Keeping the shift position in N without activating the automatic P position selection function

- By performing the following operation, the shift position can be held in N until the shift position switches to P without activating the automatic P position selection function.

1. Operate the shift lever and change the shift position to N when the engine is running.
2. Return the shift lever to its regular position (●).
3. Operate the shift lever to N and hold it there until the buzzer sounds.
4. Press the engine switch within 5 seconds after the buzzer sounds.

The engine stops with the shift position in N.*
Make sure to check that the buzzer sounds and "Holding N Push P Switch When Done" is displayed on the multi-information display.

- In order to shift to a position other than N, first press the P position switch to change the shift position to P.
- Make sure to operate the shift lever with the engine is operating.
  If the engine is not operating, it may not be possible to hold the shift position in N.

*: To keep this state, do not operate the engine switch. If the engine switch is operated repeatedly, the engine switch will turn off after the shift position has automatically changed to P.

NOTICE

■ Keeping the shift position in N without activating the automatic P position selection function

Make sure that the engine is started.

If an operation is performed when the engine is not started, the shift position may change to P.

Selecting the driving mode

■ Driving mode

→P.263

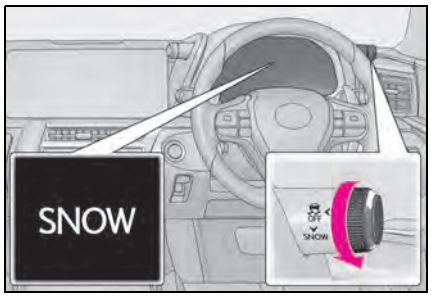
Snow mode

Snow mode can be selected to suit the conditions when driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Turn the  switch backward.

The snow mode indicator comes on.

Turn the  switch backward again to return to normal mode.



Snow mode automatic deactivation

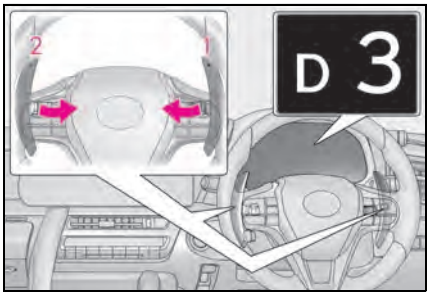
Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the engine switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch.

When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range switches to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions. When the "+" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range switches to a range that is one range higher than the current range.

Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The selected shift range, from D1 to D10, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Meter display	Function
D2 - D10	A gear in the range between D1 and the selected shift range is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	Setting the shift range at D1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for

more than a certain period of time

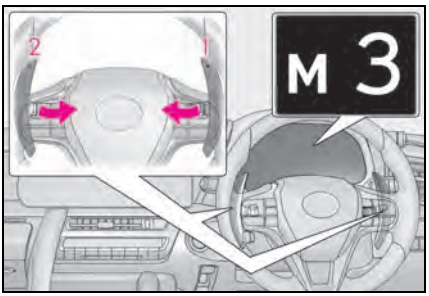
- When the shift lever is moved to D again
- When pressing and holding the "+" paddle shift switch

■ Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting gears in the M position

To enter M mode, shift the shift position to M. Gears can be selected by operating the paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from M1 to M10, will be fixed and displayed in the meter.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When it is necessary to protect the engine or automatic transmission when the engine coolant temperature is low, the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high or low, or other reasons.

Also, the gear will not shift when the vehicle speed is low, even if an upshift operation is performed.

■ Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Hybrid transmission (LC500h)

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the hybrid system
R	Reversing
N	Neutral (Condition in which the power is not transmitted)
D	Normal driving *1
M	M mode driving *2 (→P.205)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, set the shift position in D for normal driving. You can choose gear range suitable for your driving situation by operating the paddle shift switches.

*2: Any gear range can be fixed when driving in M mode.

■ To protect the hybrid transmission

If the transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the vehicle will go into transmission protection mode automatically. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ When driving with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activated

- When dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating, the system does not respond to paddle shift switch operations.
- Even when the driving mode is switched to sport mode with the intent of enabling engine braking, dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is not canceled and engine braking is not activated.

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

→P.175

■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions. The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift position is in D. (Shifting the shift position to M cancels the function.)

■ If a message about a shift operation is shown

To prevent the shift position from being selected incorrectly or the vehicle from moving unexpectedly, the shift position may be changed automatically or operating the shift lever may be required. In this case, change the shift position following the messages on the multi-information display.

■ After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery

→P.354

WARNING

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift the shift position suddenly.

Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

■ Hybrid battery (traction battery) charge

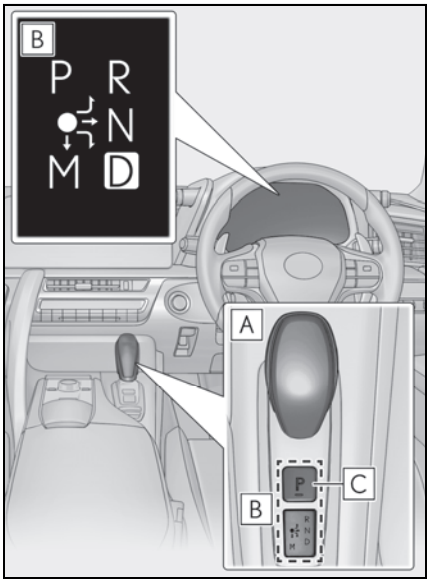
If the shift position is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged. To help prevent the battery from discharging, avoid leaving the N position selected for an extended period of time.

■ Situations where shift control system malfunctions are possible

If any of the following situations occurs, shift control system malfunctions are possible. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place on level ground, apply the parking brake, and then contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the warning message indicating the shift control system appears on the multi-information display. (→P.400)
- The display indicates that no shift position is selected for more than a few seconds.

Shift position display and how to change the shift position



A Shift lever

Operate the shift lever gently and securely in the direction of the arrow on the shift position indicator.

To shift to N, slide the shift lever in the direction of the arrow and hold it.

Release the shift lever after each shifting operation to allow it to return to its regular position (●).

Shifting to M is only possible when the shift position is in D.

When shifting from P to N, D or R, from N, D, M or R to P, from D or M to R, or from R to D, ensure that the brake pedal is being depressed and the vehicle is stationary.

B Shift position indicator

Meter display:

The current shift position is highlighted.

When any shift position other than D or M

is selected, the arrow toward M and M position indicator are displayed in gray.

Shift lever display:

The current shift position is illuminated.

When selecting the shift position, make sure that the shift position has been changed to the desired position by checking the shift position indicator provided on the instrument cluster.

C P position switch

Fully stop the vehicle and set the parking brake, and then press the P position switch.

When the shift position is changed to P, the switch illuminates.

Check that the shift position indicator shows P.

■ **Changing the shift position in each power switch mode**

- The shift position cannot be changed when the power switch is in ACC or off.
- When the power switch is in ON, if the "READY" indicator is not illuminated, the shift position can only be changed to N.
- When the "READY" indicator is illuminated, the shift position can be changed from P to D, N, or R.
- When the "READY" indicator is flashing, the shift position cannot be changed from P to any other position, even if the shift lever is operated. Operate the shift lever again after the "READY" indicator changes from flashing to illuminated.

■ **Shifting the shift position from P to other positions**

- While depressing the brake pedal firmly, operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the buzzer will sound and the shifting operation will be disabled.
- When selecting the shift position, make sure that the shift position has been changed to the desired position by checking the shift position indicator provided on the instrument cluster.
- The shift position cannot be changed from P to M directly.

■ **The shift position cannot be changed when**

In the following situations, a buzzer will sound to inform you that the shift position cannot be changed. Use the appropriate operation to attempt to change the shift position again.

- When attempting to change the shift position from P with the brake pedal not depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from P with the accelerator pedal depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from N while stopped or driving at an extremely low speed with the brake pedal not depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from N while stopped or driving at an extremely low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed
- When attempting to change the shift position from P or N to M
- When the P position switch is pressed while driving

When driving at an extremely low speed, the shift position may change to P.

■ **The shift position automatically changes to N when**

In the following situations, a buzzer will sound to inform you that the shift position has been changed to N. Use the appropriate operation to attempt to change the shift position again.

- When attempting to change the shift position to R while the vehicle is moving forward

When driving at a low speed, the shift position may change to R.

- When attempting to change the shift position to D while the vehicle is moving backward

When driving at a low speed, the shift position may change to D.

- When attempting to change the shift position from R to M

If the N shift position is selected while driving

If the shift lever is moved to N while driving above a certain speed, the shift position will change to N without holding the shift lever in the N position. In this situation, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to inform you that the shift position has been changed to N.

Automatic P position selection function

In the following situations, the shift position is automatically changed to P.

- When pressing the power switch with the vehicle stopped while the power switch is in ON and the shift position is in a position other than P (after the shift position has changed to P, the power switch will turn off)*
- If the driver's door is opened and all of the following conditions are met, while the shift position is in a position other than P
  - The power switch is in ON.
  - The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
  - The brake pedal is not depressed.

To start off the vehicle after the shift position is changed to P, operate the shift lever again.

- When the vehicle is stopped after the hybrid system has been stopped in an emergency while driving
- When voltage of the 12-volt battery drops while the shift position is in a position other than P

*: When the power switch is pressed while driving at extremely slow speeds, such as immediately before stopping the vehicle, the shift position may automatically change to P. Make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped before pressing the power switch.

If the shift position cannot be shifted from P

There is a possibility that the 12-volt battery is discharged. Check the 12-volt battery in this situation. (→P.411)

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.414)

WARNING

For the shift lever

- Do not remove the shift lever knob or use anything but a genuine Lexus shift lever knob. Also, do not hang anything on the shift lever. Doing so could prevent the shift lever from returning to position, causing unexpected accidents to occur when the vehicle is in motion.
- In order to prevent the shift position from accidentally being changed, do not touch the shift lever when not using them.

P position switch

- Do not press the P position switch while the vehicle is moving.
  If the P position switch is pressed when driving at very low speeds (for example, directly before stopping the vehicle), the vehicle may stop suddenly when the shift position switches to P, which could lead to an accident.
- In order to prevent the shift position from accidentally being changed, do not touch the P position switch when not using them.

NOTICE

■ Notes regarding shift lever and P position switch operation

Avoid repeatedly operating the shift lever and P position switch in quick succession.
The system protection function may activate and it will not be temporarily possible to shift the shift position other than P. If this happens, please wait for a while before attempting to change the shift position again.

■ When exiting the vehicle (driver's seat only)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P and that the parking brake indicator is illuminated before opening the door and exiting the vehicle.

Keeping the shift position in N without activating the automatic P position selection function

- By performing the following operation, the shift position can be held in N until the shift position switches to P without activating the automatic P position selection function.

1 Operate the shift lever and change the shift position to N when the hybrid system is operating.

2 Return the shift lever to its regular position (●).

3 Operate the shift lever to N and hold it there until the buzzer sounds.

4 Press the power switch within 5 seconds after the buzzer sounds.

The hybrid system stops with the shift position in N.*

Make sure to check that the buzzer sounds and "Holding N Push P Switch When Done" is displayed on the multi-information display.

- In order to shift to a position other than N, first press the P position switch to change the shift position to P.
- Make sure to operate the shift lever with the hybrid system is operating. If the hybrid system is not operating, it may not be possible to hold the shift position in N.

*: To keep this state, do not operate the power switch. If the power switch is operated repeatedly, the power switch will turn off after the shift position has automatically changed to P.

NOTICE

■ Keeping the shift position in N without activating the automatic P position selection function

Make sure that the hybrid system is started.

If an operation is performed when the hybrid system is not started, the shift position may change to P.

Selecting the driving mode

■ Driving mode

→P.263

■ Snow mode

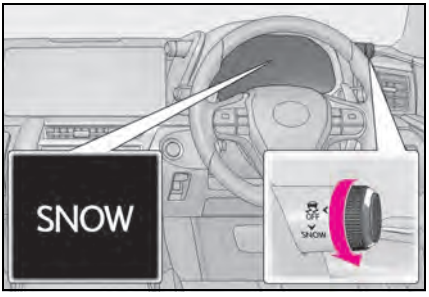
Snow mode can be selected to suit the conditions when driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Turn the 

switch backward.

The snow mode indicator comes on.

Turn the OFF SNOW switch backward again to return to normal mode.



■ **Snow mode automatic deactivation**

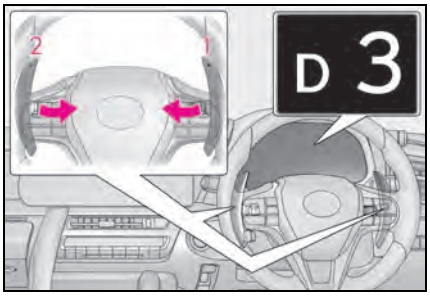
Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the power switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch.

When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range switches to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions. When the "+" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range switches to a range that is one range higher than the current range.

Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest shift range, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The selected shift range, from D1 to D10, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Meter display	Function
D2-D10	A gear in the range between D1 and the selected shift range is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	Setting the shift range at D1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position**

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

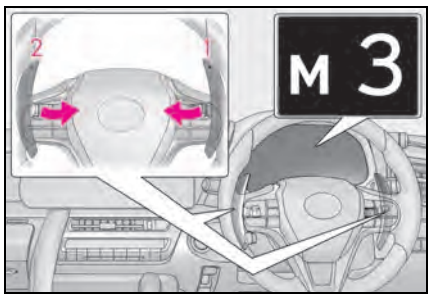
- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is moved to D again
- When the "+" paddle shift switch is pressed and held
- When dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating

■ **Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting gears in the M position

To enter M mode, shift the shift position to M. Gears can be selected by operating the paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from M1 to M10, will be fixed and displayed in the meter.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When vehicle speed increases (upshift only).
- When the accelerator pedal is firmly depressed.
- When it is necessary to protect the transmission when the transmission fluid temperature is high or low, or other reasons.

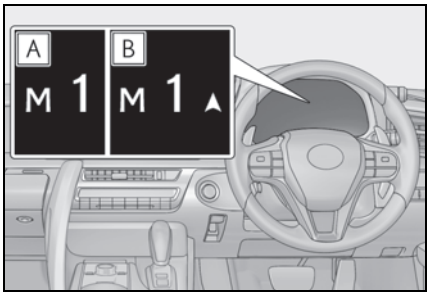
Also, the gear will not shift when the vehicle speed is low, even if an upshift operation is performed.

■ **Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Gear Shift Indicator

The Gear Shift Indicator display is a guide to help the driver achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions within limits of engine performance.



A When not in operation

B Shift-up indicator

■ Gear Shift Indicator function

- This function automatically operates during M mode.
- By following the Shift-up indicator and shifting up accordingly, it is possible to achieve improved fuel economy and reduced exhaust emissions.
- The Gear Shift Indicator does not have a similar function for downshifting.
- Depending on the driving conditions, the Gear Shift Indicator may not display the Shift-up indicator while driving in M mode.

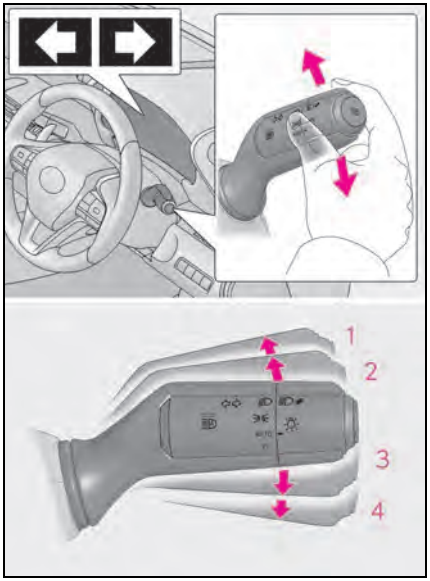
WARNING

■ Gear Shift Indicator display

For safety, the driver should not look only at the display. Refer to the display when it is safe to do so while considering actual traffic and road conditions.
Failure to do so may lead to an accident.

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions



1 Left turn

2 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

3 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Right turn

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed

Operate the lever again.

■ Customization
→P.447

Parking brake

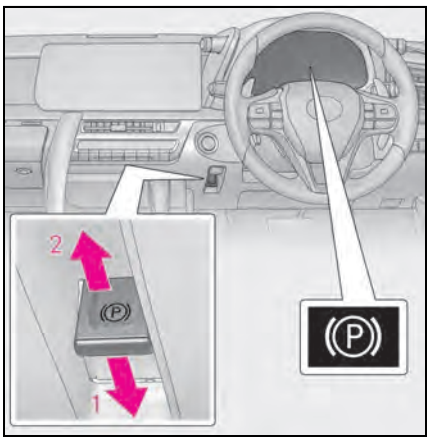
The parking brake can be set or released automatically or manually.

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released automatically according to shift lever operation. Also, even in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released manually.

Operating instructions

■ **Using the manual mode**

The parking brake can be set and released manually.



1 Push the switch to set the parking brake

The parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

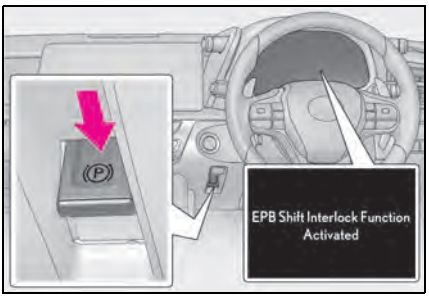
2 Pull the switch to release the parking brake

- Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
- Using the parking brake automatic release function, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal. When using this function, slowly depress the accelerator pedal.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light turn off.

■ Turning the automatic mode on

While the vehicle is stopped, press and hold the parking brake switch until a message is shown on the multi-information display



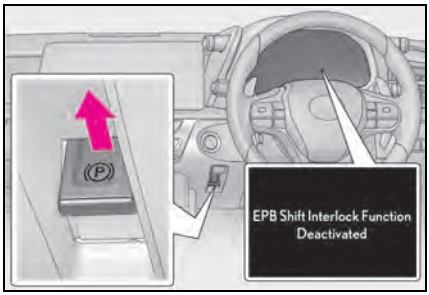
When the automatic mode is turned on, the parking brake operates as follows.

- When the shift position is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light will turn off.
- When the shift position is shifted to P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Operate the shift lever and P position switch with the vehicle stopped and the brake pedal depressed.

■ Turning the automatic mode off

While the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until a message is shown on the multi-information display.



■ Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch <power switch> is not in ON, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch <power switch> is not in ON, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ Parking brake automatic release function

- When the shift position is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released in automatic mode.
- When all of the following conditions are met in manual mode, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal.
  - The driver's door is closed
  - The driver is wearing the seat belt
  - The shift position is in D, M or R

■ If "EPB frequently operated Wait a minute" is displayed on the multi-information display

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ **If "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "EPB unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Operate the parking brake switch. If the message does not disappear after operating the switch several times, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Parking brake operation sound**

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Parking brake indicator light**

- Depending on the engine switch <power switch> mode, the parking brake indicator light will turn on and stay on as described below:
  ON: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in ON: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch <power switch> is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **When the parking brake switch malfunctions**

Automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) will be turned on automatically.

■ **Parking the vehicle**

→P.174

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "EPB applied" is displayed on the multi-information display (with the vehicle reaching a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

■ **If the brake system warning light comes on**

→P.391

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P.293

WARNING

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift position to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

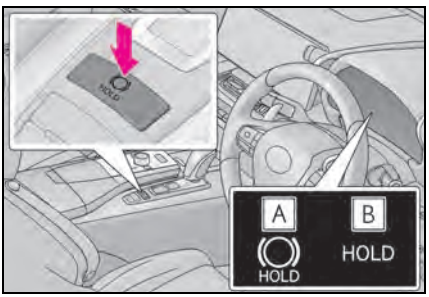
Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift position is in D, M or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift position in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Enabling the system

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator A (green) comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator B (yellow) comes on.



■ Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "EPB Malfunction Visit your dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ Brake hold function

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes

Perform any of the following operations to release the parking brake.

- Depress the accelerator pedal. (The parking brake will not be released automatically if the seat belt is not fastened.)
- Operate the parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P.207)

■ When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary

When the brake hold standby indicator (green) does not illuminate even when the brake hold switch is pressed with the brake hold system operating conditions met, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the

vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Brake Hold Fault Depress Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" or "Brake Hold Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning message and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**

→P.394

WARNING

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

When using the brake hold system on a steep incline exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle in such a situation.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

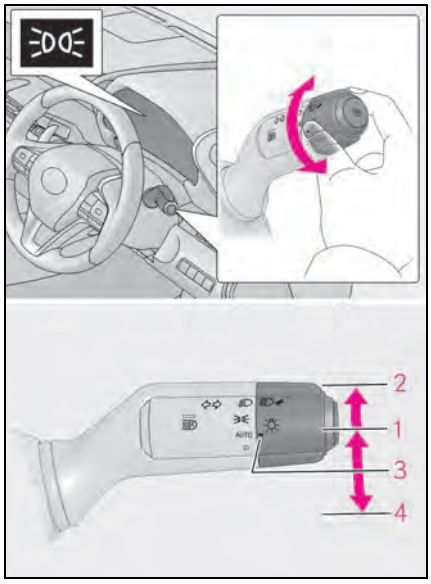
The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch <power switch> off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch <power switch>, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift position to P and set the parking brake.

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning on the headlights

Operating the switch turns on the lights as follows:



1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.212) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

4 The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.212)

■ **AUTO mode can be used when**

The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.

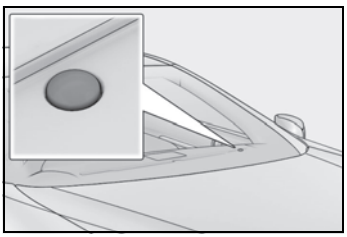
■ **Daytime running light function**

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine <hybrid system> is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch off or in the AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

- When the headlights come on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after the driver's door is opened and closed if the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ACC or turned off.

  (The lights turn off immediately if on the key is pressed after both side doors are locked.)

- When only the tail lights come on: The tail

lights turn off automatically if the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ACC or turned off and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON, or turn the light switch off once and then back to  or .

Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

12-volt battery-saving function

In order to prevent the 12-volt battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the headlights and/or tail lights are on when the engine switch <power switch> is turned off the 12-volt battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes. When the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON, the 12-volt battery-saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed, the 12-volt battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the 12-volt battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

Welcome light illumination control

The front position, tail lights and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the AUTO position.

Customization

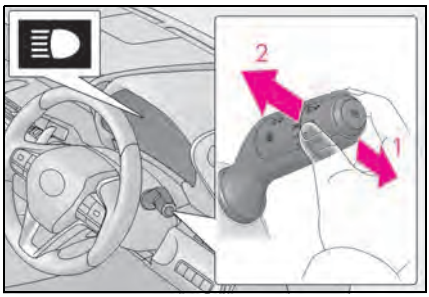
Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

NOTICE

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running <hybrid system is not operating>.

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Cornering lights

When any of the following conditions is met, while the headlights (low beam) are on, the cornering lights will additionally turn on and light up the direction of movement for the vehicle. This is to ensure excellent visibility when either driving at intersections or parking at night.

- The steering wheel is operated
- The turn signal lever is operated
- The shift position is in R (both left and right side cornering lights)

■ Cornering light control

- The lights illuminate when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or less. However, the lights turn off when the vehicle speed increases to approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.
- After the lights remain illuminated for 30 minutes, they automatically turn off.

AHB (Automatic High Beam)

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle front camera to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of a vehicle ahead etc., and automatically turns the high beam on or off as necessary.

WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

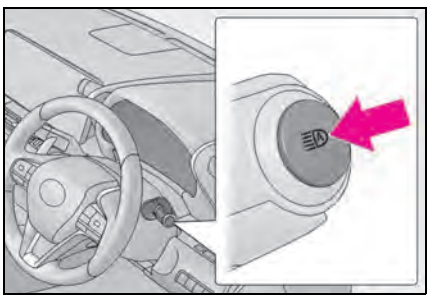
Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beam on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Automatic High Beam system

Do not overload the vehicle.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

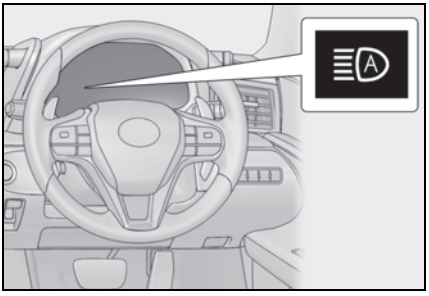
1 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.



2 Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO or position.

The AHB indicator will come on when the

system is operating.



■ **High beam automatic turning on or off conditions**

● When all of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

● If any of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned off:
- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

■ **Front camera detection information**

● The high beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
- When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
- When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
- When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
- When vehicles ahead have no lights

● The high beam may be turned off if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.

● House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to switch to the low beams, or the low beams to remain on.

● The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off:
- The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
- The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
- When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
- When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
- The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
- The number of passengers and amount of luggage

● The high beam may be turned on or off when the driver does not expect it.

● Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.

● In the situations shown below, the system may not be able to accurately detect surrounding brightness levels. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to cause problems for pedestrians, vehicles ahead or other parties. In these cases, manually switch between the high and low beams.
- In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
- The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
- The windshield is cracked or damaged.
- The front camera is deformed or dirty.
- Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
- Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights that are either switched off, dirty, changing color, or have improperly adjusted aim.
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces

(such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.).
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
- There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
- The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
- The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.
- The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

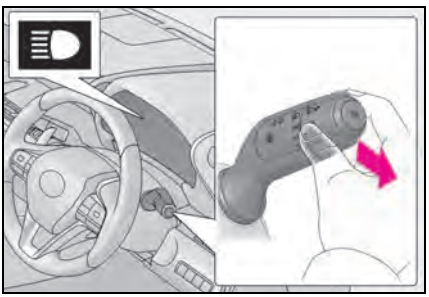
Turning the high beam on/off manually

■ Switching to high beam

Push the lever away from you.

The AHB indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Pull the lever to its original position to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

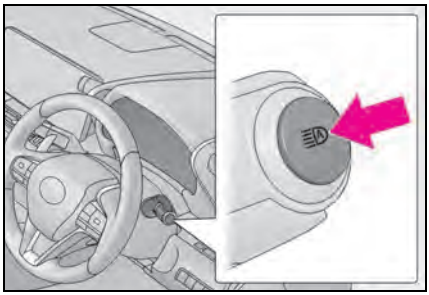


■ Switching to low beam

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The AHB indicator will turn off.

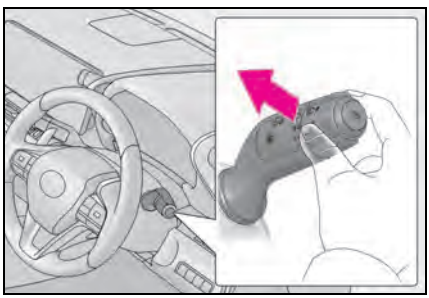
Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



■ Temporarily switching to the low beams

Pull the lever toward you and then return it to its original position.

The high beams remain on while the lever is pulled toward you, however, after the lever is returned to its original position, the low beams remain on for a certain amount of time. Afterwards, the Automatic High Beam will be activated again.



■ Temporarily switching to the low beams

It is recommended to switch to the low beams when the high beam may cause problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can switch between automatic operation and manual operation, or can use the washer.

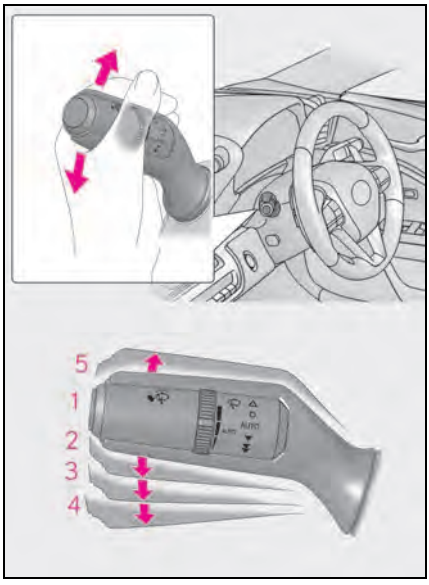
NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

Operating the wiper lever

Operating the lever operates the wipers or washer as follows. When AUTO is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



1 Off

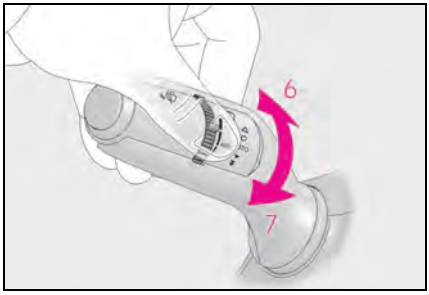
2 AUTO Rain-sensing operation

3 Low speed operation

4 High speed operation

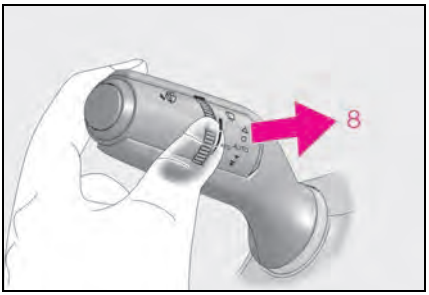
5 Temporary operation

When AUTO is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. (After operating several times, the wipers operate once more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, the dripping prevention does not operate while the vehicle is moving.)

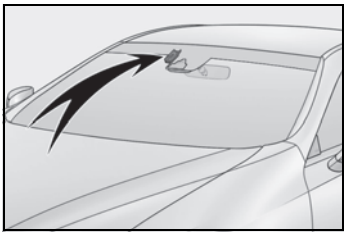
When the engine switch <power switch> is in ON and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.

Raindrop sensor

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.
  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper is turned to AUTO position while the engine switch <power switch> is in ON, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 85°C (185°F) or higher, or -30°C (-22°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



Door opening linked windshield wiper stop function

When AUTO is selected and the windshield wipers are operating, if a door is opened, the operation of the windshield wipers will be stopped to prevent anyone near the vehicle from being sprayed by water from the wipers, provided the vehicle is stopped. When the door is closed, wiper operation will resume.

To protect the windshield wipers

If movement of the windshield wipers is largely restricted by a foreign object such as snow, the operation of the windshield wipers may be stopped automatically to protect the windshield wipers. In this case, turn the windshield wiper switch off and remove the foreign object, and then use the

windshield wipers.

■ When stopping the engine <hybrid system> in an emergency while driving

If the windshield wipers are operating when the engine <hybrid system> is stopped, the windshield wipers will operate in high speed operation. After the vehicle is stopped, operation will return to normal when the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON, or operation will stop when the driver's door is opened.

■ Customization

The rain-sensing operation setting can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.447)

WARNING

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

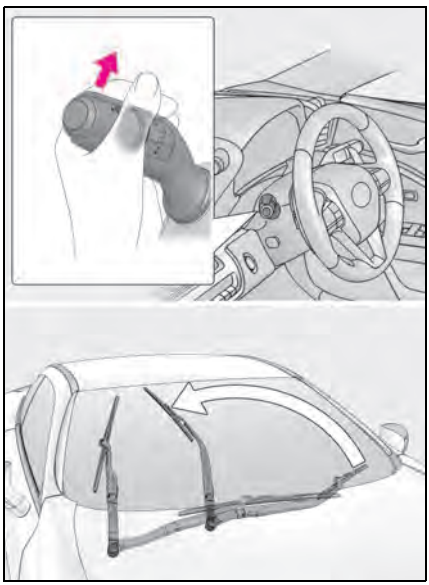
Changing the windshield wiper rest position/Lifting the windshield wipers

When the windshield wipers are not being used, they retract to below the hood. To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when parking in cold conditions or when replacing a windshield wiper insert, change the rest position of the windshield wipers to the service position using the wiper lever.

■ Raising the wipers to the service position

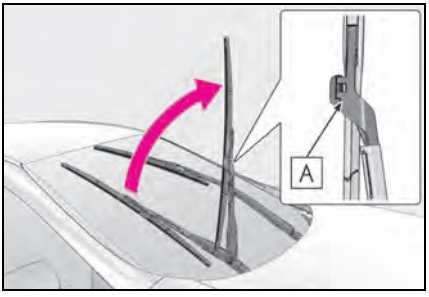
Within approximately 45 seconds of turning the engine switch <power switch> off, move the wiper lever to the △ position and hold it for approximately 2 seconds or more.

The wipers will move to the service position.



■ Lifting the windshield wipers

While holding the hook portion [A] of the wiper arm, lift the windshield wiper from the windshield.



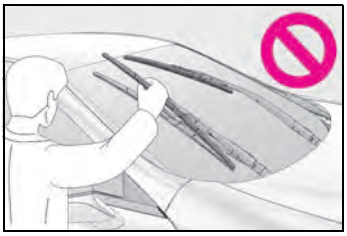
■ Lowering the windshield wipers to the retracted position

With the windshield wipers placed on the windshield, turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON and then move the wiper lever to an operating position. When the wiper switch is turned off, the windshield wipers will stop at the retracted position. Even if the wipers deviate while the engine switch <power switch> is off, the wipers will return to the normal position.

NOTICE

■ When lifting the windshield wipers

- Do not lift the windshield wipers when they are in the retracted position below the hood. Otherwise, they may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to a windshield wiper and/or the hood.
- Do not lift a windshield wiper by the wiper blade. Otherwise, the wiper blade may be deformed.



- Do not operate the wiper lever when the windshield wipers are lifted. Otherwise, the windshield wipers may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to the windshield wipers and/or hood.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Before refueling the vehicle

▶ Except Convertible

- Turn the engine switch <power switch> off and ensure that both side doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

▶ Convertible

- Turn the engine switch off.
- When closing the soft top roof, ensure that both side doors, side windows and rear quarter windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

■ Fuel types

→P.446

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

⚠ WARNING

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

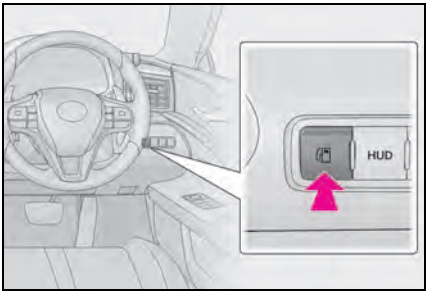
■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling. Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Opening the fuel tank cap

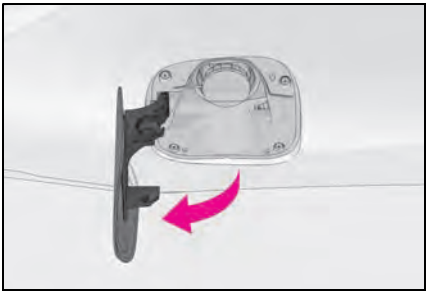
▶ Except Convertible

1 Press the opener.

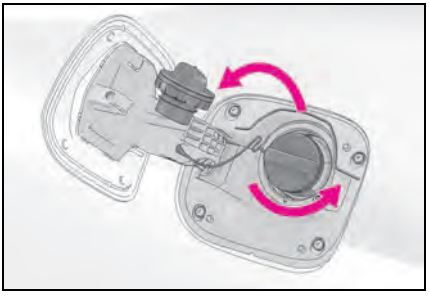


2 Open the fuel filler door until it is securely locked.

The fuel filler door will be locked when it is opened until it becomes perpendicular to the base.



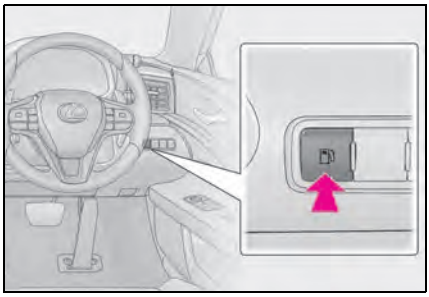
3 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly and remove it, then put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.



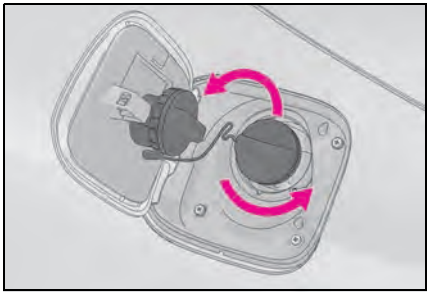
▶ Convertible

1 Press the opener.

When the doors has been locked using the entry function or wireless remote control, the fuel filler door cannot be opened.



2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly and remove it, then put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.

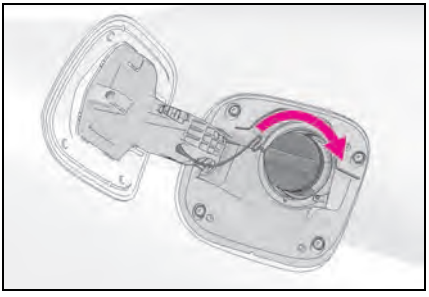


■ **If the fuel filler door cannot be opened**

→P.409

Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

Driving assist system

- **PCS (Pre-Collision System)**

→P.229

- **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)**

→P.239

- **AHB (Automatic High Beam)**

→P.214

- **RSA (Road Sign Assist)**

→P.248

- **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

→P.251

WARNING

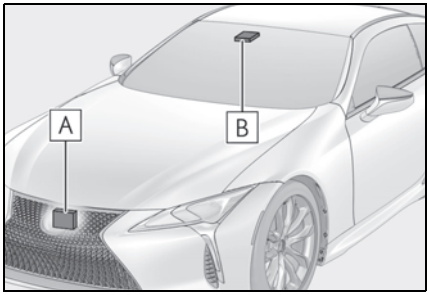
■ Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.



A Radar sensor

B Front camera

WARNING

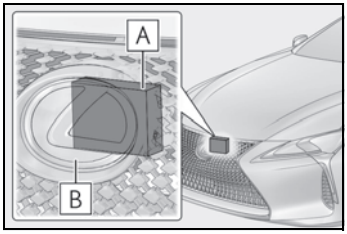
■ To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

WARNING

- Keep the radar sensor and the radar sensor cover clean at all times.



A Radar sensor

B Radar sensor cover

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the radar sensor cover is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

Clean the radar sensor and radar sensor cover with a soft cloth to avoid damaging them.

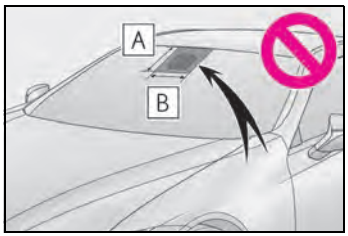
- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, radar sensor cover or surrounding area.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensor or radar sensor cover.
- In the following cases, the radar sensor must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
  - When the radar sensor or front grille are removed and installed, or replaced
  - When the front bumper is replaced

To avoid malfunction of the front camera

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the front camera may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clean the windshield.
  - If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera.
  - If the inner side of the windshield where the front camera is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach objects, such as stickers, transparent stickers, etc., to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front camera (shaded area in the illustration).



A From the top of the windshield to approximately 1 cm (0.4 in.) below the bottom of the front camera

B Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm [4.0 in.] to the right and left from the center of the front camera)

WARNING

- If the part of the windshield in front of the front camera is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice. (→P.299)
- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.
- Do not attach window tint to the windshield.
- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.
  After replacing the windshield, the front camera must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- Do not allow liquids to contact the front camera.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the front camera.
- Do not dirty or damage the front camera.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens of the front camera. Also, do not touch the lens.
  If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the front camera to a strong impact.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the front camera or remove it.
- Do not disassemble the front camera.
- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the front camera (inside rear view mirror, etc.) or ceiling.
- Do not attach any accessories to the hood, front grille or front bumper that may obstruct the front camera. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the front camera.
- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

■ **If a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

A system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

● In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table. When the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Actions
When the area around a camera is covered with dirt, moisture (fogged up, covered with condensation, ice, etc.), or other foreign matter	Using the wiper and A/C function, remove the dirt and other attached matter. (→P.299)
When the temperature around the front camera is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment	If the front camera is hot, such as after the vehicle had been parked in the sun, use the air conditioning system to decrease the temperature around the front camera. If a sunshade was used when the vehicle was parked, depending on its type, the sunlight reflected from the surface of the sunshade may cause the temperature of the front camera to become excessively high.
	If the front camera is cold, such after the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, use the air conditioning system to increase the temperature around the front camera.
The area in front of the front camera is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is attached to the part of the windshield in front of the front camera.	Close the hood, remove the sticker, etc. to clear the obstruction.
When "Pre-Collision System Radar In Self Calibration Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is displayed.	Check whether there is attached materials on the radar sensor and radar sensor cover, and if there is, remove it.

● In the following situations, if the situation has changed (or the vehicle has been driven for some time) and the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the temperature around the radar sensor is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment
- When the front camera cannot detect objects in front of the vehicle, such as when driving

in the dark, snow, or fog, or when bright lights are shining into the front camera

- Depending on the conditions in the vicinity of the vehicle, the radar may judge the surrounding environment can not be properly recognized. In that case, “Pre-Collision System Unavailable See Owner’s Manual” is displayed.

PCS (Pre-Collision System)

The pre-collision system uses a radar sensor and front camera to detect objects (→P.229) in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.232)

Detectable objects

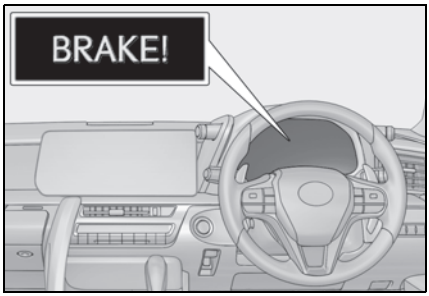
The system can detect the following (The detectable objects differs depending on the function.):

- Vehicles
- Bicyclists
- Pedestrians

System functions

■ **Pre-collision warning**

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



■ **Pre-collision brake assist**

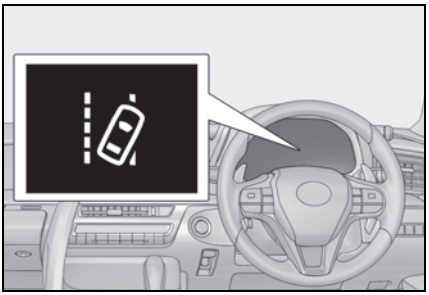
When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

■ **Pre-collision braking**

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the impact of the collision.

■ **Emergency steering assist**

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high and that there is sufficient space for the vehicle to be steered into within its lane, and the driver has begun evasive maneuver or steering, emergency steering assist will assist the steering movements to help enhance the vehicle stability and for lane departure prevention. During operation, the indicator will illuminate in green.

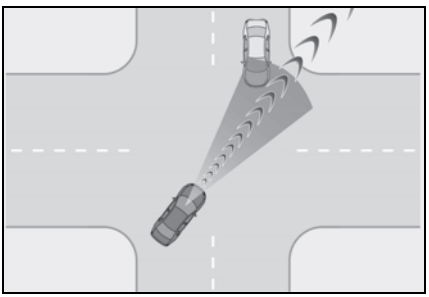


■ Intersection right/left turn assistance

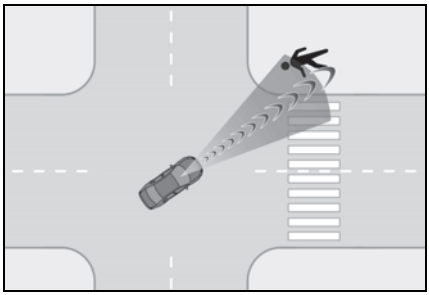
If the system determines that there is a high possibility of a collision in the following situations, it will assist with Pre-collision warning and, if necessary Pre-collision braking.

Depending on the configuration of the intersection, it may not be possible to support.

- When you turn right/left at an intersection and cross the path of an oncoming vehicle



- When you turn right/left, pedestrian is detected in the forward direction and estimated to enter your vehicle's path (bicyclists are not detected.)



■ Suspension control

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the AVS (→P.285) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

WARNING

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Although this system is designed to help avoid a collision or help reduce the impact of the collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P.235

WARNING

- Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P.237

● Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-collision system yourself. Depending on the objects used for testing (dummies, cardboard objects imitating detectable objects, etc.), the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

■ Pre-collision braking

● When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.

● If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-collision braking function, the pre-collision braking function operation will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds. Depress the brake pedal as necessary.

● The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.

● In some situations, while the pre-collision braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.

● If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision braking function.

■ Emergency steering assist

● As emergency steering assist operation will be canceled when the system determines that lane departure prevention function has been completed.

● Emergency steering assist may not operate or may be cancel in the following cases as the system may determine the driver is taking actions.

- If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly, the steering wheel is being operated sharply, the brake pedal is being depressed or the turn signal lever is being operated. In this case, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and the emergency steering assist may not operate.
- In some situations, while the emergency steering assist is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly, the steering wheel is operated sharply or the brake pedal is being depressed and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- When the emergency steering assist is operating, if the steering wheel is held firmly or is operated in the opposite direction to that which the system is generating torque, the function may be canceled.

■ When to disable the pre-collision system

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

● When the vehicle is being towed

● When your vehicle is towing another vehicle

● When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation

WARNING

- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running <hybrid system on> and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed
- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If equipment (snow plow, etc.) that may obstruct the radar sensor or front camera is temporarily installed to the vehicle

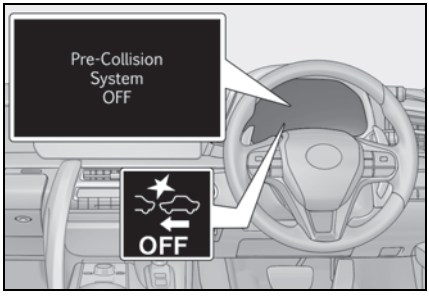
Changing settings of the pre-collision system

Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system

The pre-collision system can be enabled/disabled on (→P.112) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON.

If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



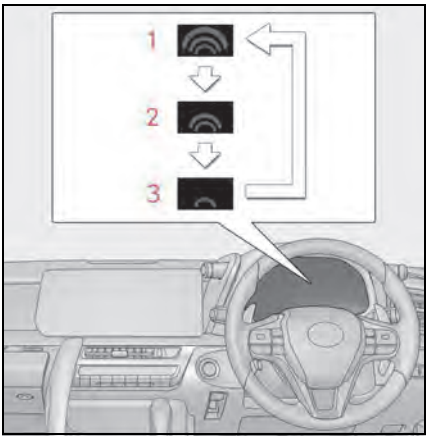
Changing the pre-collision warning timing

The pre-collision warning timing can be changed on (→P.112) of the multi-information display.

The warning timing setting is retained when the engine switch <power switch> is turned off. However, if the pre-collision system is disabled and re-enabled, the operation timing will return to the default setting (middle).

If the pre-collision warning timing is changed, emergency steering assist timing will also be changed accordingly.

If late is selected, emergency steering assist would not operate in case of an emergency.



1 Early

2 Middle

This is the default setting.

3 Late

■ **Operational conditions for each pre-collision function**

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a detected object is high.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

- If a 12-volt battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- If the shift position is in R
- Convertible: When the VSC OFF indicator is illuminated (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

The operation speeds and operation cancellation for each function is listed below.

● Pre-collision warning

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 20 to 180 km/h (13 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

While the pre-collision warning function is operating, if the steering wheel is operated heavily or suddenly, the pre-collision warning may be cancelled.

● Pre-collision brake assist

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)

● Pre-collision braking

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 20 to 180 km/h (13 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

● Emergency steering assist

When the turn signal lights are flashing, emergency steering assist will not operate in case of an emergency.

When the VSC OFF indicator is illuminated, emergency steering assist will not operate.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles, bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)

If any of the following occur while the emergency steering assist function is operating, it will be canceled:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● Intersection right/left turn assistance (pre-collision warning)

When the turn signal lights are not flashing, support for turning left or right at an intersection

which targets oncoming vehicles does not work.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	Approx. 30 to 55 km/h (20 to 35 mph)	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)
Pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	—	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)

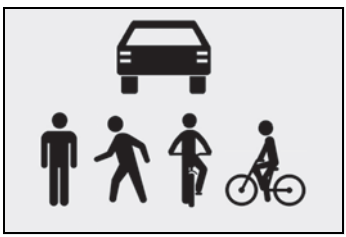
● Intersection right/left turn assistance (pre-collision braking)

When the turn signal lights are not flashing, support for turning left or right at an intersection which targets oncoming vehicles does not work.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 15 to 25 km/h (10 to 15 mph)	Approx. 30 to 45 km/h (20 to 28 mph)	Approx. 45 to 70 km/h (28 to 43 mph)
Pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	—	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)

■ Object detection function

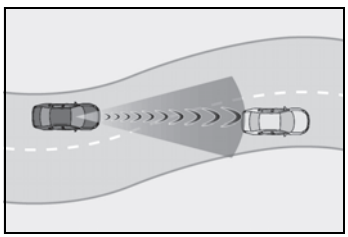
The system detects objects based on their size, profile, motion, etc. However, an object may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating properly. (→P.237) The illustration shows an image of detectable objects.



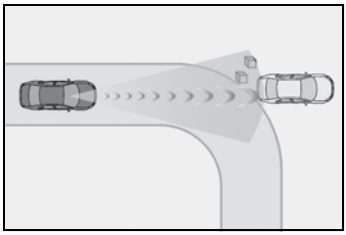
■ Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

● In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.

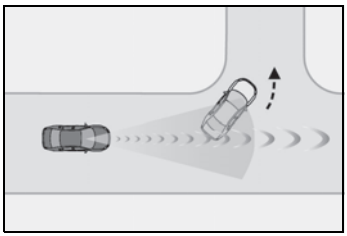
- When passing a detectable object, etc.
- When changing lanes while overtaking a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching a detectable object in an adjacent lane or on the roadside, such as when changing the course of travel or driving on a winding road



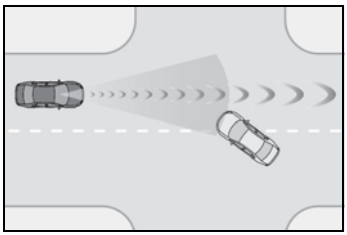
- When rapidly closing on a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as detectable objects, guardrails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a detectable object or other object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



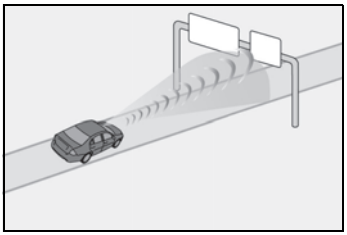
- When there are patterns or paint in front of your vehicle that may be mistaken for a detectable object
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When overtaking a detectable object that is changing lanes or making a right/left turn



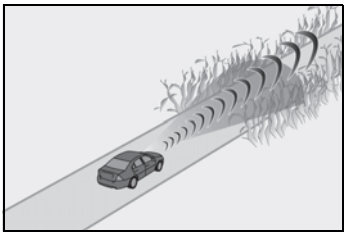
- When passing a detectable object in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn



- When a detectable object approaches very close and then stops before entering the path of your vehicle
- If the front of your vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when on an uneven or undulating road surface
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion in front of your vehicle
- When passing under an object (road sign, billboard, etc.)

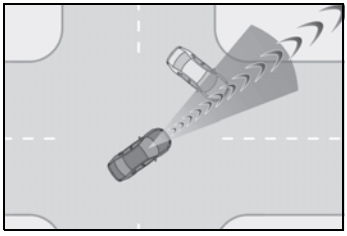


- When approaching an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact your vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner



- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, radar equipped vehicles, etc., or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present
- When there are many things which can reflect the radio waves of the radar in the vicinity (tunnels, truss bridges, gravel roads, snow covered road that have tracks, etc.)
- While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian has already exited the path of your vehicle
- While making a right/left turn, closely in front of an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian.
- While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian stops before entering the path of your vehicle

- While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle turns right/left in front of your vehicle

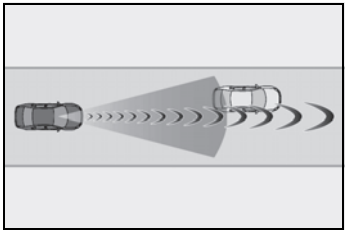


- While steering into the direction of oncoming traffic

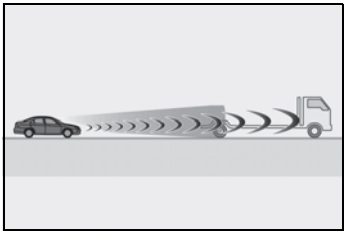
Situations in which the system may not operate properly

In some situations such as the following, an object may not be detected by the radar sensor and front camera, preventing the system from operating properly:

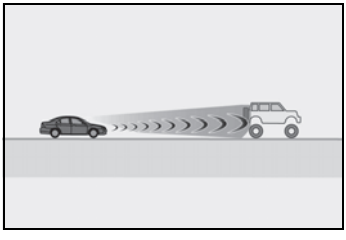
- When a detectable object is approaching your vehicle
- When your vehicle or a detectable object is wobbling
- If a detectable object makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
- When your vehicle approaches a detectable object rapidly
- When a detectable object is not directly in front of your vehicle



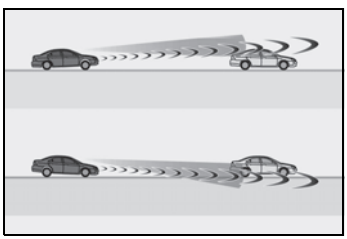
- When a detectable object is near a wall, fence, guardrail, manhole cover, vehicle, steel plate on the road, etc.
- When a detectable object is under a structure
- When part of a detectable object is hidden by an object, such as large baggage, an umbrella, or guardrail
- When there are many things which can reflect the radio waves of the radar in the vicinity (tunnels, truss bridges, gravel roads, snow covered road that have tracks, etc.)
- When there is an effect on the radio waves to the radar that is installed on another vehicle
- When multiple detectable objects are close together
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a detectable object
- When a detectable object is a shade of white and looks extremely bright
- When a detectable object appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as its surroundings
- If a detectable object cuts or suddenly emerges in front of your vehicle
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When a very bright light ahead, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front camera
- When approaching the side or front of a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle ahead is a motorcycle
- If a vehicle ahead is narrow, such as a personal mobility vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a preceding vehicle has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer



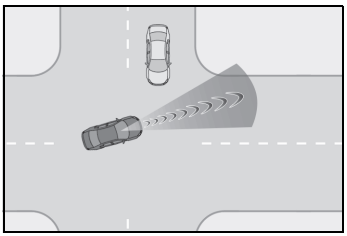
- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance



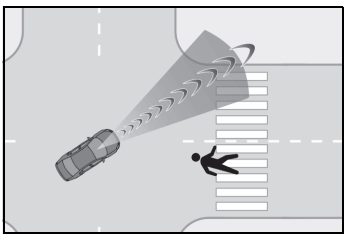
- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- If a vehicle ahead is a child sized bicycle, a bicycle that is carrying a large load, a bicycle ridden by more than one person, or a uniquely shaped bicycle (bicycle with a child seat, tandem bicycle, etc.)
- If a pedestrian/or the riding height of a bicyclist ahead is shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)
- If a pedestrian/bicyclist is wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure
- If a pedestrian is bending forward or squatting or bicyclist is bending forward
- If a pedestrian/bicyclist is moving fast
- If a pedestrian is pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle
- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel, making a detectable object appear to be nearly the same color as its surroundings
- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- After the engine <hybrid system> has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few seconds after driving on a curve
- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered



- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the front camera
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds
- When driving on a hill
- If the radar sensor or front camera is misaligned
- When driving in a traffic lane separated by more than one lane where oncoming vehicles are driving while making a right/left turn
- When largely out of place with the opposite facing targeted oncoming vehicle during a right/left turn



- While making a right/left turn, when a pedestrian approaches from behind or side of your vehicle



● In addition to the above, in some situations, such as the following, the emergency steering assist may not operate.

- When the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see, such as when they are faint, diverging/merging, or a shadow is cast upon them
- When the lane is wider or narrower than normal
- When there is a light and dark pattern on the road surface, such as due to road repairs
- When the target is too close
- When there is insufficient safe or unobstructed space for the vehicle to be steered into

- If oncoming vehicle is present
- If VSC function is operating

● In some situations such as the following, sufficient braking force or steering force may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:

- If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
- If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
- When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface
- When the road surface has deep wheel tracks
- When driving on a hill road
- When driving on a road that has inclines to the left or right

■ **If VSC is disabled**

▶ Except Convertible

● If VSC is disabled (→P.286), emergency steering assist is disabled.

● The PCS warning light will turn on.

▶ Convertible

● If VSC is disabled (→P.286), the pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking functions are also disabled.

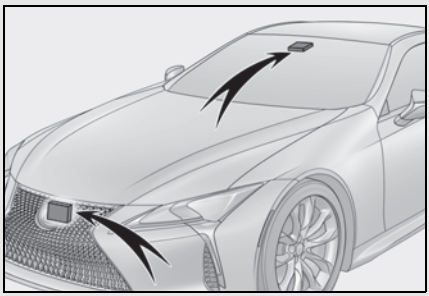
● The PCS warning light will turn on and "VSC Turned OFF Pre-Collision Brake System Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)

While driving on a road with clear white (yellow) lane lines, the LTA system warns the driver if the vehicle may deviate from the current lane or course*, and also can slightly operate the steering wheel to help avoid deviation from the lane or course*. Also, while the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.251) is operating, this system will operate the steering wheel to maintain the vehicle's lane position.

The LTA system recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course* using the front camera. Additionally, it detects preceding vehicles using the front camera and radar.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



WARNING

■ Before using LTA system

- Do not rely solely upon the LTA system. The LTA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Situations unsuitable for LTA system

In the following situations, use the LTA switch to turn the system off. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.
- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- During emergency towing

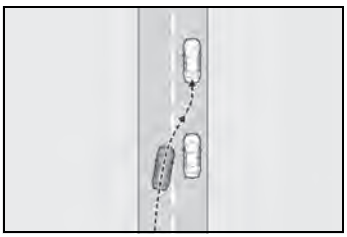
■ Preventing LTA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Conditions in which functions may not operate properly

In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle without relying solely on the functions.

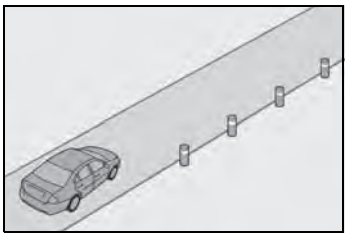
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.244) and the preceding vehicle changes lanes. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and also change lanes.)



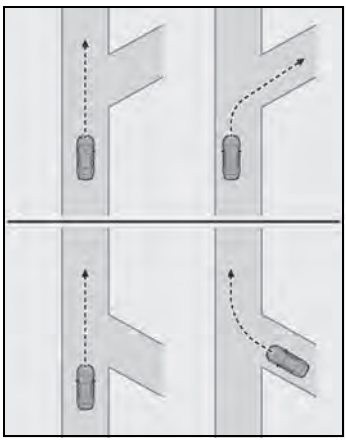
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.244) and the preceding vehicle is swaying. (Your vehicle may sway accordingly and depart from the lane.)

WARNING

- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.244) and the preceding vehicle departs from its lane. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.244) and the preceding vehicle is being driven extremely close to the left/right lane line. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- Vehicle is being driven around a sharp curve.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, reflective poles, etc.).



- Vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.



- Repair marks of asphalt, white (yellow) lines, etc. are present due to road repair.



- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, “Raised pavement marker” or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- If the edge of the road is not clear or straight.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.

WARNING

- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- When driving in a tunnel or at night with the headlights off or when a headlight is dim due to its lens being dirty or it being misaligned.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle is affected by wind from a vehicle driven in a nearby lane.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.

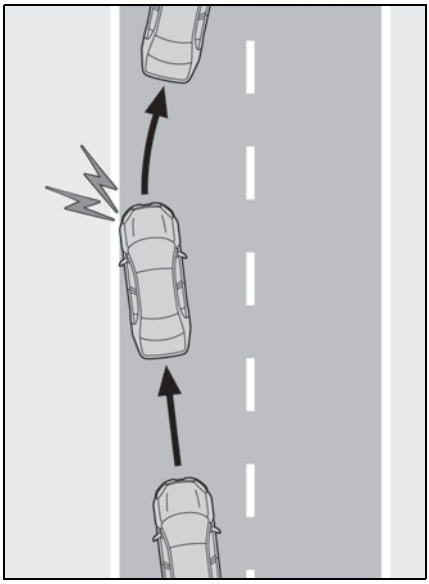
Functions included in LTA system

Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and a warning buzzer will sound to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds, check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

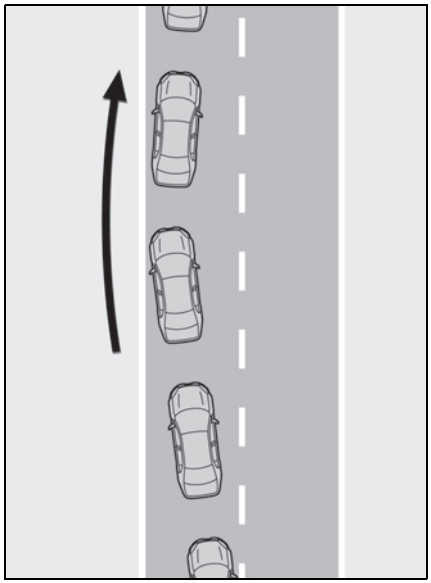


Steering assist function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the

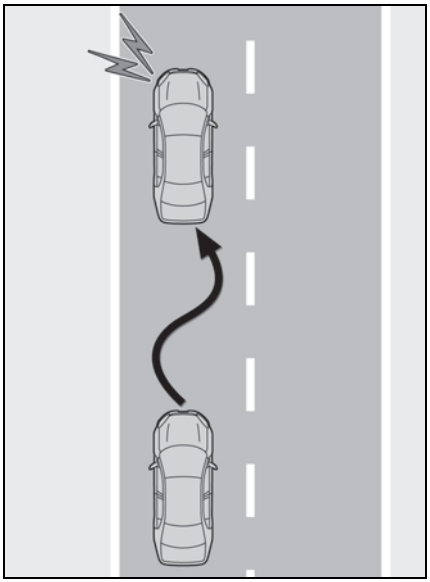
steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying within a lane, the warning buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.

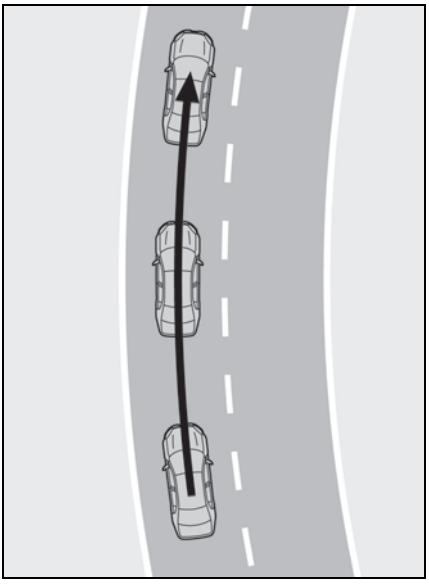


Lane centering function

This function is linked with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range and provides the required assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its current lane.

When dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is not operating, the lane centering function does not operate.

In situations where the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see or are not visible, such as when in a traffic jam, this function will operate to help follow a preceding vehicle by monitoring the position of the preceding vehicle.



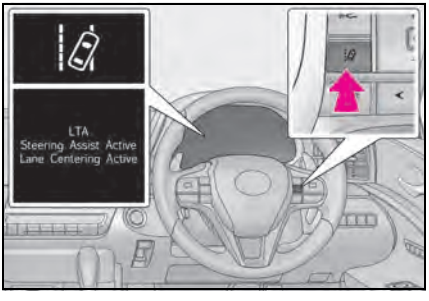
Turning LTA system on

Press the LTA switch to turn the LTA system on.

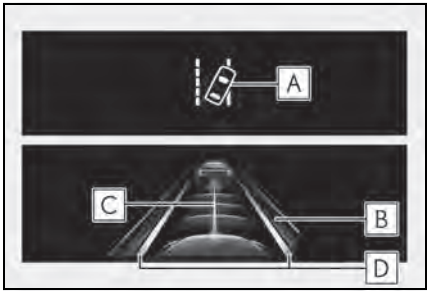
The LTA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LTA switch again to turn the LTA system off.

When the LTA system is turned on or off, operation of the LTA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine <hybrid system> is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LTA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:

LTA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:

Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Flashing in orange:

Lane departure alert function is operating.

B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are displayed:

Indicates that steering wheel assist of the lane centering function is operating.

One outer side of the lane is displayed:

Indicates that steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are flashing:

Alerts the driver that their input is necessary to stay in the center of the lane (lane centering function).

C Follow-up cruising display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

Indicates that steering assist of the lane centering function is operating by monitoring the position of a preceding vehicle.

When the follow-up cruising display is displayed, if the preceding vehicle moves, your vehicle may move in the same way. Always pay careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel as necessary to correct the path of the vehicle and ensure safety.

D Lane departure alert function display

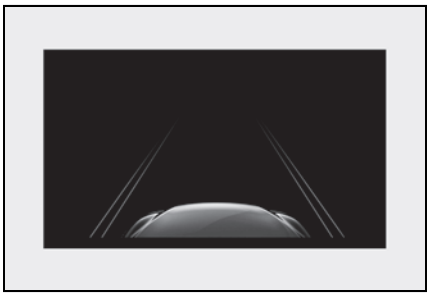
Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

▶ Inside of displayed lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines or a course*. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

▶ Inside of displayed lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or a course* or is temporarily canceled.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ **Operation conditions of each function**

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.*1
- System recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course*2. (When a white [yellow] line or course*2 is recognized on only one side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.247)

*1: The function operates even if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) when the lane centering function is operating.

*2: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

● Steering assist function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Warning" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.112)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.247)

● Lane centering function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Setting for "Lane Center" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.112)
- This function recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or the position of a preceding vehicle (except when the preceding vehicle is small, such as a motorcycle).
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 to 4 m (10 to 13 ft.).
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.247)
- Vehicle does not accelerate or decelerate by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.247)
- The vehicle is being driven in the center of a lane.
- Steering assist function is not operating.

■ **Temporary cancelation of functions**

● When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.245)

● If the operation conditions (→P.245) are no longer met while the lane centering function is operating, the buzzer may sound to indicate that the function has been temporarily canceled.

■ **Steering assist function/lane centering function**

● Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.

● The steering control of the function is overridden by the driver's steering wheel operation.

● Do not attempt to test the operation of the steering assist function.

■ **Lane departure alert function**

● The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc.

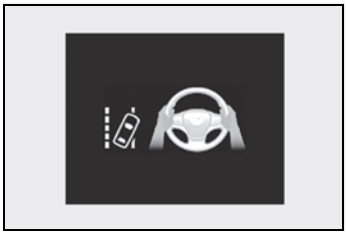
● If the edge of the course* is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function may not operate.

● Do not attempt to test the operation of the lane departure alert function.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ **Hands off steering wheel warning**

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



- When the system determines the driver is not holding the steering wheel while the lane centering function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

- When the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from the lane while driving around a curve while the lane centering function is operating.

Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

■ **Vehicle sway warning function**

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ **Warning message**

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LTA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure. Also, if a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

- "LTA Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"

The system may not be operating properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- "LTA Unavailable"

The system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera. Turn the LTA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LTA system back on.

- "LTA Unavailable at Current Speed"

The function cannot be used as the vehicle speed exceeds the LTA operation range. Drive slower.

■ **Customization**

Function settings can be changed.

(Customizable features:→P.449)

RSA (Road Sign Assist)

The RSA system recognizes specific road signs using the front camera to provide information to the driver via the display.



If the system judges that the vehicle is being driven over the speed limit, according to the recognized road signs, it notifies the driver through a visual notification and notification buzzer.

WARNING

■ Before using the RSA

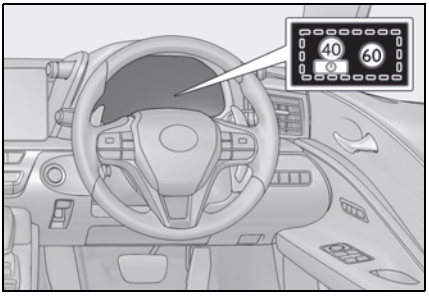
Do not rely solely upon the RSA system. RSA is a system which supports the driver by providing information, but it is not a replacement for a driver's own vision and awareness. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to the traffic rules.

Indication on the multi-information display

When the front camera recognizes a sign, the sign will be displayed on the multi-information display.

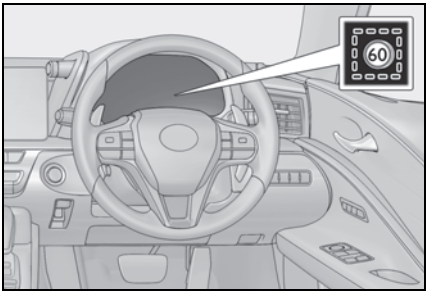
- When the driving support system information display is selected, a

maximum of 2 signs can be displayed. (→P.112)



- When a tab other than the driving support system information display is selected, the following types of road signs will be displayed. (→P.112)

• Speed limit sign



If signs other than speed limit signs are recognized, they will be displayed in an overlapping stack under the current speed limit sign.

Supported types of road signs

The following types of road signs, including electronic signs and blinking signs, are displayed.

A non-official or a recently introduced traffic sign may not be displayed.

: Speed limit*

: Conditional speed limit sign (School zone)

*: No speed limit information is displayed when speed limit sign information is not available.

Notification function

In the following situations, the RSA system will notify the driver.

When the vehicle speed exceeds the speed notification threshold of the speed limit sign displayed, the sign display will be emphasized and a buzzer will sound.

Depending on the situation, a notification function may not operate properly.

Setting procedure

1 Press < or > of the meter control switches and select

2 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select "Vehicle Settings", then press "OK"

3 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select , then press "OK"

4 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches and select "RSA", then press "OK"

Automatic turn-off of RSA sign display

In the following situations, a displayed

speed limit sign will stop being displayed automatically:

- No sign has been recognized for a certain distance.
- The road changes due to a left or right turn, etc.

■ Conditions in which the function may not operate or detect correctly

In the following situations, RSA does not operate normally and may not recognize signs, display the incorrect sign, etc. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- The front camera is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.
- Dirt, snow, stickers, etc. are on the windshield near the front camera.
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms.
- Light from an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the front camera.
- The sign is dirty, faded, tilted or bent.
- The contrast of electronic sign is low.
- All or part of the sign is hidden by the leaves of a tree, a pole, etc.
- The sign is only visible to the front camera for a short amount of time.
- The driving scene (turning, lane change, etc.) is judged incorrectly.
- If a sign not appropriate for the currently traveled lane, but the sign exists directly after a freeway branches, or in an adjacent lane just before merging.
- Stickers are attached to the rear of the preceding vehicle.
- A sign resembling a system compatible sign is recognized.
- Side road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the front camera) while the vehicle is traveling on the main road.
- Roundabout exit road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the front camera) while traveling on a roundabout.
- The front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- The surrounding brightness is not sufficient or changes suddenly.
- When a sign intended for trucks, etc. is recognized.
- The speed information displayed on the meter and on the navigation system may be different due to the navigation system using map data.

■ Speed limit sign display

If the engine switch <power switch> was last turned off while a speed limit sign was displayed on the multi-information display, the same sign displays again when the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON.

■ If "RSA Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is shown

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.450)

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

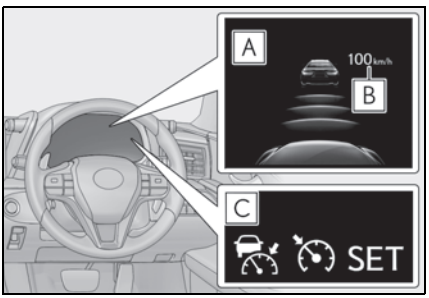
In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.253)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.258)

System components

■ Meter display

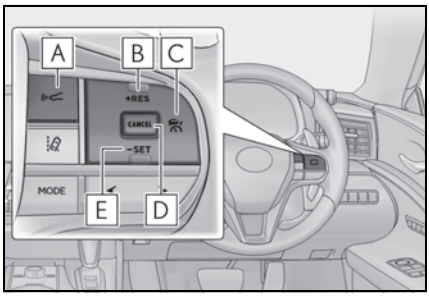


A Multi-information display

B Set speed

C Indicators

■ Operation switches



A Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cruise control main switch

D Cancel switch

E "-SET" switch

WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.261
  - Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.262

WARNING

- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range setting to off, using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions.
It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow

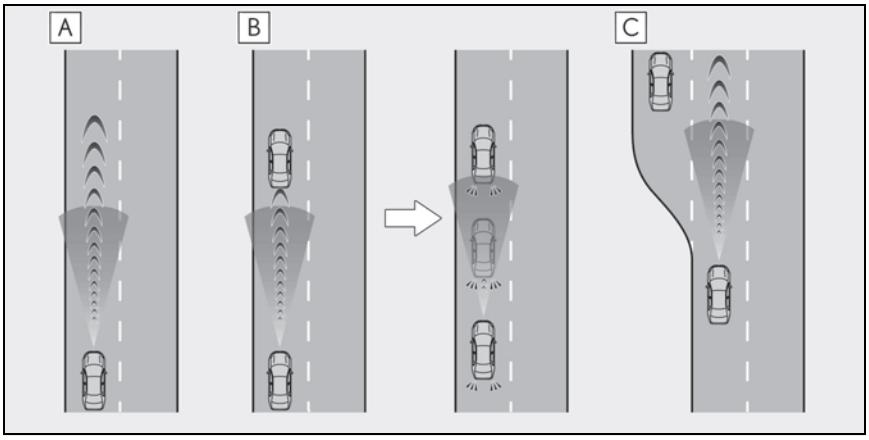
WARNING

- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- During emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pressing the "+RES" switch or depressing the accelerator pedal (start-off operation) will resume follow-up cruising. If the start-off operation is not performed, system control continues to keep your vehicle stopped.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to an overtaking lane while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

The system's identification of what is an overtaking lane may be determined solely based on the location of the steering wheel in the vehicle (left side driver position versus right side driver position.) If the vehicle is driven to a region where the overtaking lane is on a different side from where the vehicle is normally driven, the vehicle may accelerate when the turn signal lever is operated in the opposite direction to the overtaking lane (e.g., if the driver normally operates the vehicle in a region where the overtaking lane is to the right but then drives to a region where the overtaking lane is to the left, the vehicle may accelerate when the right turn signal is activated).

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

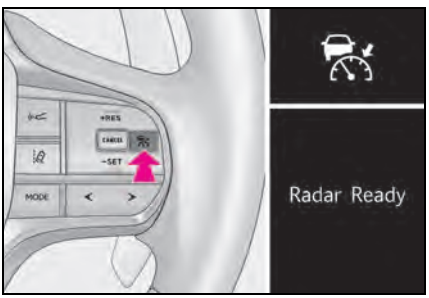
The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.

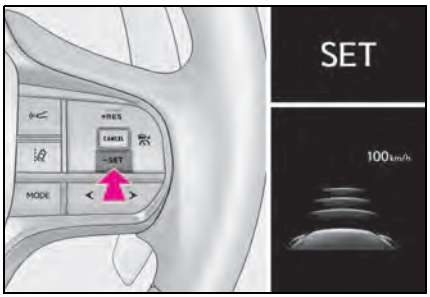
If the cruise control main switch is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.258)



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

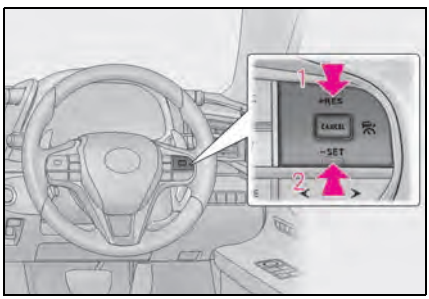
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

- Adjusting the set speed by the switch

To change the set speed, press the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed (Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the

switch to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the switch is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.258), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

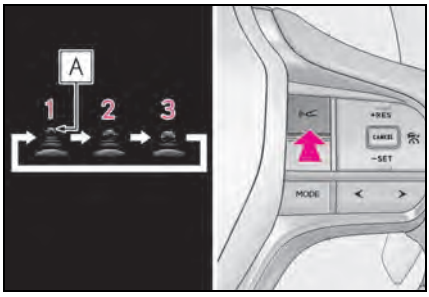
- Increasing the set speed by the accelerator pedal

1 Accelerate with accelerator pedal operation to the desired vehicle speed

2 Press the "-SET" switch

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark A will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

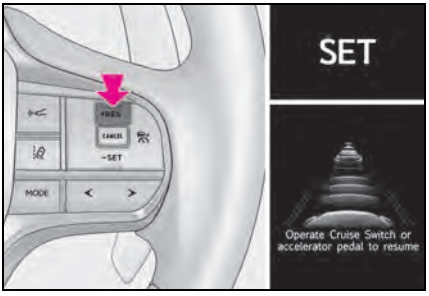
Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle stops at a certain vehicle-to-vehicle distance depending on the situation.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

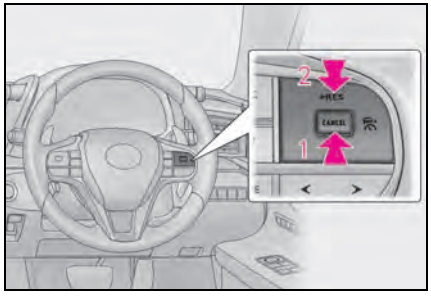
Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, press the "+RES" switch.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



Canceling and resuming the speed control



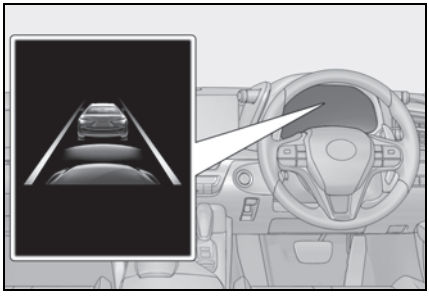
1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed. (When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control

speed was set

- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Curve speed reduction function

While driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, this function will reduce the vehicle speed, if it is determined to be necessary.

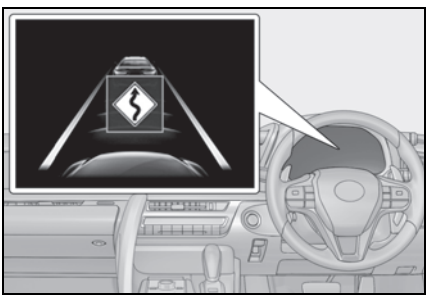
Function operation

When the steering wheel begins to be turned, the vehicle speed will begin being reduced. When the steering wheel is returned to the center position, the vehicle speed reduction will end.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle speed will then return to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode set speed.

In situations where vehicle-to-vehicle distance control needs to operate, such as when a preceding vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, the curve speed reduction function will be canceled.

Operation display



Displayed when the vehicle speed is being reduced.

When the vehicle speed reduction ends, the display will disappear.

Changing the settings of the curve speed reduction function

The curve speed reduction function can be enabled/disabled and the vehicle speed reduction strength can be adjusted on (→P.112) of the multi-information display.

The setting will change each time the "OK" meter control switch is pressed.

Selecting constant speed control mode

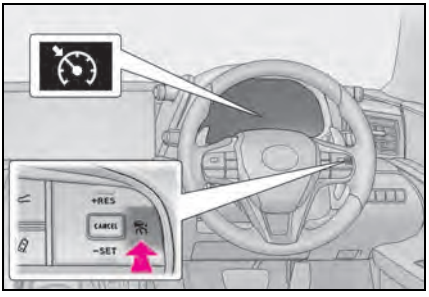
When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the cruise control main switch for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the switch is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the switch

with the cruise control off.



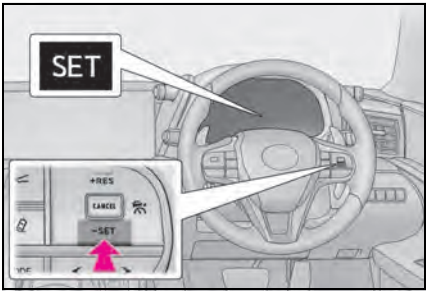
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.255

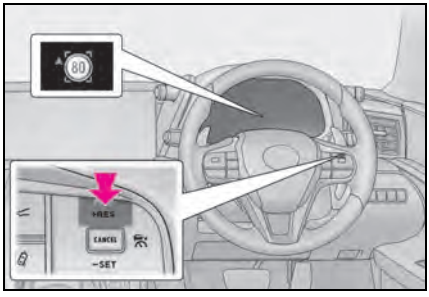
Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.257



Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist

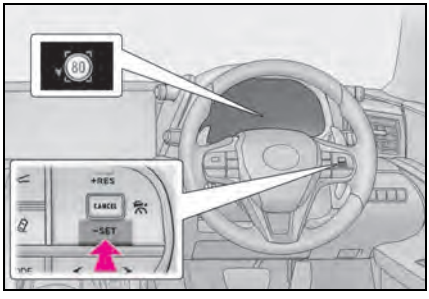
When this function is enabled and the system is operating in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.248), when a speed limit sign is detected, the recognized speed limit will be displayed with an up/down arrow. The set speed can be increased/reduced to the recognized speed limit by pressing and holding the "+RES"/"-SET" switch.

- When the current set speed is lower than the recognized speed limit



Press and hold the "+RES" switch.

- When the current set speed is higher than the recognized speed limit



Press and hold the "-SET" switch.

Enabling/Disabling the Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist

Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist can be enabled/disabled in on the multi-information display. (→P.112)

When the Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist is operating, while driving down a hill, the vehicle speed may exceed the set speed.

In this case, the displayed set vehicle speed will be highlighted and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver.

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when**

- The shift position is in D.
- The desired set speed can be set when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more. (However, when the vehicle speed is set while driving at below approximately 30 km/h [20 mph], the set speed will be set to approximately 30 km/h [20 mph].)

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ **When the vehicle stops while follow-up cruising**

- Pressing the "+RES" switch while the vehicle ahead stops will resume follow-up cruising if the vehicle ahead starts off within approximately 3 seconds after the switch is pressed.
- If the vehicle ahead starts off within 3 seconds after your vehicle stops, follow-up cruising will be resumed.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates. (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates. (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The parking brake is operated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than

the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate**

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a gentle curve
- When the accelerator pedal is being depressed
- When the vehicle is being driven around an extremely short curve

■ **The Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist may not operate properly when**

As the Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist may not operate properly in conditions in which RSA may not operate or detect correctly (→P.249), when using this function, make sure to check the speed limit sign displayed.

In the following situations, the set speed may not be changed to the recognized speed limit by pressing and holding the "+RES"/"-SET" switch.

- If speed limit information is not available
- When the recognized speed limit is the same as the set speed
- When the recognized speed limit is outside of the speed range that the dynamic radar cruise control system can operate

■ **Brake operation**

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

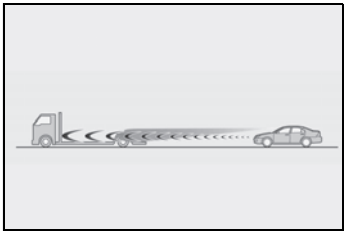
Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.227, 399)

■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

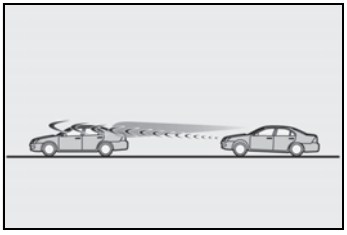
In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.257) may not be activated.

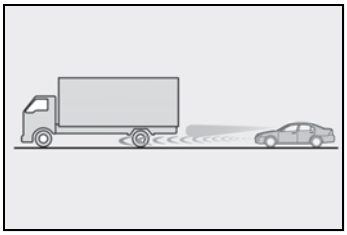
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

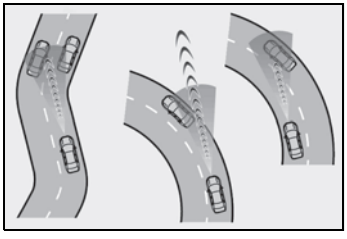


■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

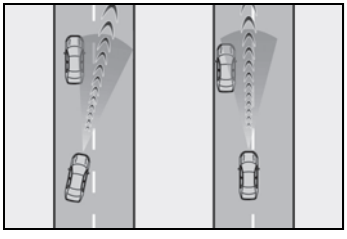
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly**

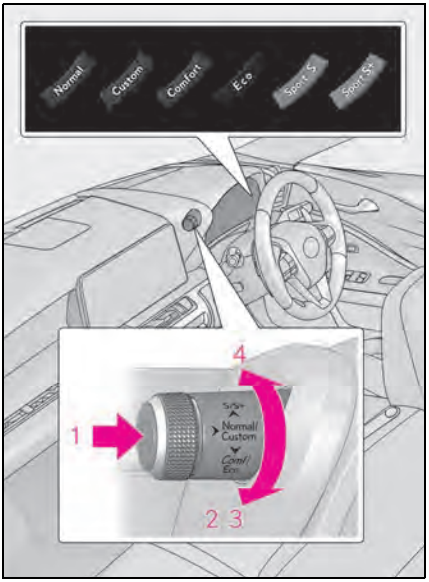
In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a curve on an incline/decline
- When the course of the vehicle differs from the shape of the curve
- When the vehicle speed is excessively high when entering a curve
- When the steering wheel is suddenly operated

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

Selecting the driving mode



1 Normal mode/Custom mode

Normal mode and custom mode are selected by pressing the driving mode select switch. Each time the switch is pressed, the driving mode changes between normal mode and custom mode. When custom mode is selected, the "Custom" indicator comes on.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when not in normal mode.

• Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

When the shift position is in D, an appropriate gear for sporty driving may automatically be selected according to driver performance and driving conditions.

• Custom mode

Allows you to drive with the power train, chassis and air conditioning system functions set to your preferred settings.

Custom mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of Center Display. (→P.447)

2 Comfort mode

By controlling the suspension, riding comfort is further enhanced. Suitable for city driving.

When not in comfort mode and the driving mode select switch is turned forward, the "Comfort" indicator comes on.

3 Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When in comfort mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned forward, the "Eco" indicator comes on.

4 Sport mode

• SPORT S mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode is suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned backward, the "Sport S" indicator comes on.

• SPORT S+ mode

Provides earlier downshift timing than SPORT S mode in order to maintain a high engine speed and provides faster gear changes. This mode also changes the

steering feel, suspension control and VDIM control, making it suitable for powerful sporty driving.
When in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned backward, the "Sport S+" indicator comes on.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Turn off eco air conditioning mode (→P.301)
- Adjust the fan speed (→P.299, 301)
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Automatic deactivation of sport mode and custom mode**

If the engine switch <power switch> is turned off after driving in sport mode or custom mode, the drive mode will be changed to normal mode.

■ **Driving mode pop-up display**

When the driving mode is changed, the selected driving mode will be temporarily displayed on the Center Display. (Except for Normal mode)

For Custom mode, select "Settings" on the display to customize the driving mode.

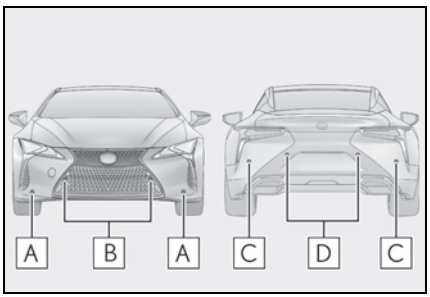
Lexus parking assist-sensor

The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the Center Display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

System components

■ **Types of sensors**

▶ Except Convertible



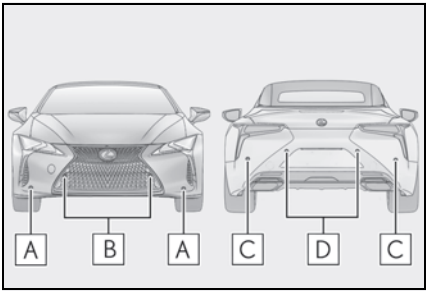
A Front corner sensors

B Front center sensors

C Rear corner sensors

D Rear center sensors

▶ Convertible



A Front corner sensors

B Front center sensors

C Rear corner sensors

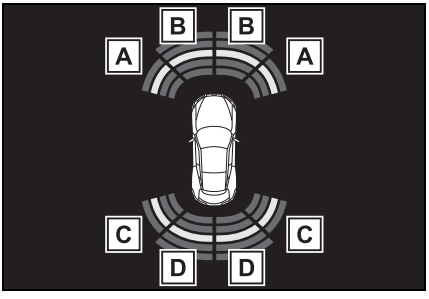
D Rear center sensors

■ **Display**

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the Center Display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

▶ Except Convertible

Display example:



A Front corner sensor detection

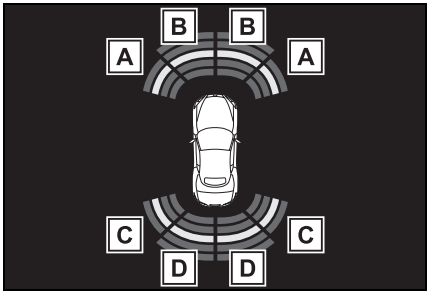
B Front center sensor detection

C Rear corner sensor detection

D Rear center sensor detection

▶ Convertible

Display example:



A Front corner sensor detection

B Front center sensor detection

C Rear corner sensor detection

D Rear center sensor detection

Turning Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

1 Press ＜ or ＞ of the meter control switches, and select ⚙.

2 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches, and select “Parking Assist”, and then press “OK”.

When the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on, the Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator comes on to inform the driver that the system is operational.

■ **The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when**

● Front center sensors:
- The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.
- The shift position is in a position other than P or R.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10

km/h (6 mph).

● Front corner sensors:
- The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.
- The shift position is in a position other than P.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
  (At any speed when the shift position is in R)

● Rear corner and rear center sensors:
- The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.
- The shift position is in R.

■ Muting the buzzer sound

● To mute the buzzer sound:

The buzzer can be temporarily muted by pressing "OK" of the meter control switches while an obstacle detection display is shown on the Center Display.

● To cancel the mute:

Mute will be automatically canceled in the following situations.
- When the shift position is changed (except shifting from D to N, or N to D)
- When the vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 10 km/h (6 mph) with the shift position in D
- When the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned off once and turned on again
- When the engine switch <power switch> is turned off once and turned to ON again

■ If "Clean Parking Assist Sensor" is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In such cases, if it is removed from the sensor, the system should return to normal.

Also, due to the sensor being frozen at low temperatures, a malfunction display may appear or an obstacle may not be detected. If the sensor thaws out, the system should return to normal.

■ If "Parking Assist Malfunction" or "Parking Assist Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

There is a malfunction and the device may not be working properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Sensor detection information

● The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front and rear bumpers.

● The following situations may occur during use.
- Depending on the shape of the object and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
- Detection may be impossible if static objects draw too close to the sensor.
- There will be a short delay between static object detection and display (warning buzzer sounds). Even at low speeds, there is a possibility that the object will come within 30 cm (1.0 ft.) before the display is shown and the warning buzzer sounds.
- It might be difficult to hear the buzzer due to the volume of the audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.
- It may be difficult to hear the sound of this system due to the buzzers of other systems.

■ Objects which the system may not properly detect

The shape of the object may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following objects:

● Wires, fences, ropes, etc.

● Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves

● Sharply-angled objects

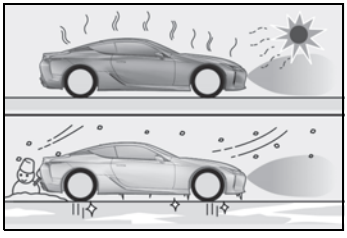
● Low objects

● Tall objects with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect objects. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow, water drops or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
  In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the sensor display may be displayed abnormally, or objects, such as a wall, may not be detected.
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold.

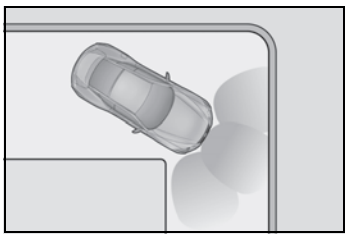


- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- If objects draw too close to the sensor.
- When a pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves (ex. skirts with gathers or frills).
- When objects that are not perpendicular to the ground, not perpendicular to the vehicle traveling direction, uneven, or waving are in the detection range.
- Strong wind is blowing.
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm.
- When an object that cannot be detected is between the vehicle and a detected object.
- If an object such as a vehicle, motorcycle, bicycle or pedestrian cuts in front of the vehicle or runs out from the side of the vehicle.
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact.
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.
- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.

■ **Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

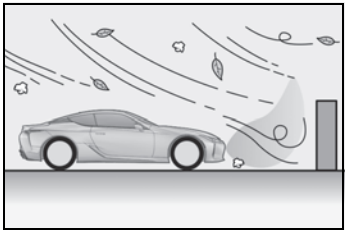
In some situations, such as the following, the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- When driving on a narrow road.

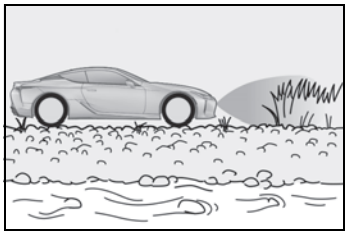


- When driving toward a banner, flag, low-hanging branch or boom barrier (such as those used at railroad crossings, toll gates and parking lots).
- When there is a rut or hole in the surface of the road.
- When driving on a metal cover (grating), such as those used for drainage ditches.
- When driving up or down a steep slope.

- If a sensor is hit by a large amount of water, such as when driving on a flooded road.
- There is dirt, snow, water drops or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm.
- When strong winds are blowing.



- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- Driving close to columns (H-shaped steel beams, etc.) in multi-story parking garages, construction sites, etc.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.



- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.447)

WARNING

Cautions regarding the use of the system

There is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

To ensure the system can operate properly

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not damage the sensors, and always keep them clean.
- Do not attach a sticker or install an electronic component, such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent type), fog lights, fender pole or wireless antenna near a radar sensor.
- Do not subject the surrounding area of the sensor to a strong impact. If subjected to an impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. If the front or rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

- Do not modify, disassemble or paint the sensors.
- Do not attach a license plate cover.
- Keep your tires properly inflated.

■ When to disable the function

In the following situations, disable the function as it may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- Failing to observe the warnings above.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area. Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

- When using a high pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray the sensors directly, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.
- When using steam to clean the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

NOTICE

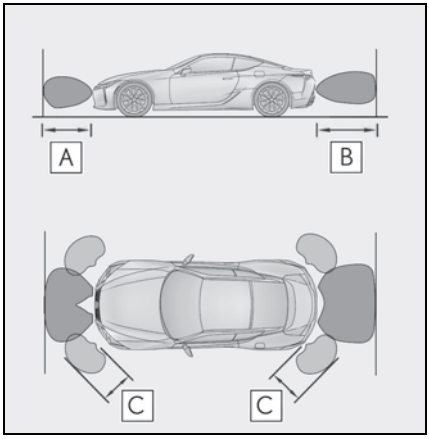
■ When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes or shows continuously, and a beep sounds when no obstacles are detected.
- If the bumper or grille collides with something.
- If the display flashes or shows continuously without beeping, except when the mute function has been turned on.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
  If the error occurs even when there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

■ Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

B Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

C Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

■ The distance and buzzer

Approximate distance to obstacle	Buzzer
Front center sensor: Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.) Rear center sensor: Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)	Slow
Front center sensor: Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 50 cm (1.6 ft.) Except front center sensor: Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)	Medium
Front center sensor: Approximately 50 cm (1.6 ft.) to 40 cm (1.3 ft.) Except front center sensor: Approximately 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 35 cm (1.1 ft.)	Fast
Front center sensor: Approximately 40 cm (1.3 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.) Except front center sensor: Approximately 35 cm (1.1 ft.) to 30cm (1.0 ft.)	Continuous
Less than approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)	

■ **Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle**

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously:
  - Front center sensors: Approximately 40 cm (1.3 ft.)
  - Except front center sensor: Approximately 35 cm (1.1 ft.)
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)

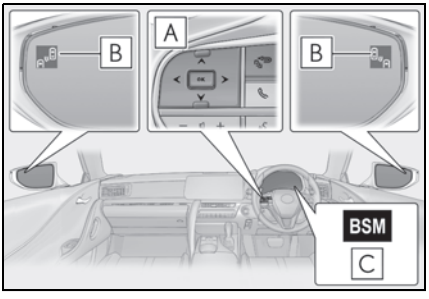
The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that uses rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the rear bumper on the left and right side to assist the driver in confirming safety when changing lanes.

WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.
- The Blind Spot Monitor is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury. As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

System components



A Meter control switches

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When driving:

When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator flashes.

C "BSM" indicator

When the BSM function is turned on, the indicator illuminates.

■ **Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility**

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ **When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display**

Ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. The system should return to normal operation after removing the ice, snow, mud, etc. from the rear bumper. Additionally, the sensors may not operate normally when driving in extremely hot or cold environments.

■ **When "Blind Spot Monitor Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is shown on the multi-information display**

There may be a sensor malfunction or misaligned. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

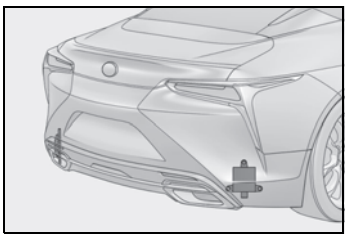
Some functions can be customized.
(→P.447)

WARNING

■ **To ensure the system can operate properly**

Blind Spot Monitor sensors are installed behind the left and right sides of the rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can operate correctly.

- Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the rear bumper clean at all times.
  If a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message (→P.271) will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the BSM function (→P.274) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers), aluminum tape, etc. to a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper to a strong impact.
  If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
  In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
  - If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- If a sensor or the rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off

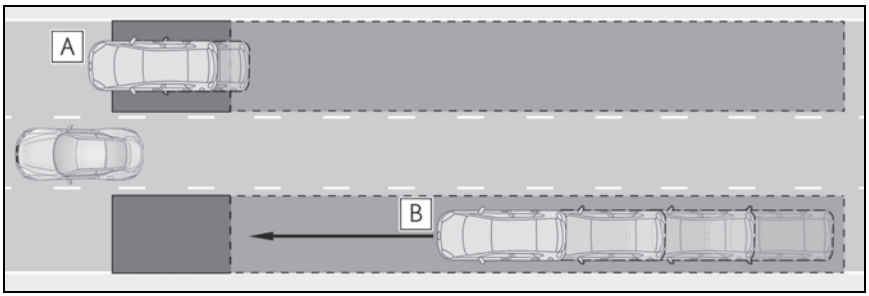
The Blind Spot Monitor can be enabled/disabled on of the multi-information display. (→P.447)

When the Blind Spot Monitor is enabled, the BSM indicator will illuminate.

Blind Spot Monitor operation

■ Objects that can be detected while driving

The Blind Spot Monitor uses rear side radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.

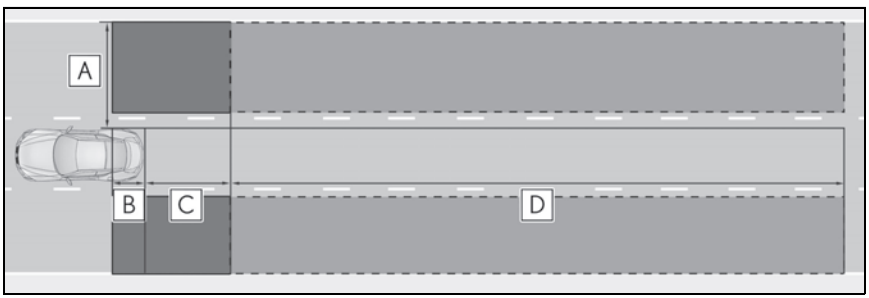


A Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

B Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

■ Detection range while driving

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle*1

B Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

C Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

D Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 60 m (197 ft.) from the rear bumper*2

*1: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle

cannot be detected.

*2: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

■ The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when

The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.
- The Blind Spot Monitor is on.
- The shift position is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more (while driving).

■ The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle when

The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- You overtake a vehicle in an adjacent lane slowly.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ Situations in which the Blind Spot Monitor cannot detect vehicles (while driving)

The Blind Spot Monitor cannot detect the following vehicles and other objects (while driving):

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ Conditions under which the system may not function correctly

- In the following situations, vehicles may not be detected correctly (while driving):
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water or during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
  - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
  - When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
  - As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
  - When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
  - When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
  - When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
  - When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle

- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- Immediately after the Blind Spot Monitor is turned on
- When towing with the vehicle

● Instances of unnecessary detection may increase in situations such as the following (while driving):

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When towing with the vehicle

RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function

The RCTA function uses the BSM rear side radar sensors installed behind the rear bumper. This function is intended to assist the driver in checking areas that are not easily visible when backing up.

WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

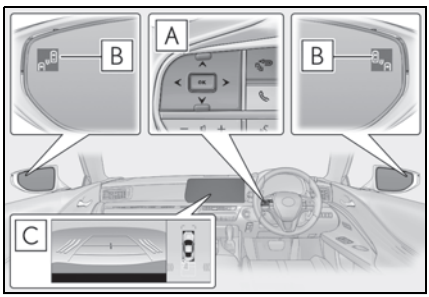
The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The RCTA function is only a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

As the RCTA function may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

Over reliance on this function may lead to an accident resulting death or serious injury.

System components



A Meter control switches

Operate the meter control switches to

enable/disable the RCTA function on the multi-information display.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

If a vehicle is detected as approaching from the left or right behind the vehicle, both outside rear view mirror indicators will blink and a buzzer will sound.

C Center Display

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P.276) for the detected side will be displayed on the Center Display. This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle.

Turning the RCTA function on/off

The RCTA can be enabled/disabled on  of the multi-information display. (→P.447)

When the RCTA function is enabled, the RCTA indicator (→P.104) illuminates.

■ Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ Hearing the RCTA buzzer

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

■ When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display

Ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. (→P.272) Removing the ice, snow, mud, etc., from the attached to the rear bumper around the sensors to normal. Additionally, the function may not function normally when used in extremely hot or cold environments.

■ When "Blind Spot Monitor Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is shown on the multi-information display

There may be a sensor malfunction or misaligned. Have the vehicle inspected at a Lexus dealer.

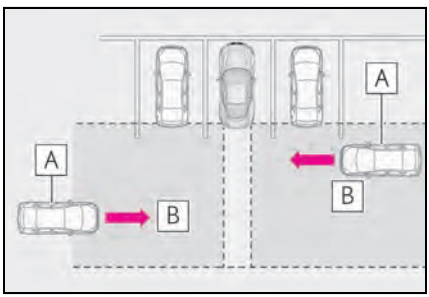
■ Rear side radar sensors

→P.272

RCTA function

■ Operation of the RCTA function

The RCTA function uses rear side radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



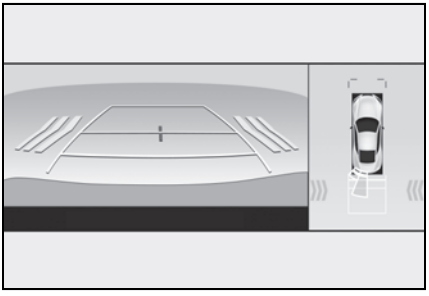
A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas of approaching vehicles

■ RCTA icon display

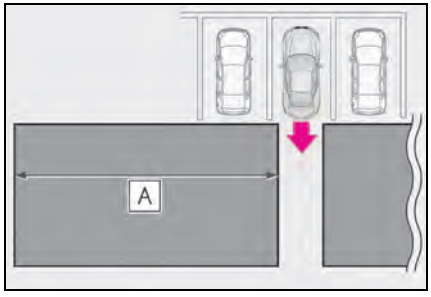
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the Center Display.

- Example (Panoramic view monitor): Vehicles are approaching from both sides of the vehicle



■ RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle speed	A Approximate alert distance
56 km/h (34 mph) (fast)	30 m (98 ft.)
8 km/h (5 mph) (slow)	4 m (13 ft.)

■ The RCTA function is operational when

The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.
- The RCTA function is on.
- The shift position is in R.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 56 km/h (34 mph).

■ Setting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display.

The volume of the RCTA buzzer can be adjusted on ⚙ of the multi-information display. (→P.447)

■ Muting a buzzer temporarily

A mute button will be displayed on the multi-information display when a vehicles or an object is detected. To mute the buzzer, press “OK”.

The buzzers for the RCTA function and Lexus parking assist-sensor will be muted simultaneously.

Mute will be canceled automatically in the following situations:

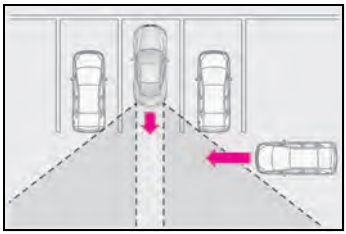
- When the shift position is changed.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain speed.
- When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily unavailable.
- When the operating function is disabled manually.
- When the engine switch <power switch> is turned off.

■ Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle

- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions



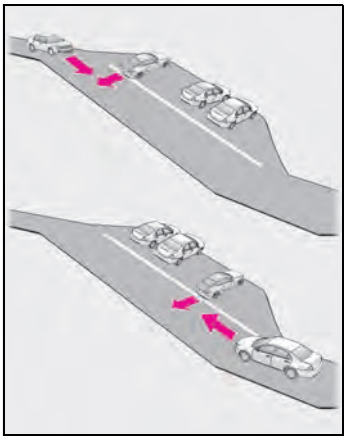
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- The distance between the sensor and approaching vehicle gets too close

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

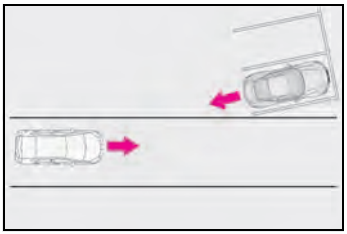
■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:

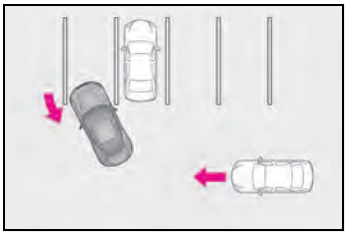
- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water or during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow
- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



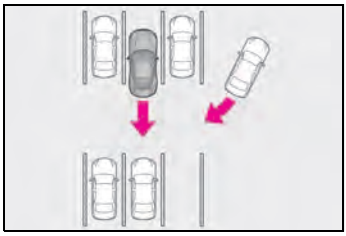
- When backing out of a sharp angle parking spot



- Immediately after the RCTA function is turned on
- Immediately after the engine <hybrid system> is started with the RCTA function on
- When the sensors cannot detect a vehicle due to obstructions
- When towing a trailer
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When turning while backing up



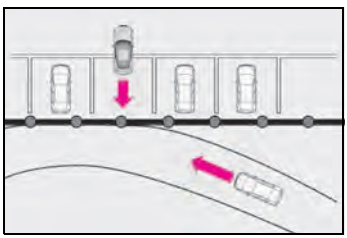
● When a vehicle turns into the detection area



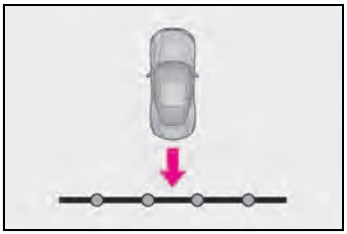
■ **Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

● When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street



● When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short

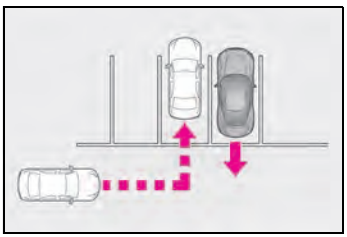


● When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow

● When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle



● When a detected vehicle turns while approaching the vehicle



● When there are spinning objects near your vehicle such as the fan of an air conditioning unit

● When water is splashed or sprayed toward the rear bumper, such as from a sprinkler

● Moving objects (flags, exhaust fumes, large rain droplets or snowflakes, rain water on the road surface, etc.)

● When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc., that enters the detection area is short

● Gratings and gutters

● When a sensor or the area around a sen-

sor is extremely hot or cold

- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load

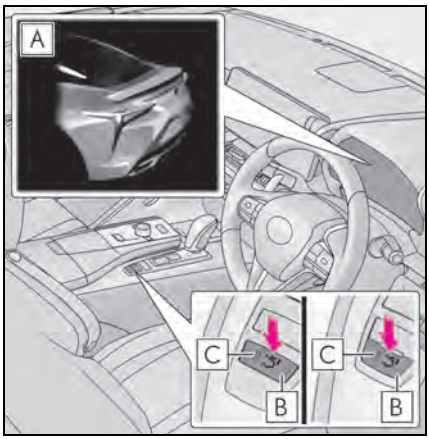
Active rear wing*

*: If equipped

The vehicle is equipped with an active rear wing that operates automatically while the vehicle is being driven. This active rear wing enhances aerodynamic performance, especially at high speeds, contributing to a more stable ride.

The active rear wing can be controlled manually using a switch.

System components



A Multi-information display (→P.112)

Displays the status of the active rear wing

B Active rear wing switch

Operates the active rear wing manually

C Indicator

Illuminates when the active rear wing is raised and turns off when it is retracted

■ **The active rear wing can be operated when**

- The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.
- The trunk is closed.
- The active rear wing has been activated in a customized setting.

■ **Conditions which stop the operation**

In the following situations operation of the active rear wing will stop:

- The engine switch <power switch> is turned to ACC or off while the active rear wing is operating.
- The trunk is opened while the active rear wing is operating.
- The raising operation of the active rear wing is interrupted by an object, etc.
- The active rear wing is operated in an unusual manner causing it to stop at an irregular position.

In such cases, pressing the active rear wing switch will fully raise the active rear wing. Or, begin driving the vehicle and the active rear wing will raise automatically when the vehicle speed reaches 25 km/h (16 mph).

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

A warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.399)

■ **Customization**

The active rear wing can be turned on/off. (Customizable features: →P.447)

NOTICE

■ **To prevent system damage**

- Do not apply pressure to the active rear wing when pushing or pulling the vehicle.
- Do not lean on the active rear wing.
- Do not attach any accessories or other objects to the active rear wing.
- Do not modify or disassemble the active rear wing.
- Do not subject the active rear wing to severe impact.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

Do not operate the active rear wing repeatedly while the engine <hybrid system> is turned off.

Automatic operation

The active rear wing will operate automatically at the following speeds according to the selected driving mode (→P.263).

(Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.)

- When other than Eco drive mode is selected
  Up: Approximately 80 km/h (50 mph)
  Down: Approximately 40 km/h (25 mph)
- When Eco drive mode is selected
  Up: Approximately 130 km/h (80 mph)
  Down: Approximately 40 km/h (25 mph)

Changing to manual operation

Operate the active rear wing switch to raise/retract the active rear wing manually.

The active rear wing retracts when it is raised and raises when retracted.

However, the active rear wing does not respond to switch operations while

the active rear wing is operating.

Vehicle speed	Up/Down
0 km/h (0 mph) (vehicle stopped)	Press/Press and hold*
Approximately 0 – 20 km/h (0 – 12 mph)	Operation not possible
Approximately 20 – 120 km/h (12 – 75 mph)	Press/Press
Approximately 120 km/h (75 mph) or more	Operation not possible

*: Press and hold the switch until the indicator turns off. If the switch is released while the active rear wing is moving, it will return to the raised position automatically.

Restoring automatic operation after the active rear wing is operated manually

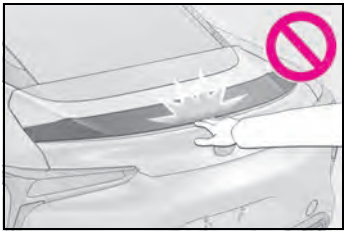
If the active rear wing is operated manually, automatic operation will resume according to the vehicle speed.

WARNING

When manually operating the active rear wing

Observe the following precautions before operating the active rear wing. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that the surrounding area is free of any objects that may come into contact with or get caught on the active rear wing.
- If there are people near the active rear wing, make sure that there is no possibility of their clothing, personal belongings or body parts getting caught. Children especially should be warned not to touch the active rear wing while it is being operated.

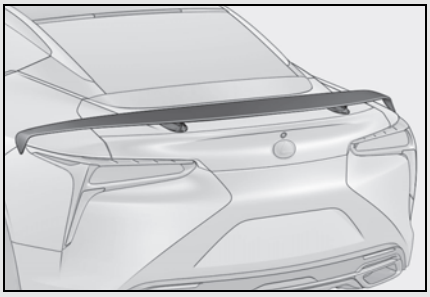


- If there is a risk that an object may become caught on the active rear wing during operation, stop operation immediately.

Fixed rear wing*

*: If equipped

Installing a fixed rear wing will increase aerodynamic performance when driving and will help to improve driving stability.



Fixed rear wing

The rear wing uses CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastic) parts, therefore pay attention to the following:

- As the CFRP parts may change color if they are exposed to ultraviolet rays for extended periods of time, Lexus recommends that your vehicle be stored in a place where it will not be exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.
- Do not use automatic car washes as they may scratch the CFRP parts and damage the paint, or may damage the rear wing.

WARNING

When opening and closing the trunk

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause injury or serious damage.

- Be careful that you do not bump the edge of the rear wing with your hands, arms, face or other parts of your body.
- Do not leave your hand between the rear wing and trunk lid while opening the trunk. Your hand, arm or other part of your body may get caught when opening the trunk.
- Do not sit on or lean against the rear wing, or place an excessive load on it. Failure to do so may damage the rear wing.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened, dropping down on your head or body.

Disassembly and modification

Do not disassemble or modify the rear wing as doing so may reduce driving stability.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear wing

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may damage the rear wing.

- Do not place heavy objects on the rear wing, sit on or lean against it, or place an excessive load on it.
- Do not strike the edge of the rear wing with solid objects or subject it to strong impact.
- Do not hold the edge of the rear wing while opening or closing the trunk.

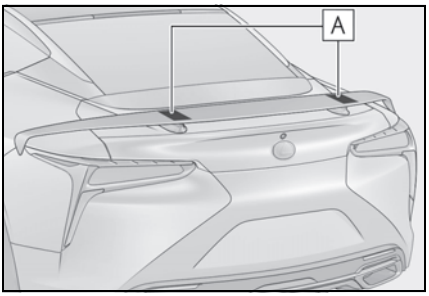
Disassembly and modification

Do not disassemble or modify the rear wing as doing so may cause water to enter the trunk.

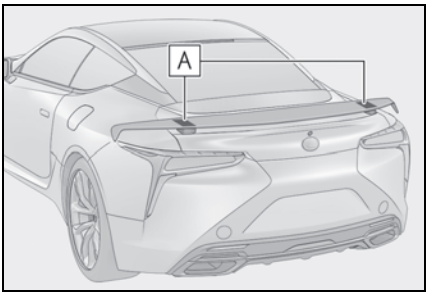
When closing the trunk

To close the trunk, press the portions A of the rear wing.

▶ Except Convertible



▶ Convertible



Driving assist systems

To keep driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

■ **ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System)**

The electronically controlled system generates braking force corresponding to the brake operation

■ **ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)**

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

■ **Brake assist**

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ **VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)**

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

■ **TRC (Traction Control)**

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning

when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ **Active Cornering Assist (ACA) (if equipped)**

Helps to prevent the vehicle from drifting to the outer side by performing inner wheel brake control when attempting to accelerate while turning

■ **Hill-start assist control**

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ **VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering) (if equipped)**

Adjusts the front wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement

■ **DRS (Dynamic Rear Steering) (if equipped)**

Contributes to the turning characteristics and responsiveness of the vehicle by slightly adjusting the rear wheel angle of the vehicle in accordance with steering wheel movement

■ **EPS (Electric Power Steering)**

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ **AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)**

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions, this system helps riding comfort with superior steering stability, and helps good vehicle posture

Also, the damping force changes depending on the selected driving mode (→P.263)

■ **LDH (Lexus Dynamic Handling system) (if equipped)**

Provides integrated control of the VGRS, DRS and EPS. Contributes to turning characteristics at low speeds, responsiveness at medium speeds and safety at high speeds by controlling the steering angle of the front and rear wheels in accordance with the steering wheel operation and vehicle speed

■ **VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)**

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control, EPS, VGRS (if equipped) and DRS (if equipped) systems

Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine <hybrid system> output, steering assist (if equipped), and steering ratio (if equipped)

■ **Emergency brake signal**

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind

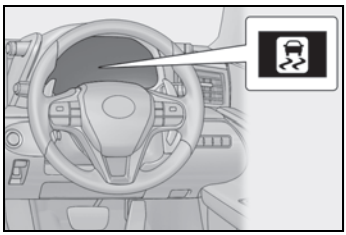
■ **Secondary Collision Brake**

When the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision and the system operates, the brakes and brake lights are automati-

cally controlled to reduce the vehicle speed and help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision

When the TRC/VSC/ABS/VGRS*/DRS* systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC/ABS/VGRS*/DRS* systems are operating.



*: Only when controlled by the VDIM system.

Disabling the TRC system

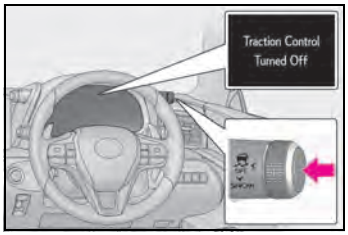
If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine <hybrid system> to the wheels.

Pressing the OFF SNOW switch to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the OFF SNOW switch.

The "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the OFF SNOW switch again to turn the system back on.



Turning off both TRC and VSC systems

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold the OFF SNOW switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

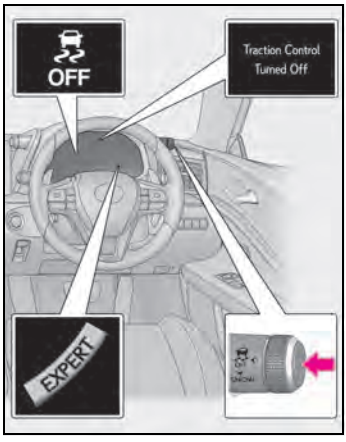
Press the OFF SNOW switch again to turn the systems back on.

*: Except Convertible: Emergency steering assist will also be disabled. The PCS warning light will come on. (→P.239)
Convertible: PCS (Pre-Collision System) will also be disabled (only Pre-Collision warning is available). The PCS warning light will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.239)

Expert mode (if equipped)

When expert mode is selected, it is possible to drive in a more sporty manner than other drive modes. Expert mode disables the TRC and VSC systems but the engine and brakes may be controlled depending on the vehicle behavior.

To select expert mode, press OFF SNOW switch when in SPORT S+ mode.
The "EXPERT" indicator will come on together with the VSC OFF indicator light, and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.



To cancel expert mode, press OFF SNOW switch or use the driving mode select switch to select a driving mode other than SPORT S+ mode.

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the OFF SNOW switch has not been pressed**

TRC is temporary deactivated. If the information continues to show, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift position is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift position is shifted to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- 2 seconds at maximum elapsed after the brake pedal is released.

■ **VGRS is disabled when**

VGRS may stop operating in the following situations.

In this event, the steering wheel may move from its straight forward position, but it will return when the system restarts.

- When the steering wheel is operated for an extended period of time while the vehicle is stopped or is moving very slowly (on vehicles with LDH, DRS is disabled together with VGRS)
- When the steering wheel has been held fully to the left or right

The center position of the steering wheel may change when VGRS is disabled. However, the position will return to normal after VGRS is reactivated.

■ **When the 12-volt battery is disconnected (vehicles with VGRS)**

The steering wheel may move from its straight forward position, but this will be corrected automatically when driving.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRC, hill-start assist control and VGRS systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine <hybrid system> is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard also after the vehicle comes to a stop.

■ Active Cornering Assist operation sounds and vibrations

When the Active Cornering Assist is operated, operation sounds and vibrations may be generated from the brake system, but this is not a malfunction.

■ ECB operating sound

ECB operating sound may be heard in the following cases, but it does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred.

- Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is operated.
- Motor sound of the brake system heard from the front part of the vehicle when the driver's door is opened.
- Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when one or two minutes passed after the stop of the engine <hybrid system>.

■ Automatic reactivation of TRC and VSC systems

After turning the TRC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch <power switch> is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases

If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ Operating conditions of Active Cornering Assist

The system operates when the following occurs.

- TRC/VSC can operate
- The driver is attempting to accelerate while turning
- The system detects that the vehicle is drifting to the outer side
- The brake pedal is released

■ Operating conditions of emergency brake signal

When the following conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operates:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking operation

■ Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal

The emergency brake signal will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

■ Secondary Collision Brake operating conditions

The system operates when the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision while the vehicle is in motion.

However, the system does not operate in any of the following situations.

- The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph)
- Components are damaged

■ Secondary Collision Brake automatic cancellation

The system is automatically canceled in any of the following situations:

- The vehicle speed drops below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph)
- A certain amount of time elapses during operation
- The accelerator pedal is depressed a large amount

■ Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The

steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine <hybrid system> off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

WARNING

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRC/VSC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC/VSC system is operating.

Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Active Cornering Assist does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on Active Cornering Assist. Active Cornering Assist may not operate effectively when accelerating down slopes or driving on slippery road surfaces.
- When Active Cornering Assist frequently operates, Active Cornering Assist may temporarily stop operating to ensure proper operation of the brakes, TRC and VSC.

■ Hill- start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ When the TRC/ABS/VSC/VGRS*/DRS* is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

*: Only when controlled by the VDIM system.

■ When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ Expert mode precautions

- Do not use on public roads.

WARNING

- Use only when the road conditions and safety of the surrounding area can be ensured.
- Proper use of expert mode requires a professional level of driving skill. When using expert mode, always check the road conditions and surrounding area and drive more carefully than usual.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

■ Secondary Collision Brake

Do not rely solely upon the Secondary Collision Brake. This system is designed to help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision, however, that effect changes according to various conditions. Overly relying on the system may result in death or serious injury.

Hybrid electric vehicle driving tips (LC500h)

For economical and ecological driving, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P.263)

Use of Hybrid System Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the indicator of Hybrid System Indicator within Eco area. (→P.106)

Changing the shift position

Shift the shift position to D when stopped at a traffic light, or driving in heavy traffic etc. Shift the shift position to P when parking. When using the N position, there is no positive effect on fuel consumption. In the N position, the gasoline engine operates but electricity cannot be generated. Also, when using the air conditioning system, etc., the hybrid battery (traction battery) power is consumed.

Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

- Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will make more effective use of the electric motor (traction motor) without having to use gasoline engine power.
- Avoid repeated acceleration. Repeated acceleration consumes hybrid battery (traction battery) power, resulting in poor fuel consumption. Battery power can be restored by driving with the accelerator pedal slightly released.

When braking

Make sure to operate the brakes gently and in a timely manner. A greater amount of electrical energy can be regenerated when slowing down.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible. When driving in a traffic jam, gently release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move forward slightly while avoiding overuse of the accelerator pedal. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.

Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator and gently apply the brakes. A greater amount of electrical energy can be regenerated when slowing down.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive gasoline consumption.

In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Because the gasoline engine will not automatically cut out until it and the interior of the vehicle are warm, it will consume fuel. Also, fuel consumption can be improved by avoiding overuse of the heater.

Checking tire inflation pressure

Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel economy.

Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season.

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

Warming up before driving

Since the gasoline engine starts up and cuts out automatically when cold, warming up the engine is unnecessary. Moreover, frequently driving short distances will cause the engine to repeatedly warm up, which can lead to excess fuel consumption.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Power control unit coolant (LC500h)
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the 12-volt battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires.

Ensure that all tires are the specified size and the same brand.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

NOTICE

■ Driving with tire chains

Do not fit tire chains. Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and suspension, and adversely affect driving performance.

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Except Convertible: Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- Convertible: Do not try to forcibly open a door or a side window, or move wipers that are frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice, and then wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- When the outside door handle is frozen, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control. If the outside door handles remain retracted and do not move even if the doors

are unlocked using the wireless remote control, pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice and wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing. The outside door handle may not retract due to ice, however, the outside door handle will return to the normal position after the ice melts.

- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, outside rear view mirrors, windows, vehicle's roof[*1] or soft top roof[*2], chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

[*1]: Except Convertible

[*2]: Convertible

■ **To protect the windshield wipers**

→P.218

NOTICE

■ **When the side windows or rear quarter windows are frozen (Convertible)**

→P.170

■ **When removing ice that accumulates on the windshield and windows (Convertible)**

Do not strike the ice. The windshield and windows may be cracked.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and shift the shift position to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels.

Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.

Selecting tire chains

Tire chains cannot be mounted.

Snow tires should be used instead.

Windshield wipers

To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when heavy snow or icy conditions are expected, change the rest position of the windshield wipers from the retracted position below the hood to the service position using the wiper lever. (→P.219)

5-1. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge..... 296

5-2. Using the air conditioning system

Automatic air conditioning system..... 298

Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators/neck heaters..... 305

5-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 308

5-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 311

Trunk features..... 313

5-5. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 315

Lexus Climate Concierge

The seat heaters, seat ventilators, heated steering wheel (if equipped) and neck heaters (if equipped) are each automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside and cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.

Lexus Climate Concierge can be operated using the air conditioning control panel (→P.298) and air conditioning control screen on the Center Display (→P.301).

Turning on Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge operates in conjunction with the automatic mode switch of the air conditioning control panel.

1. Select in the main menu on the Center Display.
2. Select “Climate”.
3. Select “Options”.
4. Select “Climate concierge”.
5. Turn the automatic mode switch on.

Operation of each system

■ **Automatic air conditioning system (→P.298)**

The temperature can be adjusted individually for the driver seat and passenger seat.

■ **Seat heaters and ventilators (→P.305)**

Heating or ventilation is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, opening/closing status of the soft top roof, etc.

The seat heater and ventilator of the front passenger seat operate in automatic mode if a passenger is detected.

■ **Heated steering wheel (if equipped) (→P.305)**

Heated steering wheel operates automatically according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, opening/closing status of the soft top roof, etc.

■ **Neck heaters (if equipped) (→P.305)**

Temperature and fan speed of the neck heater are changed automatically according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, opening/closing status of the soft top roof, vehicle speed, etc.

The neck heater of the front passenger seat operate in automatic mode if a passenger is detected.

■ **Seat heater/ventilator/neck heater operation**

When automatic mode is selected using the seat heater/ventilator switch, passenger detection is not performed.

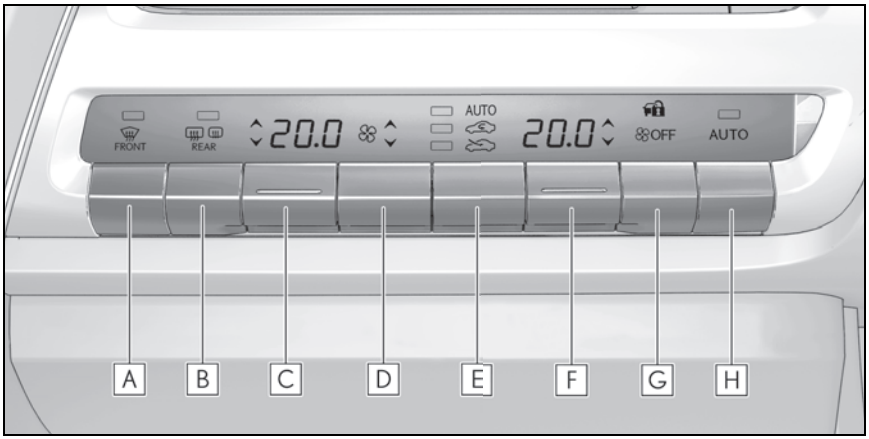
Automatic air conditioning system

Except Convertible: Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Convertible: Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting or opening/closing state of the soft top roof.

The air conditioning system can be operated using the air conditioning control panel and air conditioning control screen on the Center Display (→P.301).

Air conditioning controls



A Windshield defogger switch

B Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch

C Left-hand side temperature control switch

D Fan speed control switch

E Outside/recirculated air mode switch

F Right-hand side temperature control switch

G Off switch

H Automatic mode switch

■ **Adjusting the temperature**

Operate the temperature control switch upwards to increase the temperature and downwards to decrease the temperature.

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the sys-

tem will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

■ Setting the fan speed

Operate the fan speed control switch upwards to increase the fan speed and downwards to decrease the fan speed.

Press the off switch to turn the fan off.

■ Changing the air flow mode

→P.301

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Operate the outside/recirculated air mode switch upwards or downwards.

The mode changes as follows each time the switch is operated.

automatic mode →  (outside air mode) →  (recirculated air mode) → automatic mode

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press the windshield defogger switch.

Set the outside/recirculated air mode switch to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press the windshield defogger switch again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

■ Fogging up of the windows

The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Turning "A/C" on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ When driving on dusty roads

Close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake mode be set to outside air mode and the fan speed to any setting except off.

■ Outside/recirculated air mode

- Setting to the recirculated air mode temporarily is recommended in preventing dirty air from entering the vehicle interior and helping to cool the vehicle when the outside air temperature is high.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch <power

switch> to ON will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.

- When the engine switch <power switch> is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock the passenger door.
- The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting* when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

*: The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same time.

Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Turn off eco air conditioning mode (→P.301)
- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode (→P.263)

When the outside temperature falls to nearly 0°C (32°F)

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is selected.

Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode or pollen removal mode.
- When parking, the system automatically switches to fresh air intake mode to encourage better air circulation throughout the vehicle, helping to reduce odors that occur when starting the vehicle.

Air conditioning filter

→P.373

Customization

Settings (e.g. A/C auto switch operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P.447)

WARNING

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use the windshield defogger switch during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the outside rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

NOTICE

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine <hybrid system> is off.

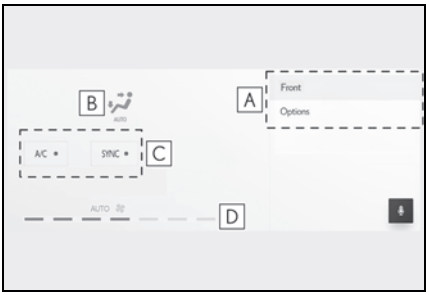
Air conditioning control screen

■ Main control screen

1 Select in the main menu on the Center Display.

2 Select "Climate".

3 Select "Front".



A Sub menu

Selecting the sub menu item to switch the screen display.

"Front": Display the front air conditioning control screen

"Options": Display the option screen

B Select the air flow mode

: Air flows to the upper body

: Air flows to the upper body and feet

: Air flows to the feet

: Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

C Turn the function on/off

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

"A/C": Set cooling and dehumidification function

"SYNC": Adjust the temperature for driver seat and front passenger seat simultaneously ("Sync" mode)

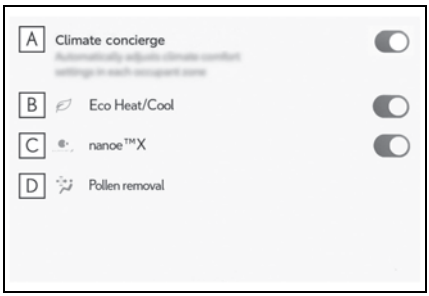
D Fan speed level display

The current fan speed level is displayed.

■ Option control screen

Select "Options" on the air conditioning control screen (→P.301).

The functions can be switched (on) and (off).



A Set Lexus Climate Concierge (→P.296)

B Set eco air conditioning mode (→P.301)

Air conditioning and heater output is limited to prioritize fuel economy.

C nanoe™ X* on/off

nanoe™ X is a nanoe™ generator.

D Removing pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode)

*: nanoe™ and the nanoe™ X marks are trademarks of Panasonic Holdings Corporation.

■ Eco air conditioning mode

When Eco drive mode is selected using the driving mode select switch, eco air conditioning mode turns on.

When a drive mode other than Eco drive

mode is selected, eco air conditioning mode may turn off.

■ **Pollen removal mode**

Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will automatically turn off after approximately 1 to 3 minutes.

In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the dehumidification function may operate or the outside/recirculated air mode may not switch to  (recirculated air) mode.

Pollen is filtered even if the pollen removal mode is turned off.

■ **nanoe™ X*1 generator**

A nanoe™ X generator is installed in this air conditioning system. This provides clean and refreshing air through the front center vent on driver's side by emitting nanoe™ X particles.*2

- When nanoe™ X is turned on, the nanoe™ X generator is automatically activated when the fan is turned on.
- The effects of nanoe™ X are maximized in the following conditions:
  - The  or  are being used.
  - The front center vent on driver's side is open.
- When nanoe™ X particles are generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted so a faint odour may be detectable. This is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no effect on the human body.
- A slight noise may be detectable during operation. It may take some time for operation to begin. A more noticeable noise may be detectable immediately upon the start of operation. This is not a malfunction.

*1: nanoe™ X particles are nano-sized electrostatic atomised water particles that contain hydroxyl radicals, which have beneficial effects.

*2: According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the nanoe™ X generator may not operate at full capacity.

WARNING

■ **nanoe™ X generator**

Do not disassemble or attempt to repair the nanoe™ X generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact your Lexus dealer if the generator needs repair.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the nanoe™ X generator**

Do not insert anything into the front center vent on driver's side, attach anything to it, or use sprays around it. These actions could cause the generator to malfunction.

Using automatic mode

1. Press the automatic mode switch.
2. Press the outside/recirculated air mode switch to switch to automatic air intake mode.

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

3. Adjust the temperature setting.
4. To stop the operation, press the off switch.

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic

mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the automatic mode switch is pressed or "AUTO" is selected.

- Cool air may blow around the upper body even when the heater is on due to sunlight.
- Convertible: When the soft top roof is opened, the fan speed and air outlets may be automatically changed according to the sunlight or vehicle speed.

■ **Windshield fog detection function**

When automatic mode is set, the humidity sensor detects fog on the windshield and controls the air conditioning system to prevent fog.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

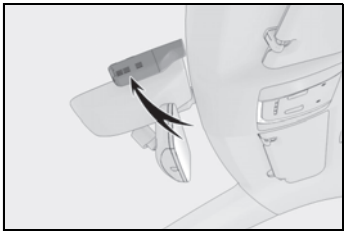
NOTICE

■ **Humidity sensor**

In order to detect fog on the windshield, a sensor which monitors the temperature of the windshield, the surround humidity, etc. is installed.

Follow these points to avoid damaging the sensor:

- Do not disassemble the sensor
- Do not spray the glass cleaner on the sensor or subject it to strong impacts
- Do not stick anything on the sensor



Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats simultaneously ("Sync" mode)

To turn on the "Sync" mode, select the "Sync" on the air conditioning control screen.

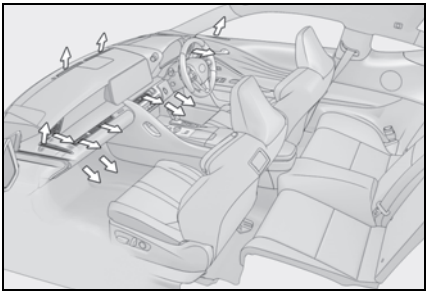
The driver's side temperature control switches can be used to adjust the temperature for the driver's seat and passenger's seat side. To enter individual mode, operate the passenger's side temperature control switches or select the "Sync" again.

The indicator on the air conditioning control screen comes on when the "Sync" mode is on.

Air outlet layout and operations

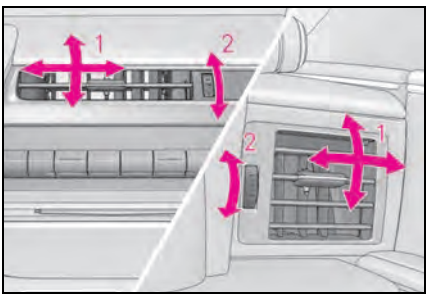
■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.



■ Adjusting the air flow direction and opening/closing the air outlets

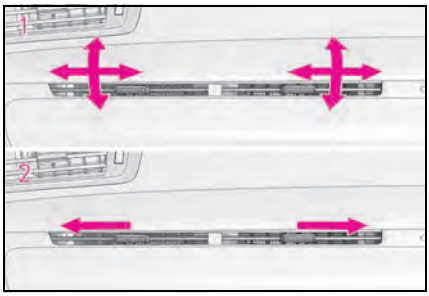
▶ Center/side



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

▶ Above the glove box



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Move the knob to the most outside position to close the vent

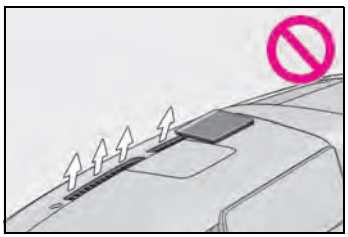
■ If an object falls into the air outlet above the glove box

Remove the panel inside the glove box to take out the object. (→P.373)

WARNING

■ To prevent the windshield defogger from operating improperly

Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters/seat ventilators/neck heaters*

*: If equipped

● Heated steering wheel

Warms up the grip of the steering wheel

● Seat heaters

Warm up the seat upholstery

● Seat ventilators

Maintain good air flow on the seat upholstery by sucking air into the seats

● Neck heaters (if equipped)

Warm up the head restraints near the neck by blowing the warm air from the air outlet on the head restraints

The heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators/neck heaters can be operated using control screen on the Center Display (→P.305)

WARNING

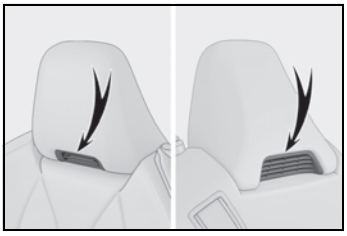
■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel, seats or neck heaters when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

■ To prevent burns and fire (vehicles with neck heaters)

Do not put fingers or foreign matters into the air outlets or intake vents. Doing so may cause burns or fire.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent damage to the neck heaters (vehicles with neck heaters)

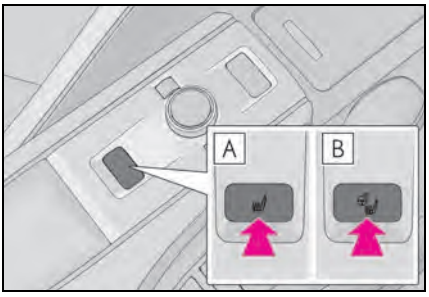
Do not block the air outlets or intake vents of the neck heaters. If the air outlets or intake vents become blocked, heat is accumulated and the neck heaters may be damaged.

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not use the functions when the engine <hybrid system> is off.

Control screen

Press the switch to display the heated steering wheel/seat heater/seat ventilator/neck heater control screen.



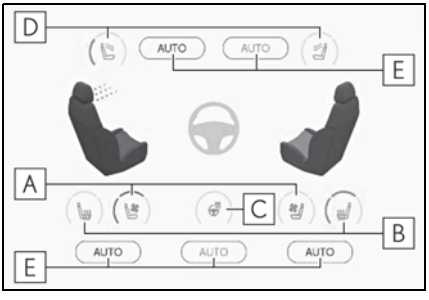
A Vehicles without heated steering wheel

B Vehicles with heated steering wheel

The following procedures also can be display the control screen.

1 Select on the main menu.

2 Select "Comfort".



A Adjust the seat ventilator fan speed level

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.

B Adjust the seat heater temperature level

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.

C Adjust the heated steering wheel temperature level

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

D Adjust the neck heater fan speed level

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

E Set the automatic mode

The following functions can be set to automatic mode respectively.

When the automatic mode is on, the switch on the screen illuminates.

- Left-hand side seat heater/seat ventilator/neck heater
- Right-hand side seat heater/seat ventilator/neck heater
- Heated steering wheel

■ The heated steering wheel, seat heaters and seat ventilators can be used when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ON.

■ Air conditioning system-linked control mode

When the seat ventilator fan speed level is Hi, the seat ventilator fan speed may become higher according to the fan speed of the air conditioning system.

■ Customization

Steering wheel heating preference in auto-

matic mode and the automatic mode settings for the seat heaters and ventilators can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.447)

WARNING

■ To prevent overheating and minor burn injuries

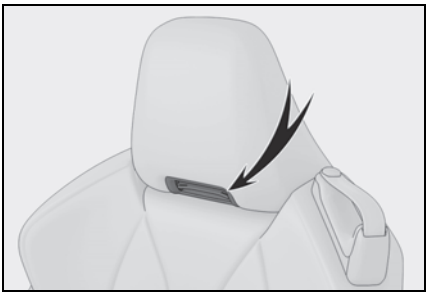
Observe the following precautions when using the seat heaters

- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

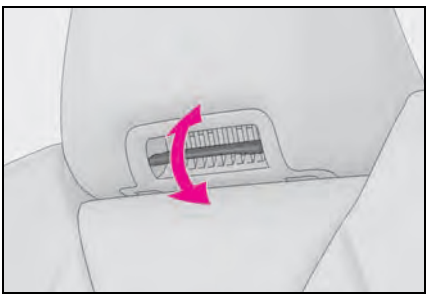
Location and operation of the neck heaters* air outlet

*: If equipped

■ Location of the neck heater air outlet



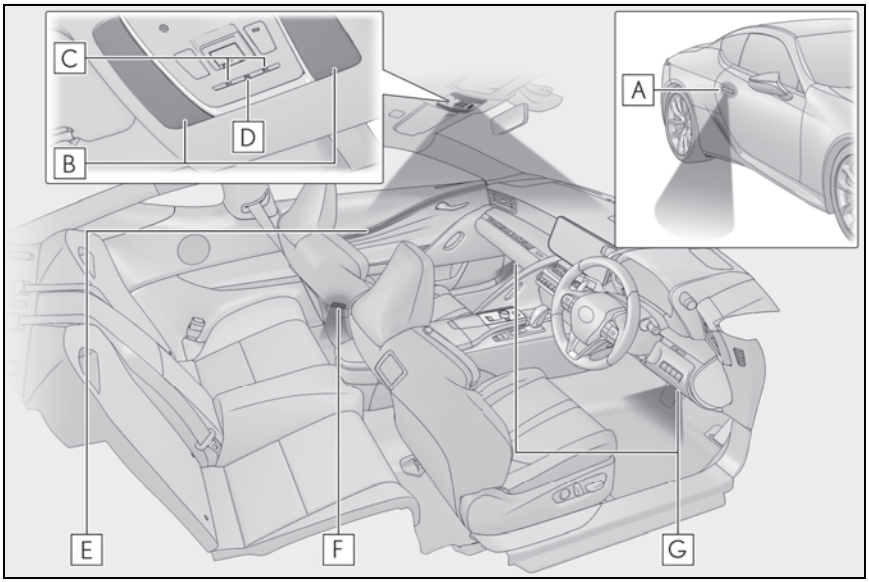
■ Adjusting the air flow direction



Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights

▶ Except Convertible



A Outside door handle lights

B Personal lights (→P.310)

C Seat lights

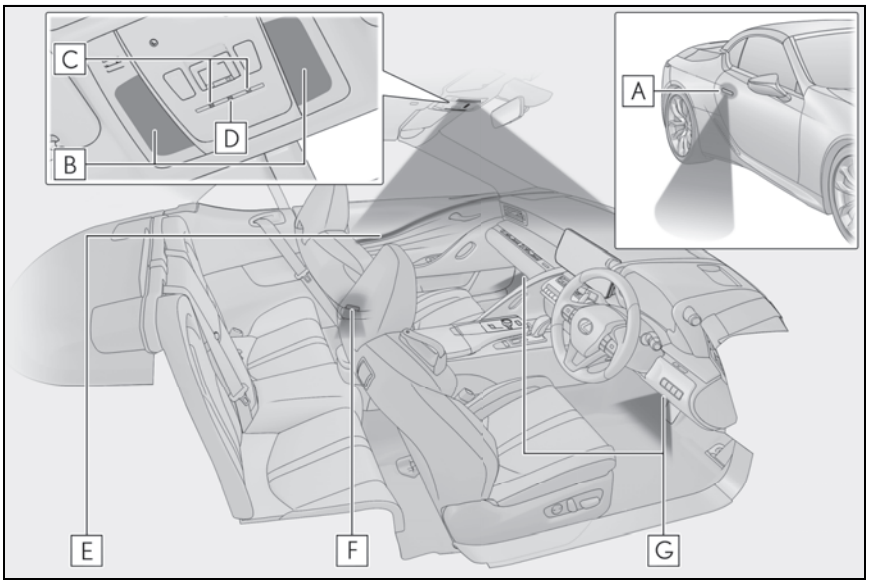
D Shift lever light

E Door trim ornament lights

F Door courtesy lights

G Footwell lights

▶ Convertible



A Outside door handle lights

B Personal lights (→P.310)

C Seat lights

D Shift lever light

E Door trim ornament lights

F Door courtesy lights

G Footwell lights

■ **Personal lights automatic on/off**

- Illuminated entry system: The lights automatically turn on/off according to the engine switch <power switch> mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.
- If the personal lights remain on when the engine switch <power switch> is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ **When the personal lights do not respond as normal**

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

■ **The interior lights will turn on automatically when**

If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the interior lights will turn on automatically. The interior lights will turn off automatically after approximately 20 minutes.

The interior lights can be turned off manually. However, in order to help prevent further collisions, it is recommended that they be left on until safety can be ensured. (The interior lights may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

■ **Customization**

Setting (e.g. the time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.447)

NOTICE

■ **Removing light lenses**

Never remove the lens for the personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine <hybrid system> is off.

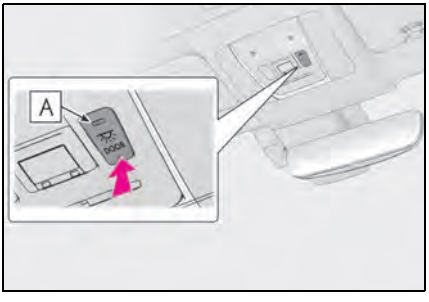
Operating the personal lights

■ Turning the door position on

Press the door-linked personal light switch

The lights are turned on and off according to whether the doors are opened/closed.

When the door position is on, the indicator A illuminates.

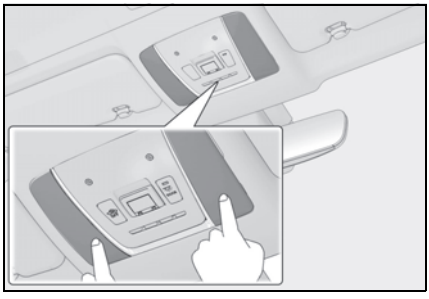


■ Turning the lights on/off

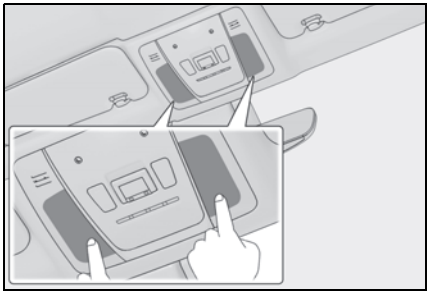
Touch the light

When a door is opened while the door position is on, the lights turn on.

▶ Except Convertible

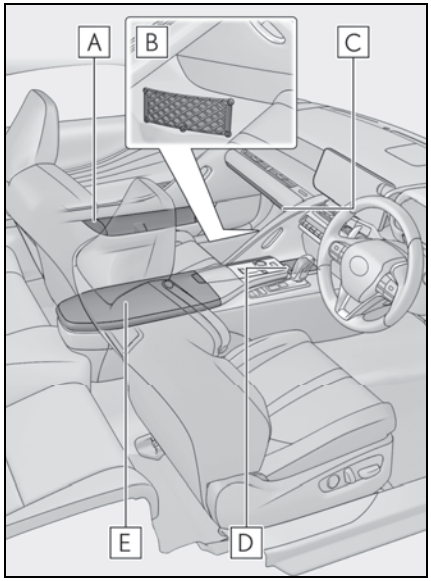


▶ Convertible



List of storage features

Location of the storage features



A Door pockets

B Auxiliary net

C Glove box (→P.311)

D Cup holder (→P.312)

E Console box/auxiliary box (→P.312)

WARNING

■ Items that should not be left in the vehicle

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

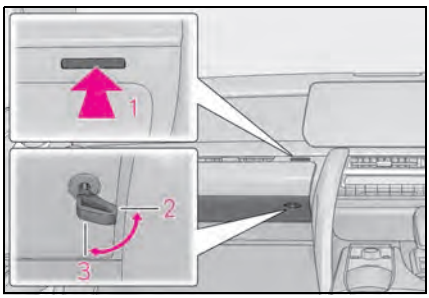
- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

■ When the storage compartments are not in use

When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use, keep the lids closed.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

Glove box



1 Open (press the glove box opener)

2 Unlock with the mechanical key

3 Lock with the mechanical key

■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

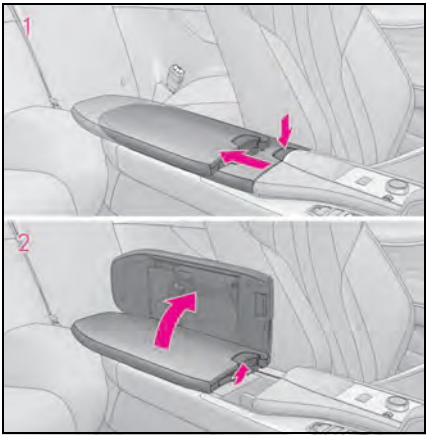
■ Trunk opener main switch

→P.139

■ If the 12-volt battery is discharged

The glove box cannot be opened as usual. Refer to P.413 to open the glove box.

Console box/auxiliary box



1 Using with half-open: Slide the armrest as far back while pressing the button.

Press the button to close.

2 Using with fully open: Lift the armrest while pulling the knob.

■ Console box light

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

■ Using the auxiliary box

Do not place cups, beverage cans, etc. in the auxiliary box.

WARNING

■ When closing the console box

Take care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.

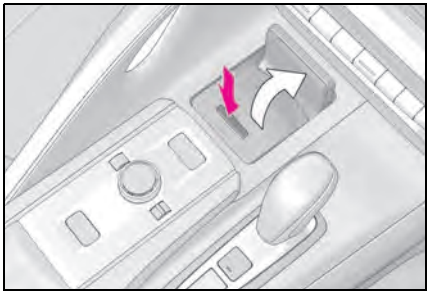
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the console box

- Do not pull the knob while sliding the armrest.
- Do not apply excessive force to the armrest.

Cup holder

To open, press down and release the cup holder lid.



WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than a cup or beverage can in the cup holder. Even when the lid is closed, items must not be stored in the cup holder.

Other items may be thrown out of the holder in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the cup holder and air conditioning control switches

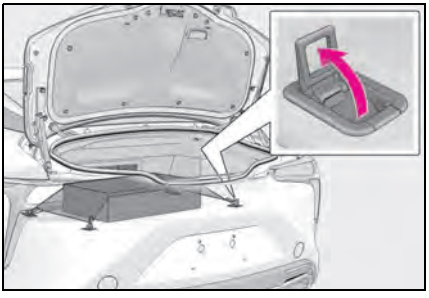
- Do not apply excessive force to the cup holder.
- Take care when placing a tall bottle in the cup holder. When the bottle is taken out or the brakes are suddenly applied, the bottle may hit the air conditioning control switches, causing damage to the switches or parts of the air conditioning system.

Trunk features

Cargo hooks

Raise the hooks when needed.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

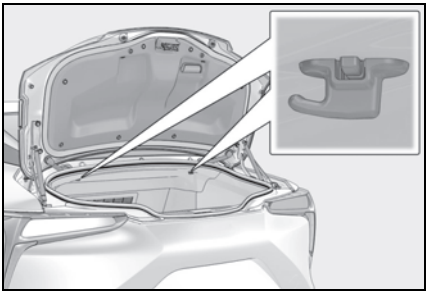


WARNING

■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Grocery bag hooks (except Convertible)

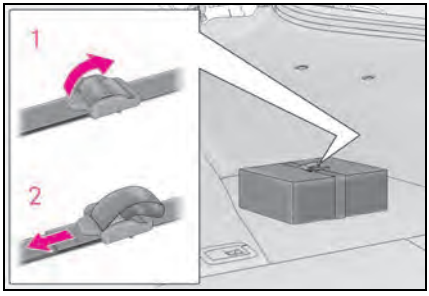


NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the grocery bag hooks

Do not hang any object heavier than 2 kg (4 lb.) on the grocery bag hooks.

First-aid kit storage belt

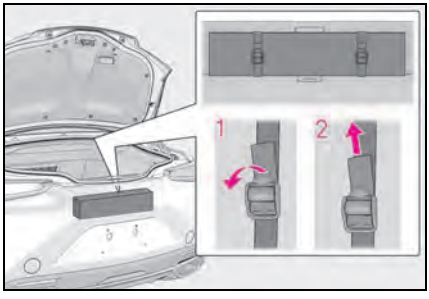


1 Loosen the belt

2 Tighten the belt

Warning reflector storage belt

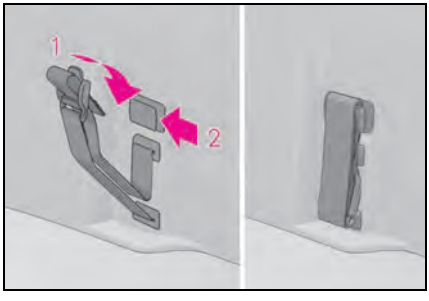
■ Loosening/tightening the belt



1 Loosen the belt

2 Tighten the belt

■ Stowing the belt



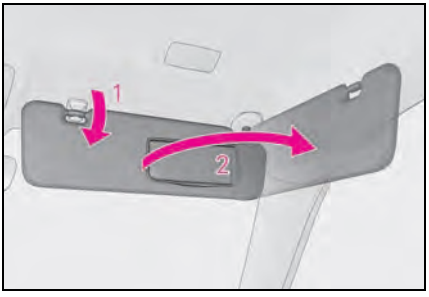
1 Fold the belt

2 Secure the belt with the clip

To prevent damage to the warning reflector storage belt when it is not in use, stow the belt.

Other interior features

Sun visors



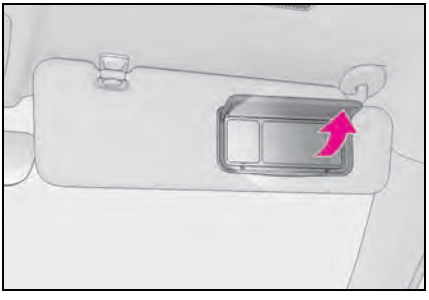
1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

Vanity mirrors

Open the cover.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



NOTICE

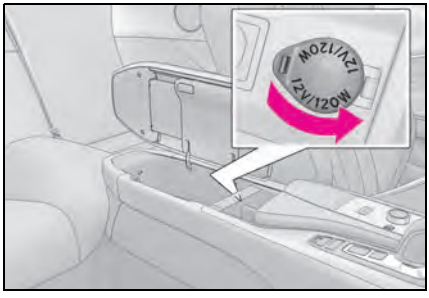
■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine <hybrid system> is off.

Power outlet

Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

Open the lid.



■ The power outlet can be used when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ACC or ON.

■ LC500: When turning the engine switch off

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs.

If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

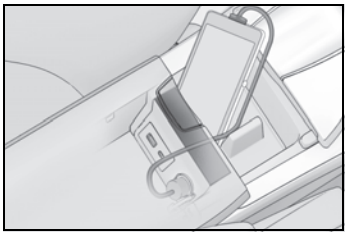
■ LC500h: When stopping the hybrid system

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs.

If such devices are left connected, the hybrid system may not stop normally.

■ Using the power outlet

The shape of the console box partition allows power cables to be passed through when the console box lid is partially closed.



NOTICE

■ When the power outlet is not in use

To avoid damaging the power outlet, close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use. Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine <hybrid system> is off.

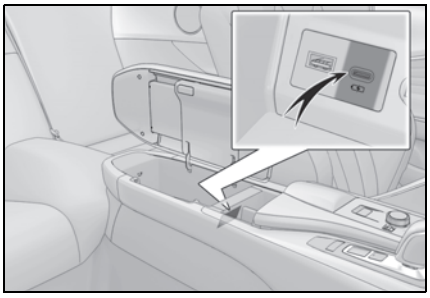
USB Type-C charging ports

The USB Type-C charging ports are used to supply 3 A of electricity at 5 V to external devices.

The USB Type-C charging ports are for charging only. They are not designed for data transfer or other purposes.

Depending on the external device, it may not charge properly. Refer to the manual included with the device before using a USB Type-C charging port.

■ Using the USB Type-C charging ports



■ The USB Type-C charging ports can be used when

The engine switch <power switch> is in ACC or ON.

■ Situations in which the USB Type-C charging ports may not operate correctly

- If a device which consumes more than 3 A at 5 V is connected
- If a device designed to communicate with a personal computer, such as a USB memory device, is connected
- If the connected external device is turned off (depending on device)
- If the temperature inside the vehicle is high, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun

■ About connected external devices

Depending on the connected external device, charging may occasionally be suspended and then start again. This is not a malfunction.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the USB Type-C charging ports

- Do not insert foreign objects into the ports.
- Do not spill water or other liquids into the ports.

NOTICE

- Do not apply excessive force to or impact the USB Type-C charging ports.
- Do not disassemble or modify the USB Type-C charging ports.

■ To prevent damage to external devices

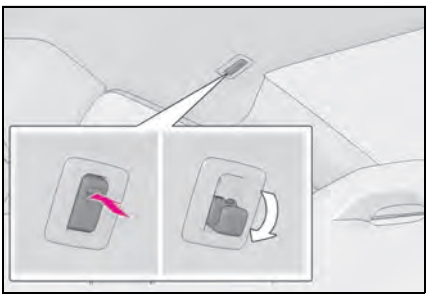
- Do not leave external devices in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to an external device.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary force to an external device or the cable of an external device while it is connected.

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not use the USB Type-C charging ports for a long period of time with the engine <hybrid system> is off.

Coat hooks (except Convertible)

To use the coat hook, push it in.



WARNING

■ Items that should not be hanged

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

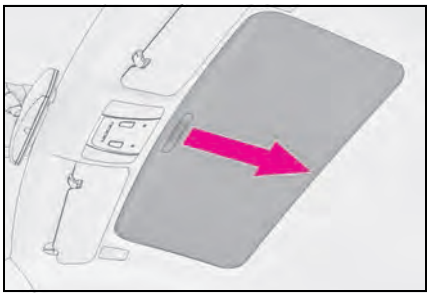
■ When the coat hooks are not in use

Store the coat hooks when they are not in use.

When entering and exiting the rear seats, passengers may hit their heads on the coat hooks, resulting in injury.

Sunshade (if equipped)

Slide the sunshade to open.



6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 320

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 324

Cleaning the artificial leather (Alcantara®) 330

6-2. Matte clear coat care guide

Basic knowledge about matte clear coat 332

Washing your vehicle (vehicles with matte clear coat) 336

Frequently Asked Questions (vehicles with matte clear coat) 338

6-3. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements ... 341

6-4. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 343

Hood 345

Positioning a floor jack 345

Engine compartment 347

12-volt battery 354

Tires 357

Replacing the tire 364

Tire inflation pressure 371

Wheels 372

Air conditioning filter 373

Electronic key battery 375

Checking and replacing fuses 377

Light bulbs 380

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Cleaning instructions for the parts other than the soft top roof*

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

*: If equipped

Cleaning instructions for the soft top roof (Convertible)

Perform the following procedure to remove any dirt and dust.

▶ Small dirt such as dust

- Brush the soft top roof along the fiber, using a soft brush such as a horsehair brush.
- Use an adhesive roller or compressed air blow gun.

▶ Severe dirt such as a stain

For information regarding cleaning, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastic) part (if equipped)

- As the CFRP parts may change color if they are exposed to ultraviolet rays for extended periods of time, Lexus recommends that your vehicle be stored in a place where it will not be exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.
- Do not use automatic car washes as they may scratch the CFRP parts and damage the paint.

■ Self-restoring coat*

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature.
  The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.

*: CFRP parts (if equipped) and the soft top roof (Convertible) do not have a self-restoring coat.

■ Cleaning the areas with metal accents

Do not use baking soda (sodium bicarbonate) and wax that contains abrasives.

■ Automatic car washes (vehicles without CFRP parts)

Convertible: Lexus does not recommend

using an automatic car wash.

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Except Convertible: Wash the vehicle with the active rear wing retracted. If the vehicle is washed with the active rear wing raised, depending on the type of automatic car wash, the brushes of the automatic car wash may become stuck on the active rear wing. In this case, the active rear wing may not be washed very well or may even be scratched or damaged.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface, parts (wheel, etc.) and damage the paint.
- When the shift position needs to be held in N, refer to P.196, 203.

■ High pressure car washes

As water may enter the cabin, do not bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.

■ Notes for a smart entry & start system

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.142)

■ Wheels and wheel ornaments

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.

• Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent
• Do not use hard brushes
• Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather

■ Brake caliper coating

- When using detergent, use neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners, as they will damage the coating.
- Do not use detergent on the brake calipers when they are hot.
- Wash detergent off immediately after use.

■ Brake pads and calipers

Rust may form if the vehicle is parked with wet brake pads or disc rotors, causing them to stick. Before parking the vehicle after it is washed, drive slowly and apply the brakes several times to dry the parts.

■ Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ Front side windows water-repellent coating

The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.

- Remove any dirt, etc. from the front side windows regularly.
- Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period. Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
- Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
- Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.

■ Plated portions

If dirt cannot be removed, clean the parts as follows:

- Use a soft cloth dampened with an approximately 5% solution of neutral detergent and water to clean the dirt off.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to

remove any remaining moisture.

- To remove oily deposits, use alcohol wet wipes or a similar product.

WARNING

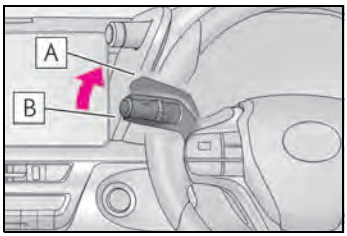
■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

■ When cleaning the windshield

Set the wiper switch to off.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



A Off

B AUTO

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

As exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot, do not touch the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers while the engine is running <hybrid system is operating> or immediately after the engine <hybrid system> is turned off.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

■ Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Application of coatings to the vehicle body (vehicles with CFRP parts)

Do not apply any kind of coating to the vehicle body as doing so may damage the paint or reduce its durability.

NOTICE

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

● Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:

- After driving near the sea coast
- After driving on salted roads
- If coal tar, pollen or tree sap is present on the paint surface
- If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
- After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
- If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
- If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface

● If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

● To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ To prevent damage or deterioration of the soft top roof (Convertible)

● Immediately remove any snow that has accumulated on the soft top roof or luggage cover.

● If bird droppings etc. are present on the soft top roof, immediately remove it.

● When parking the vehicle, avoid direct sunlight as much as possible.

● If parking the vehicle in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, ensure that there is adequate ventilation.

● Do not use wax.

● Do not open the soft top roof with dirt or snow adhered.

■ Cleaning the soft top roof (Convertible)

Do not strongly press a soft brush such as a horsehair brush or an adhesive roller to the soft top roof. Doing so may cause damage to the soft top roof.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

● Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

● Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights.
Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash

Set the wiper switch to the off position.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ When using a high-pressure car wash

● When washing the vehicle, do not let water from the high-pressure washer directly hit the camera, the area around the camera or inside of the outside door handles. Due to the shock from high-pressure water, it is possible that the device may not operate normally.

● Do not spray water directly on the radar which is equipped behind the emblem. Otherwise it may cause the device to be damaged.

NOTICE

- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Steering parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Brake parts
- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged. Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.
- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously. If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.
- Do not wash the underside of the vehicle using a high-pressure car washer

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Cleaning instructions for the interior parts other than the soft top roof*

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
  Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

*: If equipped

Cleaning instructions for the interior parts of the soft top roof (Convertible)

▶ Small dirt such as dust

Use a compressed air blow gun to remove dust.

▶ Severe dirt such as a stain

Dampen a small amount of water in a cloth similar in material and color to the soft top roof fiber, and wipe off the dirt. And then allow the soft top roof to

dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the floor mats (if equipped)

- Remove dirt, sand and dust using a vacuum cleaner and wash them off with water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, remove it by patting with a cloth or sponge dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

When cleaning the carpeted portions of the glove box, console box, etc.

If a strong adhesive tape is used, there is a possibility that the surface of the carpet could be damaged.

CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastic) parts (if equipped)

CFRP is used for the scuff plates. When cleaning the scuff plates, remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois, and then wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

WARNING

Water in the vehicle

- LC500: Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
  LC500h: Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle, such as on the floor, on the rear seats, in the hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents, and in the trunk. (→P.93)
  Doing so may cause the hybrid battery, electrical components, etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.39)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:

▶ Except Convertible

- Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
- Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol

NOTICE

▶ Convertible

- Other than the seats and soft top roof: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
- Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Soft top roof: Solutions

● Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

● Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.

● Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.

● Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ When cleaning the soft top roof (Convertible)

Do not excessively use water. Doing so may cause a stain on the soft top roof.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ Cleaning the floor mats

Do not use a mat cleaning machine or brushes.

This may cause deformation or damage to the mat.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.224)

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

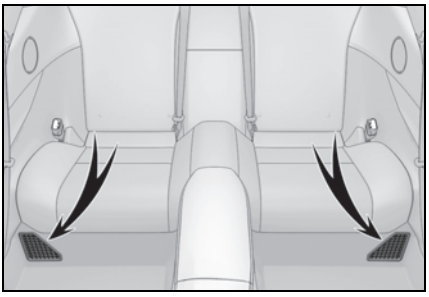
● Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.

● Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Cleaning the hybrid battery (traction battery) air intake vents (LC500h)

Periodically check that dust has not built up or clogged the hybrid battery (traction battery) cooling air intake vents to prevent a reduction in fuel economy.

When clogged with dust or "Maintenance Required for Traction battery Cooling Parts See owner's manual" is displayed on the multi-information display, perform the following cleaning procedure.

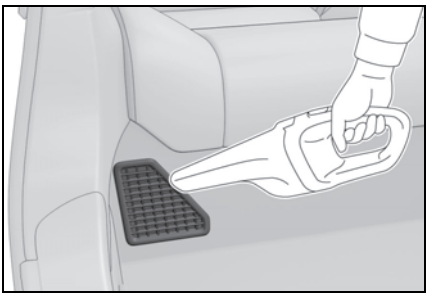


■ Cleaning the air intake vents

Remove the dust from the air intake vents with a vacuum cleaner etc.

Make sure to only use a vacuum to suck out dust and clogs. Attempting to blow out dust and clogs using a compressed air blow gun, etc. may push it into the air intake vents. (→P.329)

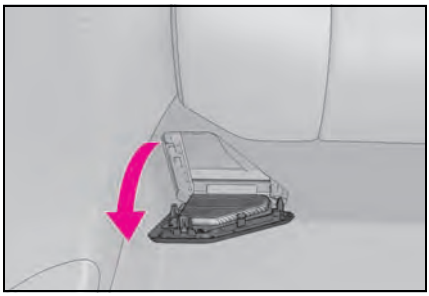
If dust and clogs cannot be completely removed with the air intake vent covers installed, remove the covers and clean the filters.



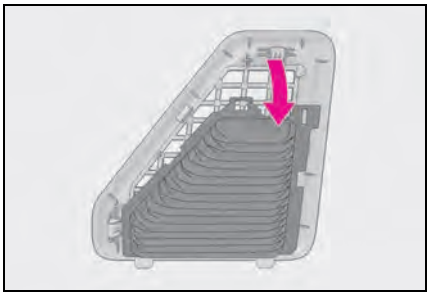
■ Cleaning the filters

If dust and clogs cannot be completely removed with the air intake vent covers installed, remove the air intake vent covers and clean the filters.

1 Remove the grille.

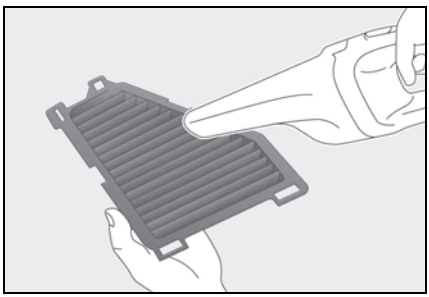


2 Remove the filter.



3 Remove dust using a vacuum cleaner etc. to clean the filter.

Also, remove dust on the grille as well as on the filter using a vacuum cleaner.



4 Install the filter in its original position, and then install the grille.

5 If a warning message was displayed on the multi-information display before cleaning the filters, start the

hybrid system and check that the message disappears.

It may take several minutes before the warning message disappears.

■ **Scheduled maintenance of the air intake filters is necessary when**

In some situations such as when the vehicle is used frequently or in heavy traffic or dusty areas, the air intake filters may need to be cleaned more regularly. For details, refer to "Warranty and Service Booklet".

■ **Air intake vents maintenance**

- Driving the vehicle continuously after dust has built up and clogged the air intake vents will have an adverse effect on hybrid battery (traction battery) cooling performance. If the hybrid battery (traction battery) input and output is restricted, the driving range of the electric motor and fuel economy may be reduced. Periodically check and clean the air intake vents to prevent dust from building up.
- Depending on the conditions under which the vehicle is used, the air intake vents may need to be cleaned more regularly.
- Improper handling may result in damage to the air intake vent cover or filter. If you have any concerns about cleaning parts yourself, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Cleaning the air intake vents**

- Dust in the air intake vents may interfere with the cooling of the hybrid battery (traction battery). If charging/discharging of the hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes limited, the distance that the vehicle can be driven using the electric motor (traction motor) may be reduced and the fuel economy may be reduced. Inspect and clean the air intake vents periodically.
- Improper handling may result in damage to the air intake vent covers or filters. If you have any concerns about cleaning the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.
- The necessary cleaning interval of the air intake vents will differ according to the vehicle usage environment.

■ **If "Maintenance Required for Traction battery Cooling Parts See owner's manual" is displayed on the multi-information display**

- If this warning message is displayed on the multi-information display, remove the air intake vent covers and clean the filters. (→P.327)
- After cleaning the air intake vents, start the hybrid system and check that the warning message is no longer displayed. After the hybrid system is started, it may be necessary to drive the vehicle up to approximately 20 minutes before the warning message disappears. If the warning message does not disappear after driving for appropriately 20 minutes, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

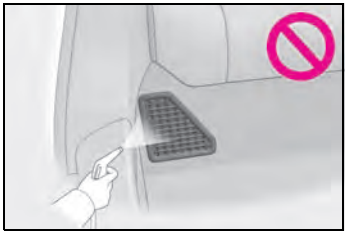
■ **When cleaning the air intake vents/filters**

- Do not use water or other liquids to clean the air intake vents/filters. If water is applied to the hybrid battery (traction battery) or other components, a malfunction or fire may occur.
- When the air intake vent covers (under the both sides of the rear seat) is to be removed, make sure to turn the power switch off to stop the hybrid system.

NOTICE

■ When cleaning the air intake vents

When cleaning the air intake vents, make sure to only use a vacuum to suck out dust and clogs. If a compressed air blow gun, etc. is used to blow out dust and clogs, the dust or clogs may be pushed into the air intake vents, which may affect the performance of the hybrid battery (traction battery) and cause a malfunction.



■ To prevent damage to the vehicle

- Do not allow water or foreign matter to enter the air intake vents when the cover is removed.
- Carefully handle the removed filters so that it will not be damaged. If the filters are damaged, have them replaced with new filters by your Lexus dealer.
- Make sure to reinstall the filters and cover to their original positions after cleaning.
- Do not install anything to the air intake vents other than the exclusive filters for this vehicle or use the vehicle without the filters installed.

■ If "Maintenance Required for Traction battery Cooling Parts See owner's manual" is displayed on the multi-information display

If the vehicle is continuously driven with the warning message (indicating that charging/discharging of the hybrid battery [traction battery] may become limited) displayed, the hybrid battery (traction battery) may malfunction. If the warning message is displayed, clean the air intake vent immediately.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

- Remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

■ Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

The metal areas use a layer of real metal to the surface. It is necessary to clean them regularly. If dirty areas are left uncleaned for long period of time, they may be difficult to clean.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.

- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent an water.

Cleaning the artificial leather (Alcantara®*1)*2

*1: "Alcantara®" is a registered trademark of Alcantara S.p.A.

*2: If equipped

It is recommended that regular maintenance should be performed for areas that are frequently touched to maintain quality.

NOTICE

■ When driving

Areas that are frequently touched are more likely to attract dirt. Ensure that your hands are clean before touching anything.

Routine maintenance

This maintenance is most effective if performed regularly (around once per month).

1 Soak a cloth in lukewarm water (approximately 40°C [104°F]), wring it out thoroughly and then wipe the entire body.

Wipe carefully so that the pile is not disheveled. Be sure to prepare a clean cloth. Once you have wiped the part with the cloth, rinse it until it is completely clean before using the cloth again.

2 Once it has dried, use a lint brush or the like to comb the pile.

When cleaning the artificial leather (Alcantara®)

- If liquid is spilled onto the surface,

apply tissue paper or the like to absorb the liquid.

- If any substance such as mud or coffee dries and becomes stuck to the surface, use a lint brush or the like to lightly brush the dirty area and remove the substance.
  Then, it is recommended to clean the dried substance from the surface using a vacuum cleaner.
- For oil-based substances, use a dry cloth or tissue paper to wipe off the substance as much as possible, while being careful not to spread it.

If the substance still cannot be removed, use the following procedure to remove it.

1 Liquid substances: Soak a cloth in lukewarm water (approximately 40°C [104°F]), wring it out thoroughly and then wipe the dirty area from the outside inward.

Wipe carefully so that the pile is not disheveled. Be sure to prepare a clean cloth and use the clean portion of it to clean the surface.

Oil-based substances: Dab a cloth soaked in benzene, lukewarm water or pure ethyl alcohol (for drinking) within the dirty area from the outside inward, and then dab a dry cloth on the dirty area to absorb the substance.

2 If the pile on the surface is disheveled, use a lint brush or the like to lightly brush the surface, and then allow the surface to dry completely.

■ To remove substances adhered to the pile

To clean dust or other adhered substances, use a lint brush or the like to lightly brush the area and remove the substance. If the substance still cannot be removed, use adhesive tape to remove it.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to artificial leather (Alcantara®)

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of artificial leather (Alcantara®):

- Do not apply excessive force
- Do not dig your nails into it
- Do not rub it with your hands
- Do not touch it if your hands are dirty

■ When using adhesive tape

If a strong adhesive tape is used, there is a possibility that the surface of the artificial leather (Alcantara®) could be damaged.

Basic knowledge about matte clear coat*

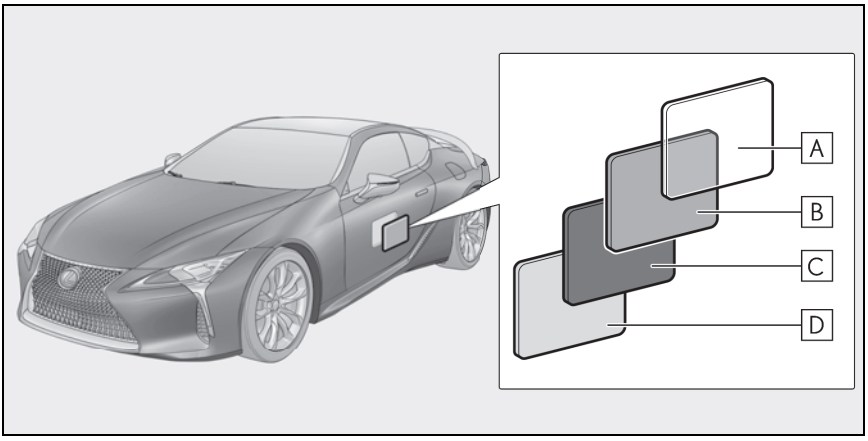
*: If equipped

The body of a vehicle is painted with layers of several different coatings to enhance its durability and appearance. The top layer is called a clear coat.

Unlike a normal clear coat, which enhances the glossy appearance of the base paint, matte clear coat gives the base paint a non-glossy finish with a unique texture.

In order to ensure the longevity of the matte clear coat and its texture, special care must be taken when cleaning and storing the vehicle.

Basic paint structure



Illustrations in this manual are simplified for explanation and may not represent the actual vehicle.

A Top coat (clear): A transparent coating which protects the lower layers of paint. Some clear coats enhance the appearance through improved color depth or gloss.

B Top coat (base): Paint which gives the vehicle body its color.

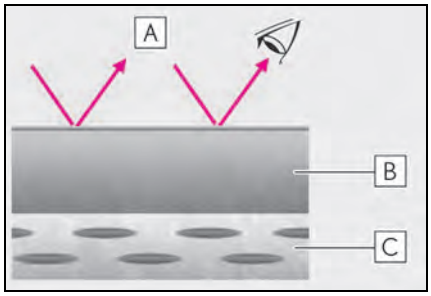
C Intermediate coat: Enhances the top coat finish and durability.

D Primer: Enhances the rust resistance of steel parts of the vehicle body. Primer is also applied to the inner side of vehicle body and structural components.

Difference between general clear coat and matte clear coat

▶ Normal clear coat

● Cross section



A Light

B Clear

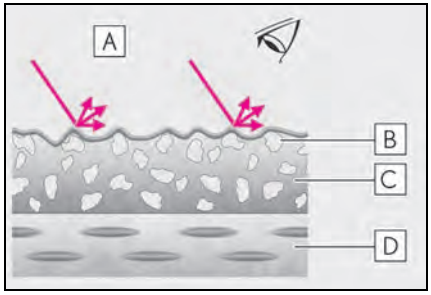
C Base

● Enlarged surface



▶ Matte clear coat

● Cross section



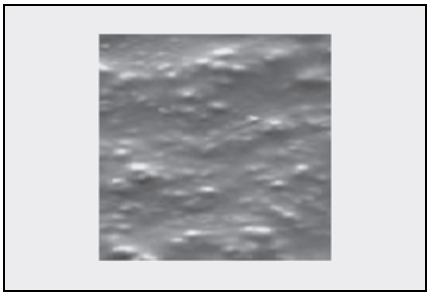
A Light

B Matting agent

C Clear

D Base

● Enlarged surface



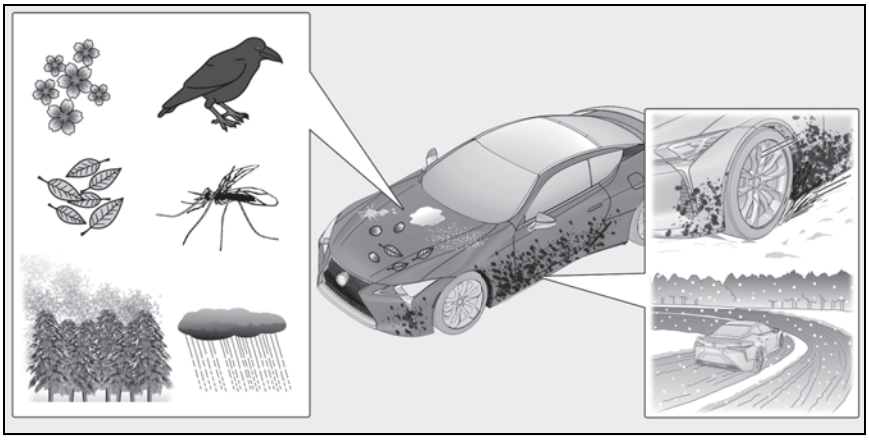
Illustrations in this manual are simplified for explanation and may not represent the actual vehicle.

Glossiness of a surface is seen by the human eyes by a difference in the amount of light that reflects off the surface.

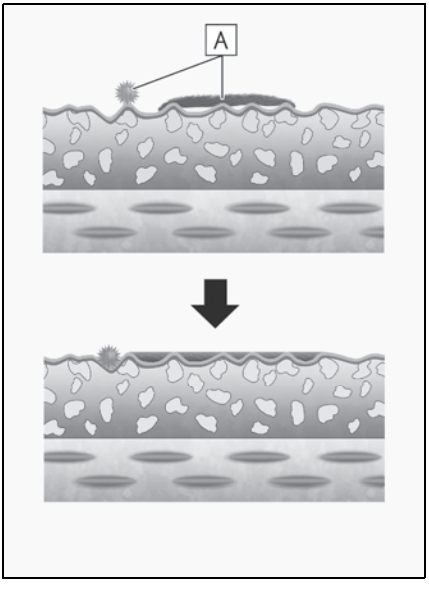
A surface painted with normal clear coat is flat and smooth. As the amount of light that reflects off the surface is large, the vehicle body will appear glossy.

A surface painted with a matte clear coat is slightly uneven due to the added matting agent. As the light shining on an uneven surface is diffused significantly, the amount of light reflected is small, making the vehicle body look not glossy, with a unique texture.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior



If the painted surfaces of the vehicle are dirty, wash the vehicle immediately. (Washing your vehicle: →P.336)



A Dirt

Due to the slight unevenness, matte clear coat surfaces are more likely to trap dirt and other foreign matter compared to normal clear coat surfaces.

If dirt or foreign matter is left on the vehicle, it may settle into the textured surface of the matte clear coat, making it more difficult to remove. Additionally, as the surface of the matte clear coat will become more flat when dirty, the vehicle body will start to look glossy, ruining the textured finish.

Therefore, make sure to clean the vehicle regularly and not allow dirt to remain on the vehicle for extended periods of time.

If dirt or foreign matter is allowed to settle and cannot be cleaned off with normal washing, it will be necessary to remove the dirt with the upper layer of the textured finish and then to repaint the entire part.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

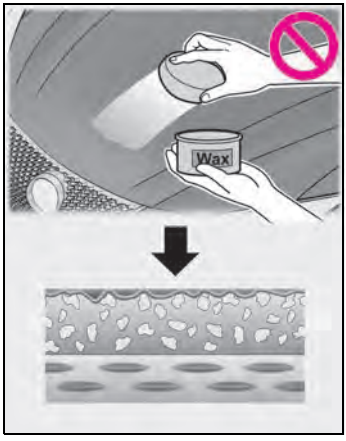
■ Materials that may become difficult to remove

The following are likely to settle into the vehicle body and should be cleaned off immediately.

- Rain water, sea water, and other liquids that may cause water stains
- Sand, pollen, volcanic ash, and other particulate matter
- Dead insects, bird droppings, etc.

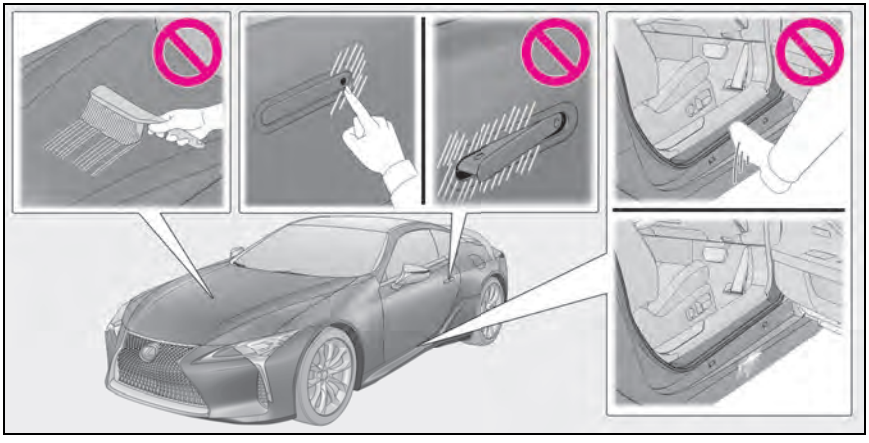
- Sap, leaves, flowers, etc.
- Mud, snow, anti-freezing agents, and other road debris
- Gasoline, engine oil, asphalt, and other oily materials

■ **Do not wax or apply a coating to the vehicle**



Do not wax the vehicle or apply a coating to the vehicle body, as they will form a film over the painted surfaces, filling the matte clear coat surface, making it more flat. As a result, it will become more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.

Repair of paint damage



Take care in order to not damage the painted surfaces.

When minor damage occurs to a vehicle with a normal clear coat, it can be repaired by polishing it or using touch up paint. In contrast, a matte clear coat cannot be repaired using these methods.

If these methods are used the unevenness of the matte clear coat may be

removed or filled in. In either case, the surface will become more flat, making it appear more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.

In order to maintain the matte finish when repairing damage, it will be necessary to repaint the entire part.

Washing your vehicle (vehicles with matte clear coat)

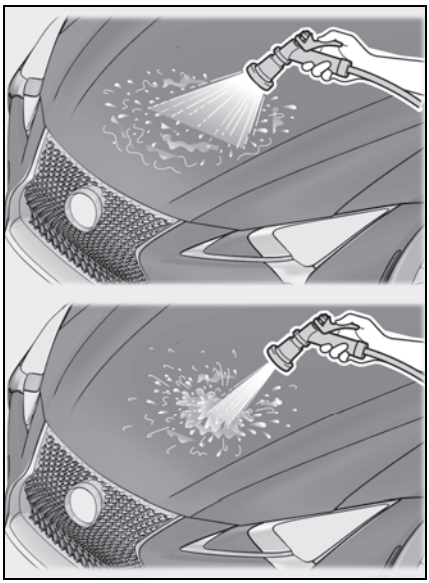
It is recommended to wash the vehicle by hand.

How to wash your vehicle

1 Apply a large amount of water to the vehicle body from the top to the bottom to remove sand and dust.

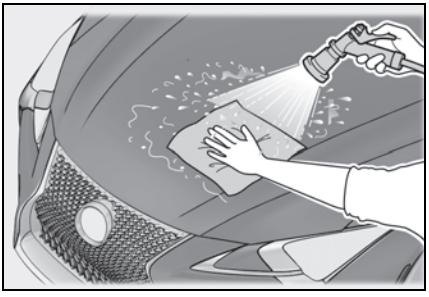
If the tires or chassis parts are excessively dirty, make sure to wash them first, otherwise dirt be sprayed onto the washed vehicle body.

If dirt is not easily washed off, bring the hose or sprayer nozzle closer to the vehicle body to slightly increase the water pressure.



2 Using a soft chamois cloth, wipe the vehicle body gently while applying plenty of water.

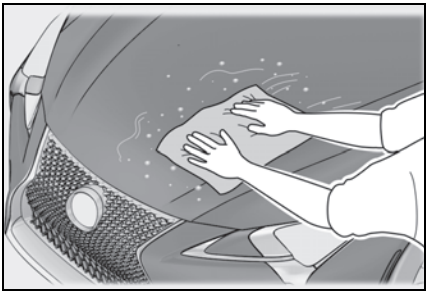
Wipe the vehicle body from top to bottom.



3 Using another soft chamois cloth, dry the vehicle while taking care to not rub the vehicle body.

Make sure to remove any standing water before it evaporates.

Do not use the same chamois cloth that was used to wash the vehicle (step **2**).

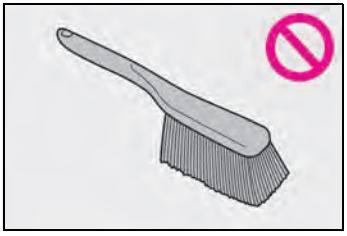


NOTICE

■ Avoiding damage to the painted surfaces

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the painted surfaces of your vehicle may be damaged and permanently lose their matte properties.

- When washing the vehicle, do not use a brush.



- Do not use rubbing or polishing compounds (ex. scratch remover).
- Do not rub the vehicle body.
- Do not attach a stickers to or vinyl wrap the vehicle body.
- Before attaching a magnet (sign, etc.) to the vehicle body, make sure to wash and thoroughly dry the area of the vehicle body where the magnet is to be attached.

Frequently Asked Questions (vehicles with matte clear coat)

The following are frequently asked questions about the matte clear coat and their answers:

Washing the vehicle

■ **General washing tips (→P.336)**

Question	Answer
Can the vehicle be washed?	Yes. The vehicle should be washed immediately if it is dirty.
Can the vehicle be washed frequently?	
Is there anything I should be careful about when washing the vehicle?	Make sure to start by rinsing the entire vehicle with plenty of water from top to bottom.

■ **If the vehicle body is dirty (→P.334)**

Question: What should I do if any of the following have attached to the vehicle?

Item	Answer
Leaves, flowers, branches, etc.	Remove immediately. They may scratch the matte clear coat and if they are allowed to remain on the vehicle, dirt may settle into the matte clear coat, making it more flat. As a result, it will become more glossy, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.
Sand, pollen, and other particulate matter	Wash off with water immediately. If the contaminants are allowed to remain on the vehicle, they may settle into the matte clear coat, making it more glossy, possibly causing it to permanently lose its matte properties.
Asphalt (tar)	

Item	Answer
Water repellent glass coating	Remove immediately. Even if removed, depending on the contaminant, the matte clear coat may be damaged, possibly permanently losing its matte properties.
Glass treatment remover	
Tire cleaner	
Gasoline	
Oil	
Washer fluid	

■ **Vehicle washing products (→P.336)**

Question	Answer
What should I use to wipe off dirt?	Use a soft chamois cloth.
What should I use to dry the vehicle?	
Can I use a water stain remover?	Lexus does not recommend the use of water stain removers, as they may damage the matte clear coat.
Can the vehicle be waxed?	No. Do not wax the vehicle or apply a coating to the vehicle body, as they may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Can a coating be applied to the vehicle body?	
Can I use an iron remover?	No, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture
Can I use tar and pitch remover?	No, as they may damage the matte clear coat.
Can I use a matte paint cleaner/wax?	Lexus does not recommend the use of matte paint cleaners or waxes, as they may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Are there genuine Lexus vehicle washing products available for matte paint?	No. Use a soft chamois cloth for cleaning the vehicle body.
Are there any vehicle washing product brands that Lexus recommends?	No. Use a soft chamois cloth for cleaning the vehicle body.

■ Body coatings

Question	Answer
Can a body coating available at a Lexus dealer be applied?	No, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Can an aftermarket body coating be applied?	Lexus does not recommend applying a coating to the vehicle body, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.
Can an aftermarket body coating designed for matte paint be applied?	Lexus does not recommend applying a coating to the vehicle body, as it may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture.

■ Repairing the vehicle body (→P.335)

Question	Answer
Can damage to the paint be repaired?	In order to maintain the matte finish when repairing paint damage, it is necessary to repaint the entire part. Consult your Lexus dealer for details.
Can I use rubbing or polishing compound (ex. scratch remover)?	No. Using a rubbing or polishing compound or touch up paint may damage the matte clear coat. In order to maintain the matte finish when repairing paint damage, it is necessary to repaint the entire part. Consult your Lexus dealer for details.
Can I use touch up paint?	

■ Attaching accessories and other objects to the vehicle

Question	Answer
Can a sticker or vinyl wrap be attached to the vehicle body?	No. They may damage matte clear coat when they are installed and may cause the matte clear coat to lose its matte texture when they are removed.
Can a magnet be attached to the vehicle body?	Yes. Make sure to wash and thoroughly dry the area around where the magnet is to be attached before attaching it.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

Where to go for maintenance service?

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for maintenance service as well as other inspections and repairs.

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips, and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

WARNING

If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

Handling of the 12-volt battery

12-volt battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.354)

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Service Booklet".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have

the exhaust system checked immediately.)

- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.108)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
12-volt battery condition (→P.354)	• Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine coolant level (LC500) (→P.351)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is premixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine/power control unit coolant level (LC500h) (→P.351)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is premixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.348)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P.377)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.380)	—
Radiator and condenser (→P.353)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P.371)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.353)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- LC500h: Make sure that the "IGNITION ON" on the multi-information display and the "READY" indicator are both off.
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- LC500: Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
  LC500h: Be careful not to touch the engine, power control unit, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.
  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch <power switch> is off.

With the engine switch <power switch> in ON, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.353)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

■ If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

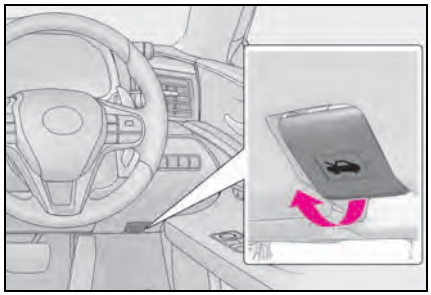
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Hood

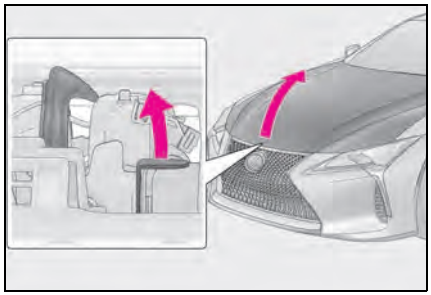
Opening the hood

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Positioning a floor jack

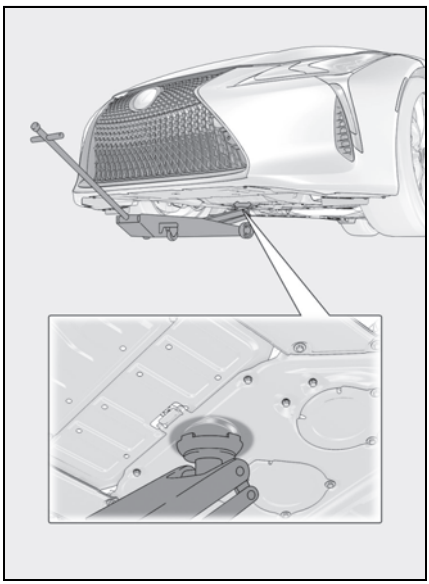
When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

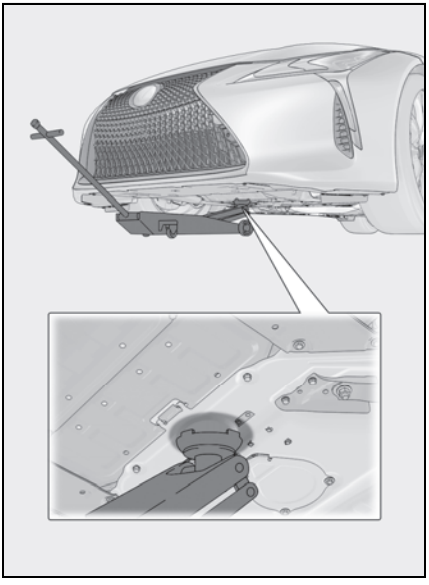
Location of the jack point

■ **Front**

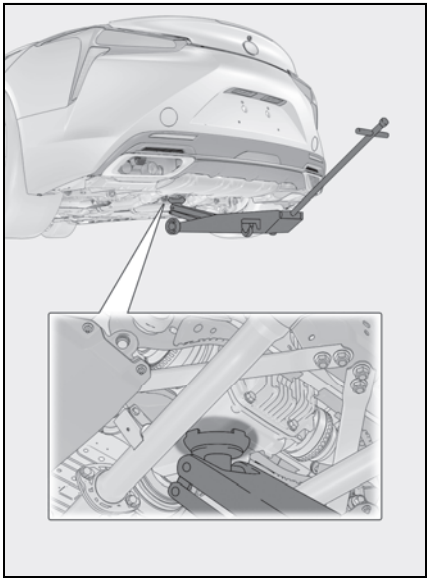
▶ LC500h



▶ LC500

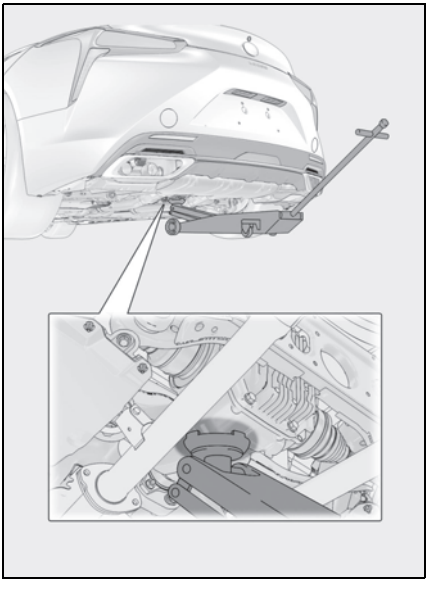


▶ Convertible



■ Rear

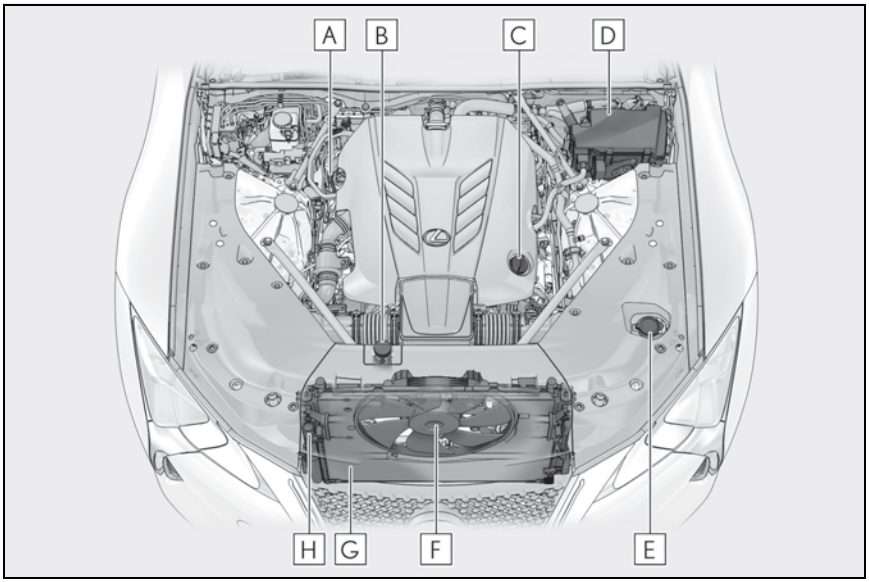
▶ Except Convertible



Engine compartment

Components

▶ LC500



A Engine oil level dipstick (→P.348)

B Engine coolant reservoir (→P.351)

C Engine oil filler cap (→P.350)

D Fuse box (→P.377)

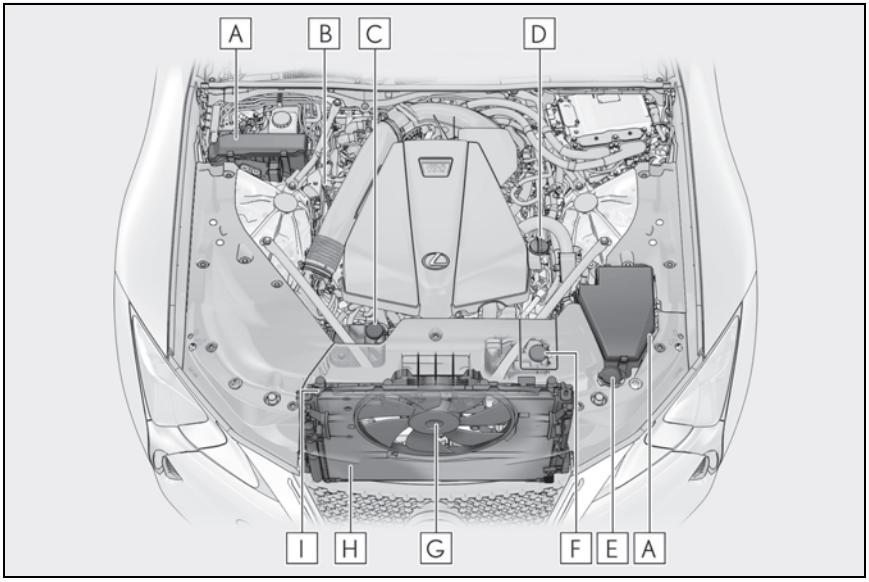
E Washer fluid tank (→P.353)

F Electric cooling fan

G Condenser (→P.353)

H Radiator (→P.353)

▶ LC500h



A Fuse boxes (→P.377)

B Engine oil level dipstick (→P.348)

C Engine coolant reservoir (→P.351)

D Engine oil filler cap (→P.350)

E Washer fluid tank (→P.353)

F Power control unit coolant reservoir (→P.352)

G Electric cooling fan

H Condenser (→P.353)

I Radiator (→P.353)

■ **12-volt battery**

→P.354

Checking the engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

1 Park the vehicle on level ground.

▶ LC500

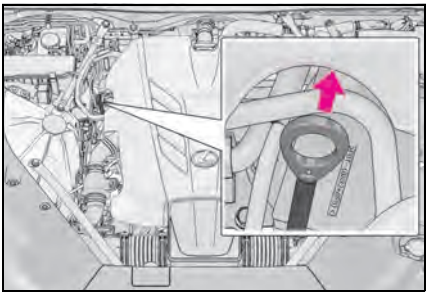
After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait about 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

▶ LC500h

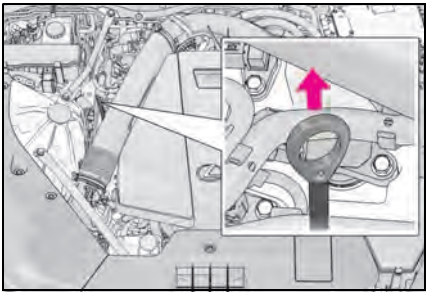
After warming up the engine and turning off the hybrid system, wait about 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

▶ LC500



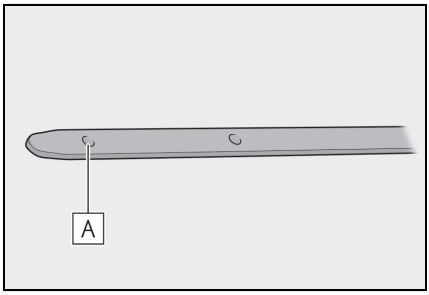
▶ LC500h



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check whether the oil level is above low level mark.



A Low level mark

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ **Engine oil level rise**

If the vehicle is repeatedly driven without the engine warmed up, moisture caused by dew condensation inside the engine or fuel which did not burn mixes into the engine oil, resulting in a rise in engine oil level.

However, this is not a malfunction.

For example, the engine become difficult to be warmed up in the following situations.

- When driving a short distance
- When driving at a low speed
- When the outside temperature is low

When checking the engine oil, make sure that the engine is warmed up. If the engine oil level exceeds the refill upper limit mark, contact your Lexus dealer.

Adding engine oil

■ Checking the engine oil type and preparing the items needed

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

- Engine oil selection

→P.439, 440

- Oil quantity (Low level mark → Refill upper limit mark)

1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)

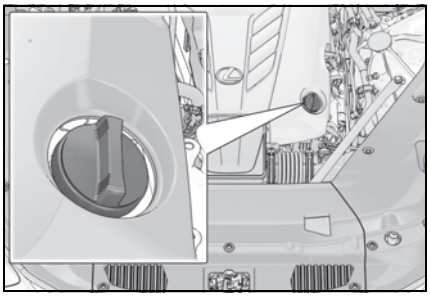
- Item

Clean funnel

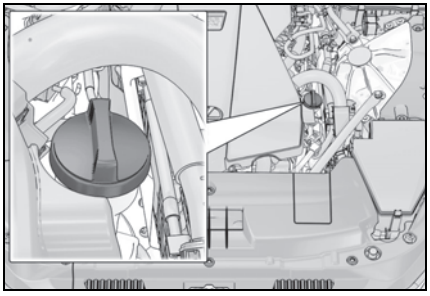
■ Adding the engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

▶ LC500



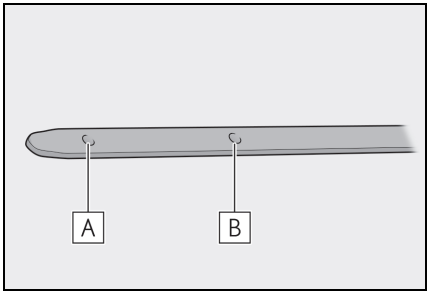
▶ LC500h



1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

Make sure that the oil level does not exceed the refill upper limit mark and is between the low level mark and refill upper limit mark.



A Low level mark

B Refill upper limit mark

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

After changing the engine oil (LC500h)

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

1 While the vehicle is stopped, press of the meter control switches.

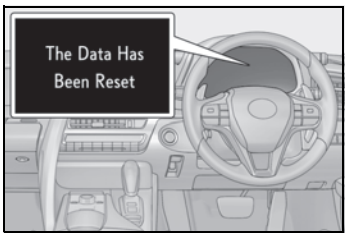
2 Press < or > of the meter control switches to select .

3 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches to select "Vehicle Settings", and then press "OK".

4 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches to select "Oil Maintenance" and then press "OK".

5 Select "Yes" and then press "OK".

A message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



WARNING

Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

When replacing the engine oil

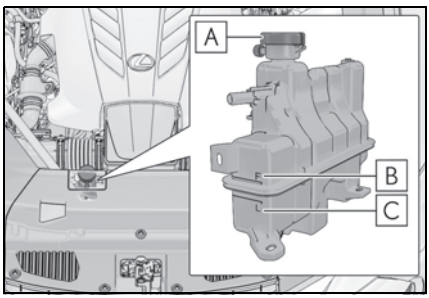
- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Checking the coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the engine <hybrid system> is cold.

Engine coolant reservoir

▶ LC500



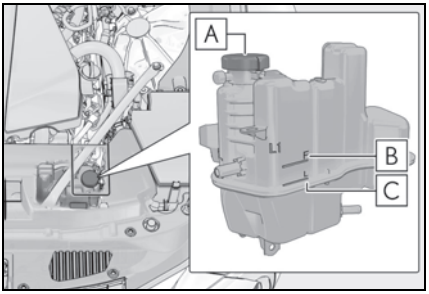
A Reservoir cap

B "F" line

C "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. (→P.428)

▶ LC500h



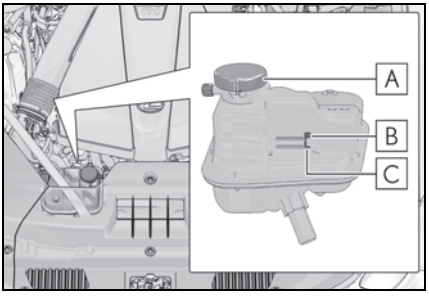
A Reservoir cap

B "F" line

C "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. (→P.430)

■ **Power control unit coolant reservoir (LC500h)**



A Reservoir cap

B "F"/"FULL" line

C "L"/"LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "L"/"LOW" line, add coolant up to the "F"/"FULL" line. (→P.430)

■ **Coolant selection**

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

WARNING

■ **When the engine <hybrid system> is hot**

LC500: Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap or the coolant inlet cap. (→P.430)
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

LC500h: Do not remove the engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps or the coolant inlet cap. (→P.433)
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.

If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When the engine <hybrid system> is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ When adding coolant (Convertible)

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant (Convertible)

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the radiator and condenser (Convertible)

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.

If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

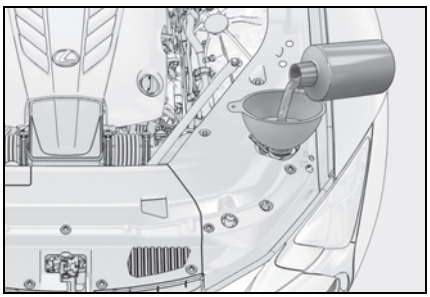
■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

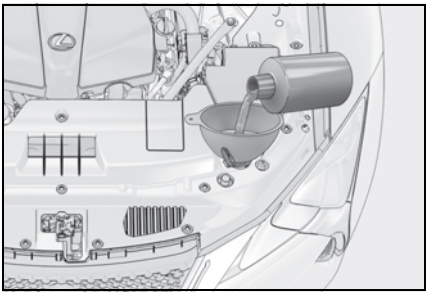
Checking and adding the washer fluid

If any washer does not work or "Windshield Washer Fluid Low" is shown on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

▶ LC500



▶ LC500h



WARNING

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine <hybrid system> is hot or running <operating> as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.

Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

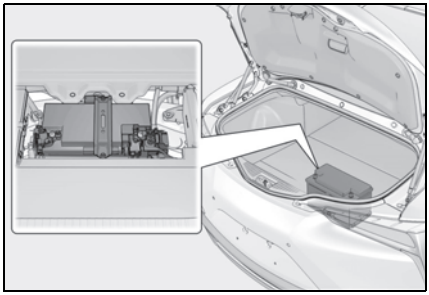
■ Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

12-volt battery

Location

The 12-volt battery is located in the trunk.



■ Before recharging

When recharging, the 12-volt battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the 12-volt battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the 12-volt battery.

■ After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine <hybrid system> with the engine switch <power switch> in ACC. The engine <hybrid system> may not start with the engine switch <power switch> turned off. However, the engine <hybrid system> will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch <power switch> mode

is recorded by the vehicle. If the 12-volt battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch <power switch> mode to the status it was in before the 12-volt battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine switch <power switch> before disconnect the 12-volt battery. Take extra care when connecting the 12-volt battery if the engine switch <power switch> mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the engine <hybrid system>, will not start even after multiple attempts at all methods above, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Chemicals in the 12-volt battery

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the 12-volt battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the 12-volt battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the 12-volt battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the 12-volt battery.
- Keep children away from the 12-volt battery.

■ Where to safely charge the 12-volt battery

Always charge the 12-volt battery in an open area. Do not charge the 12-volt battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the 12-volt battery

Recharge at a current of 5 A or less and make sure that the recharging period does not exceed a total of 12 hours.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

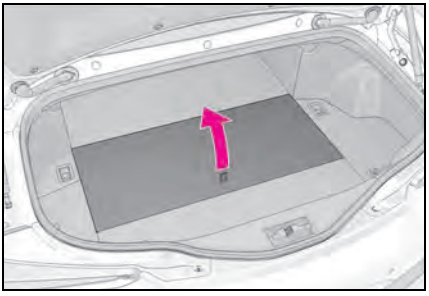
NOTICE

■ When recharging the 12-volt battery

Never recharge the 12-volt battery while the engine is running <hybrid system is operating>. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

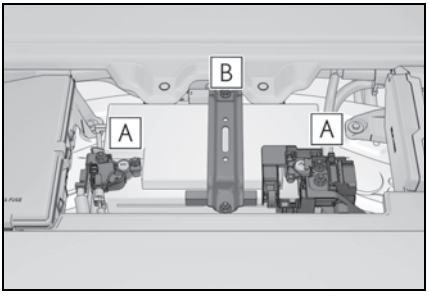
Removing the 12-volt battery cover

Pull the strap upwards to lift up the luggage mat.



Exterior

Make sure that the 12-volt battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

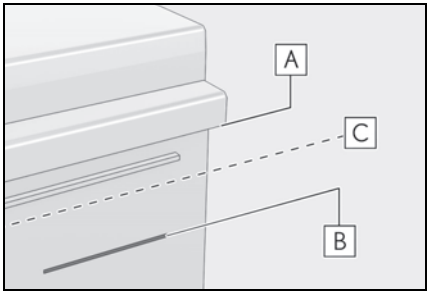


A Terminals

B Hold-down clamp

Checking the 12-volt battery fluid

Check that the level is upper than the center between the bottom of the battery lid and "LOWER LEVEL" line.



A Bottom of the battery lid

B "LOWER LEVEL" line

C Center of A and B

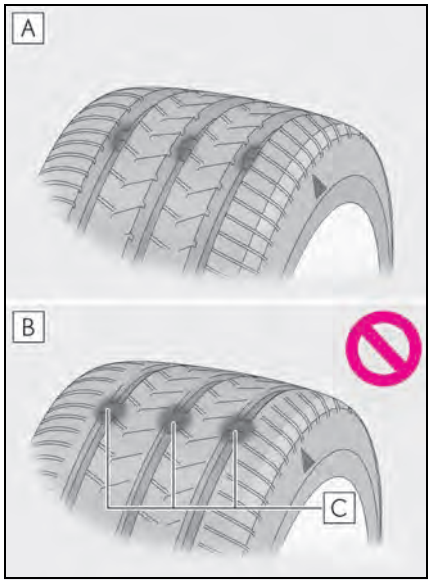
If the fluid level is below C, replace the 12-volt battery.

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.



A New tread

B Worn tread

C Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or " △ " mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Low profile tires (21-inch tires)

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

■ If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drivetrain as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.

WARNING

- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

NOTICE

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ Low profile tires (21-inch tires)

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when sustaining impact from the road surface. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

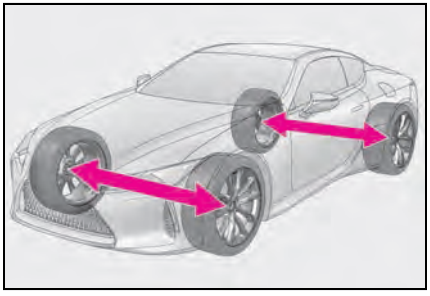
- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles).

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

■ When rotating the tires

Make sure that the engine switch <power switch> is off. If the tires are rotated while the engine switch <power switch> is in ON, the tire position information will not be updated.

If this accidentally occurs, either turn the engine switch <power switch> to off and then to ON, or initialize the tire pressure warning system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

Run-flat tires

When run-flat tires are installed, the vehicle can be driven for a maximum of 160 km (100 miles) at a speed below 80 km/h (50 mph) after any tire goes flat. (However, the vehicle speed may not increase to near 80 km/h [50 mph] depending on weather or driving conditions.)

A run-flat tire has a mark on the sidewall.

Make sure to replace the flat tire before the vehicle has been driven for near 160 km (100 miles). Also, do not use a repaired tire.

■ **Run-flat tires**

- The run-flat tires are for only this vehicle. Do not use the tires on other vehicles.
- Do not mix run-flat tires and normal tires.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used, it may be impossible to sufficiently demonstrate the performance of run-flat tires.

Tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

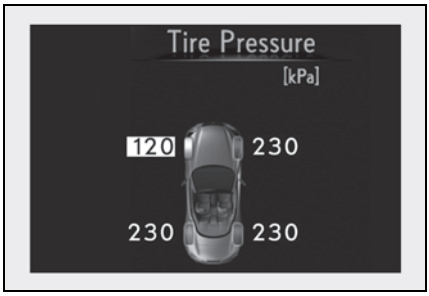
- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P.396)
- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.112)

The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display.

▶ Except Convertible



▶ Convertible



■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly**

- In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.
  - If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
  - A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
  - A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
  - Tire chains etc. are equipped.
  - An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
  - If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
  - If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or

wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If wheels without tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. (→P.362)

■ **When replacing the tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

● When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.

● Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.

● When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

● When rotating the tires.

● When the tire inflation pressure is changed when changing traveling

speed.

- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures)
- After registering the ID codes. (→P.362)

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ **How to initialize the tire pressure warning system**

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch <power switch> off.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level.

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.

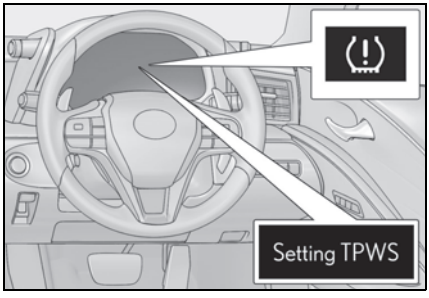
4 Press ◄ or ► of the meter control switches and select ⚙.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "Vehicle Settings", and then press "OK".

6 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "TPWS SET", and then press "OK".

7 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "Set tire pressure", and then press and hold "OK" until the tire pressure warning light starts blinking.

A message is displayed on the multi-information display. Also, "--" is displayed for inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display while the tire pressure warning system determines the position.



8 Drive the vehicle at approximately 40 km/h (25mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When initialization is complete, the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Depending on the vehicle and driving conditions, initialization may take up to approximately 1 hour to complete.

■ **The initialization operation**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch <power switch> off during initialization, it is not necessary to manually restart the initialization again, as initialization will restart automatically the next time the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON.
- If you accidentally perform initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust

the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

- While the position of each tire is being determined and the inflation pressures are not being displayed on the multi-information display, if the inflation pressure of a tire ropes, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

■ When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization may take longer to complete if the vehicle is driven on an unpaved road. When performing initialization, drive on a paved road if possible. Depending on the driving environment and condition of the tires, initialization will be completed in approximately 10 to 30 minutes. If initialization is not complete after driving approximately 10 to 30 minutes, continue driving for a while. If the inflation of each tire is not displayed after driving for approximately 1 hour, perform the following procedure.

- Park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes. Then drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

However, in the following situations, the tire inflation pressure will not be recorded and the system will not operate properly. Perform initialization again.

- When performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times. (Initialization will not occur while driving)
- After performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

If the inflation pressure of each tire is still not displayed, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ When registering ID codes

- Initialize the tire pressure warning system after ID code registration. Initialization is disabled if the system was initialized before registration.
- After ID code registration, the tires are hot by driving. Initialize the tire pressure warning system after the tires become cold.

WARNING

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not initialize tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code.

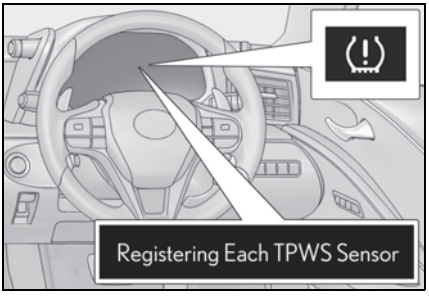
When registering the ID codes, perform the following procedure.

1. Turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.
2. Press ◄ or ► of the meter control switches and select ⚙.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select “Vehicle Settings”, and then press “OK”.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select “TPWS SET”, and then press “OK”.

5 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches and select "Change wheel set", and then press and hold "OK" until the tire pressure warning light starts blinking.

The change wheel set mode is activated and registration is started.

A message is displayed on the multi-information display, and "--" is displayed for inflation pressure of each tire. Then, the tire pressure warning light blinks rapidly for approximately 1 minute and stays on.



6 Drive the vehicle at 40 km/h (25mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When registration is completed, the tire pressure warning light will go off and the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

The time elapsed before registration is completed differs according to the driving condition and environment.

■ **Canceling the change wheel set mode**

- If turning the engine switch <power switch> off when in the change wheel set mode before driving, the change wheel set mode is canceled.
- After driving when in the change wheel set mode, the change wheel set mode cannot be canceled. To cancel the mode, perform the procedure for ID code registration again and turn the engine switch <power switch> off before driving.
- If the change wheel set mode is canceled, the ID codes that have already been registered are communicated. When communication is finished, the tire pressure warning light will turn off.

■ **When ID code registration may not operate properly**

- Do not move the vehicle backward during registration. Registration is started again from the beginning and it may take longer than usual.
- When another vehicle is running the side of the vehicle such as in heavy traffic, it may take longer to detect the vehicle's tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.
- If tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are in the vehicle, the ID codes may not be registered.

If registration takes long time, perform the procedure for ID code registration again after parking the vehicle for 20 minutes.

If the ID codes cannot be registered even when performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

Replacing the tire

When replacing the tires yourself, prepare the necessary tools and a jack.

This vehicle uses wheel bolts.

When using wheels that were installed when the vehicle was shipped from the factory, specialized Lexus genuine wheel bolts must be used.

If necessary tire replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift position to P.
- Turn off the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (→P.98)
- Stop the engine <hybrid system>.

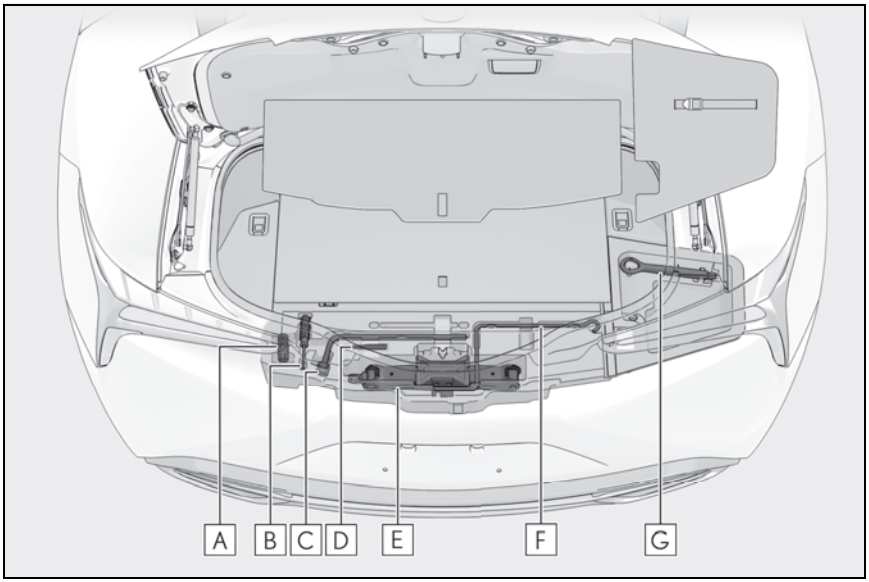
■ **Tools**

As your vehicle is equipped with run-flat tires, the following tools for replacing a tire are not included with your vehicle. They can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

- Wheel bolt wrench
- Jack
- Jack handle
- Guide pin
- Wheel bolt socket

Location of the tools

▶ Except Convertible



A Wheel bolt socket*

B Screwdriver

C Wheel bolt wrench*

D Guide pin*

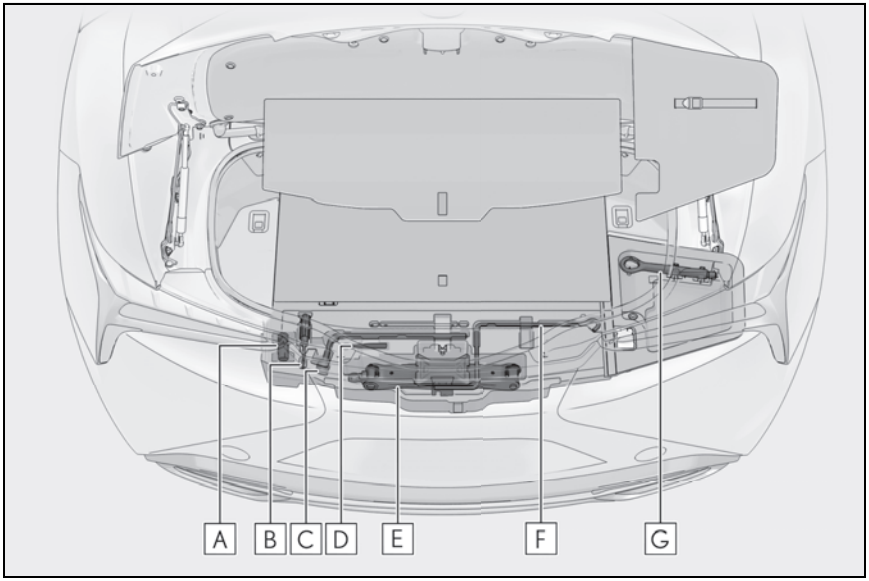
E Jack*

F Jack handle*

G Towing eyelet

*: They can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

▶ Convertible



A Wheel bolt socket*

B Screwdriver

C Wheel bolt wrench*

D Guide pin*

E Jack*

F Jack handle*

G Towing eyelet

*: They can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions. Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

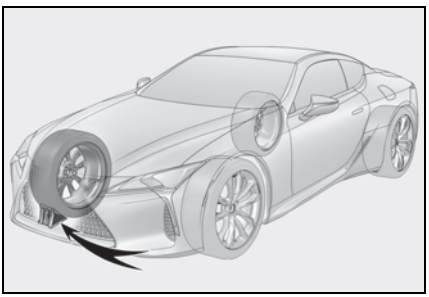
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires.
- Do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine <hybrid system> or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.

WARNING

- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

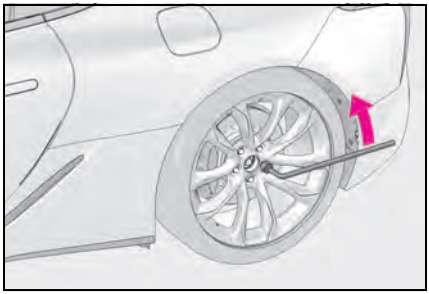
Removing a tire

1 Chock the tires.



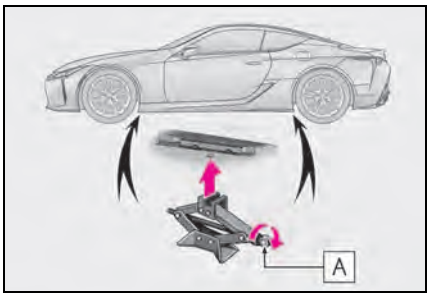
Tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Using a wheel bolt wrench, slightly loosen the wheel bolts (approximately one turn).

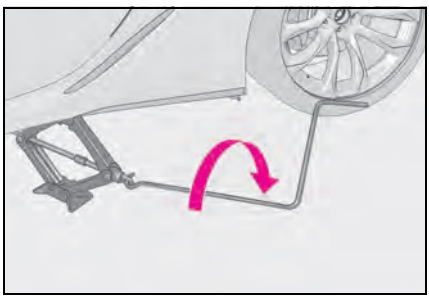


3 Turn the tire jack portion [A] by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.

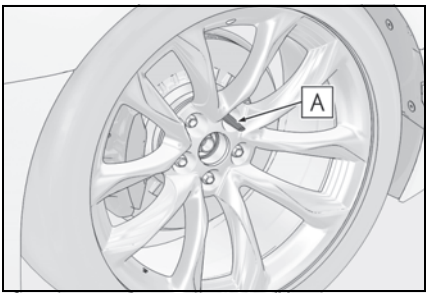


4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



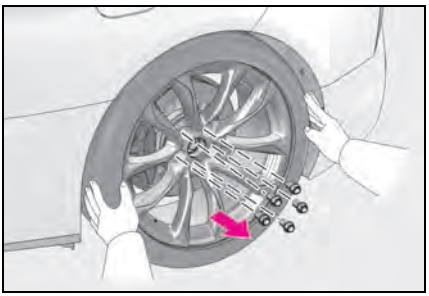
5 Remove the uppermost wheel bolt and install the guide pin [A] by hand.

Turn the guide pin clockwise to tighten it until it stops.



6 Remove all the wheel bolts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

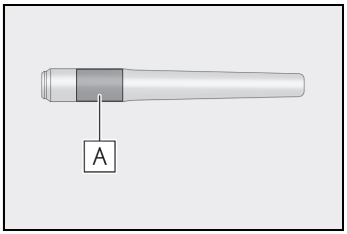


WARNING

■ Replacing a tire

● Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven. After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.

● When removing or installing a tire, make sure to use the guide pin. Also, the guide pin is made of resin. It may be damaged if the wheel is placed anywhere other than [A] or if a large amount of force is applied to the guide pin.



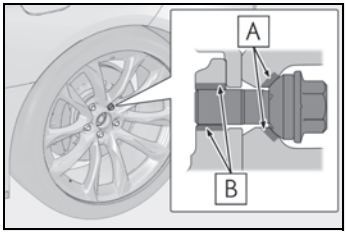
● Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- The contact surfaces of the wheel bolt and wheel are designed specifically to fit together. When using wheels that were installed when the vehicle was shipped from the factory, use specialized Lexus genuine wheel bolts. Do not use wheel bolts designed for other models, model years or types even if they are Lexus genuine parts. If the vehicle does not have wheels that were installed to the vehicle when it was shipped from the factory, the factory-installed wheel bolts may not be appropriate for the wheel. Contact either the retailer where the wheels were purchased or the manufacturer of the wheels for proper installation advice.
- Never apply oil or grease to the wheel bolts or their contact surface on the wheel [A].

Doing so may cause the wheel bolts to be tightened excessively, leading to damage to the wheel bolts, the threaded portion the wheel bolts install to [B], or the wheel.

WARNING

Remove any oil or grease that has adhered when installing the wheel bolts.



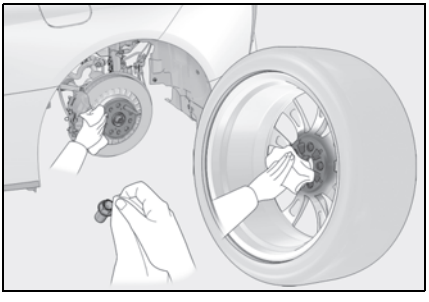
- After replacing a tire, check the tightening torque as soon as possible. If you cannot confirm the tightening torque yourself, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
- If a wheel bolt hole in a wheel or the threads of a wheel bolt or the wheel hub are deformed, cracked, rusty or otherwise damaged, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When tightening the wheel bolts, do not tighten them excessively. Doing so may cause the wheel bolts, the threads of the wheel hub, or the wheel to be damaged.

Installing the tire

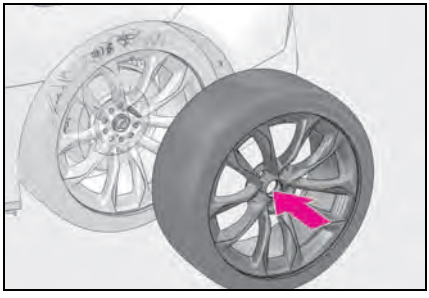
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is not removed, the wheel bolts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the wheel may come off.



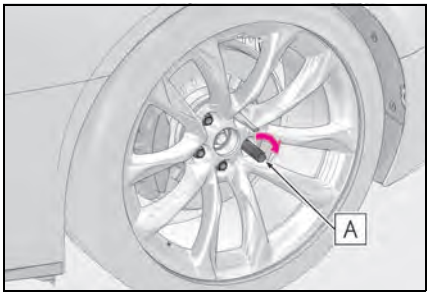
2 Align a wheel bolt hole on the tire with the guide pin, and set the tire on the guide pin.

Align the center hole of the wheel with the center of the hub and securely set the tire so that the wheel and hub contact surfaces

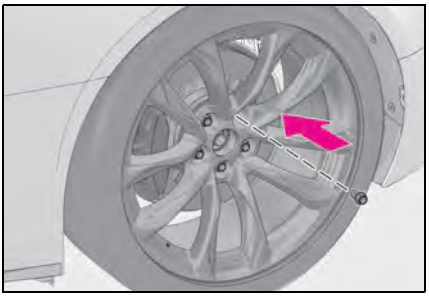


3 Loosely tighten each wheel bolt by hand or using a wheel bolt socket A.

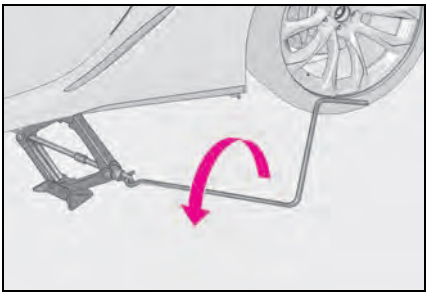
Do not use the wheel bolt socket for anything other than loosely tightening the wheel bolts by hand.



4 Remove the guide pin and loosely tighten the wheel bolt as in step 3.

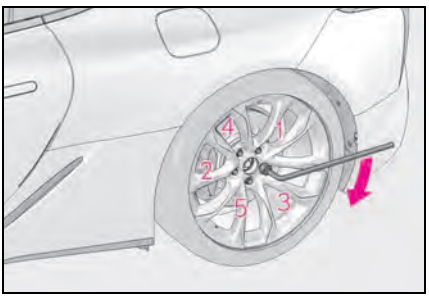


5 Lower the vehicle.



6 Securely tighten the wheel bolts two or three times in the order shown in the illustration using a wheel bolt wrench.

Tightening torque:
140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf)



7 Stow all the tools.

WARNING

■ When installing the tire

Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel bolts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts.
- Have the wheel bolts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel bolts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, bolt threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ After using the tools

Before driving, make sure all the tools are stored securely in place. Failure to do so may cause injury in case of a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps

→P.360

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drivetrain

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.360)

WARNING

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.
- Use the correct wheel bolts for the wheels to be installed. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Wheel bolts

- Do not over tighten.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts. Oil and grease may cause the wheel bolts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the wheel bolts, or if the surface treatment becomes worn, have the wheel bolts replaced at your Lexus dealer. Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel bolts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel bolts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel bolts are still tight after driving 1000 km (621 miles).
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Air conditioning filter

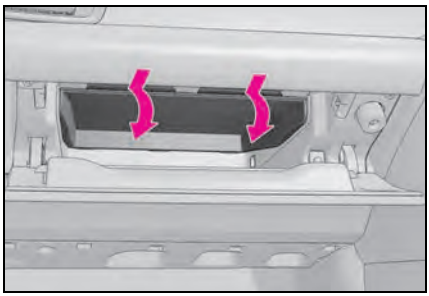
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removing the air conditioning filter

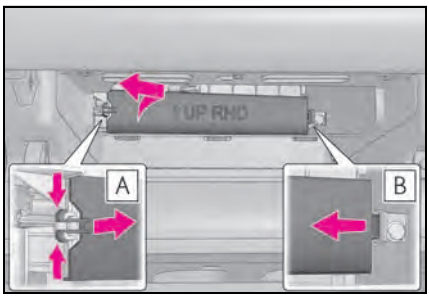
1 Turn the engine switch <power switch> off.

2 Open the glove box.

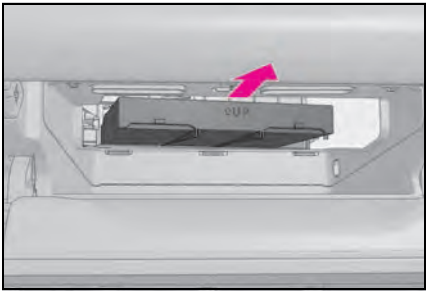
3 Remove the panel.



4 Unlock the filter cover (A), pull the filter cover out of the claws (B), and remove the filter cover.

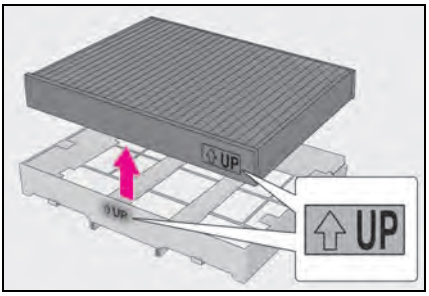


5 Remove the filter case.



6 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The " ⇧ UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



■ Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Warranty and Service Booklet".)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ Air conditioning filter with deodorizing function

When fragrances are placed in your vehicle, the deodorizing effect may become significantly weakened in a short period.

When an air conditioning odor comes out continuously, replace the air conditioning filter.

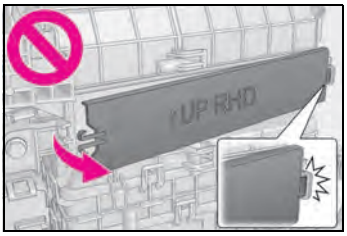
NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed. Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

■ To prevent damage to the filter cover

When moving the filter cover in the direction of arrow to release the fitting, pay attention not to apply excessive force to the claws. Otherwise, the claws may be damaged.



Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

Items to prepare

Prepare the following before replacing the battery:

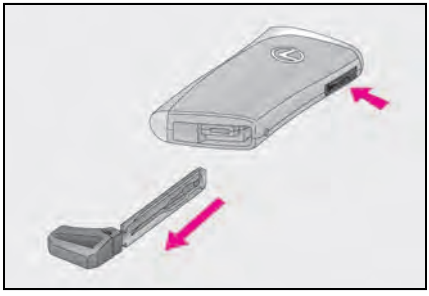
- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

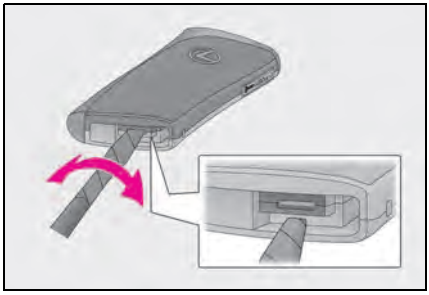
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.



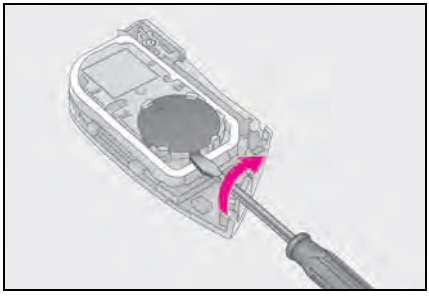
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.



3 Remove the depleted battery using a small flathead screwdriver.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



WARNING

■ Battery precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- A coin battery or button battery is used in the electronic key. If a battery is swallowed, it may cause severe chemical burns in as little as 2 hours and may result in death or serious injury.
- Keep away new and removed batteries from children.
- If the cover cannot be firmly closed, stop using the electronic key and stow the key in the place where children cannot reach, and then contact your Lexus dealer.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ To prevent battery explosion or leakage of flammable liquid or gas

- Replace the battery with a new battery of the same type. If a wrong type of battery is used, it may explode.
- Do not expose batteries to extremely low pressure due to high altitude or extremely high temperatures.
- Do not burn, break or cut a battery.

NOTICE

■ When replacing the battery

Use a screwdriver of appropriate size. Applying excessive force may deform or damage the cover.

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.

Moisture may cause the battery to rust.

- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

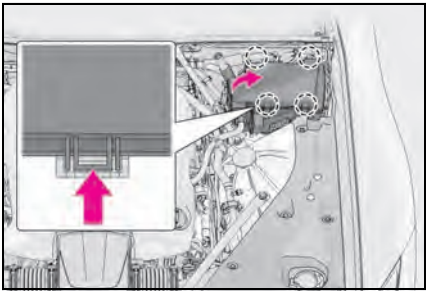
Checking and replacing fuses

1 Turn the engine switch <power switch> off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

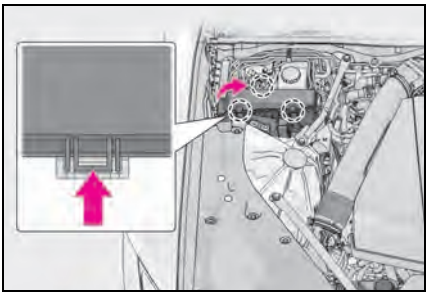
▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box (LC500)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



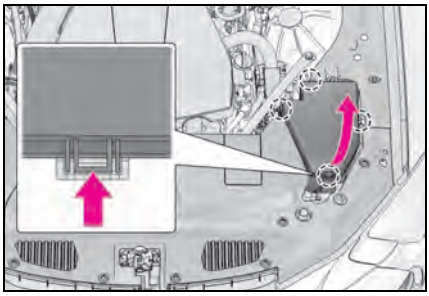
▶ Engine compartment: type B fuse box (LC500h)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



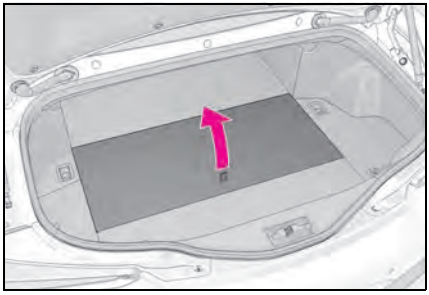
▶ Engine compartment: type C fuse box (LC500h)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

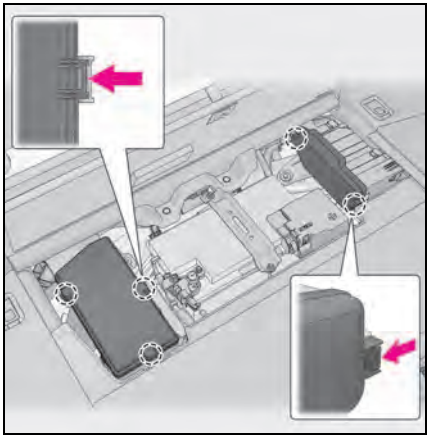


▶ Trunk

Remove the luggage mat.



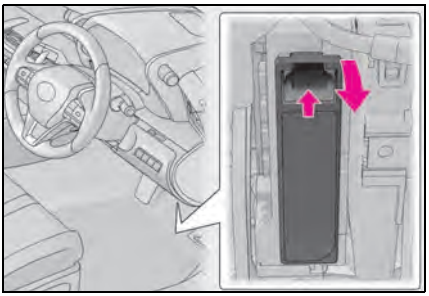
Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Driver's side instrument panel

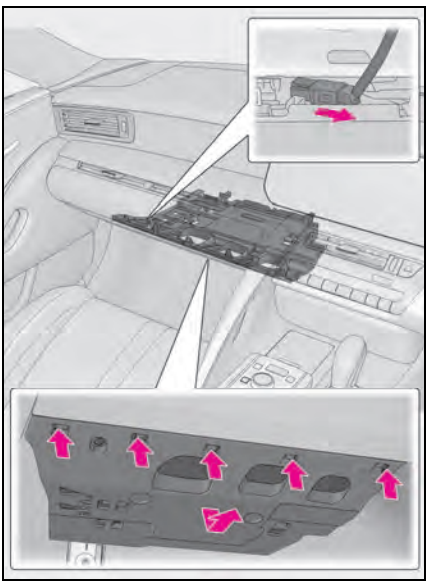
Push the tab in and remove the lid.

Make sure to push the tab in during removal or installation.



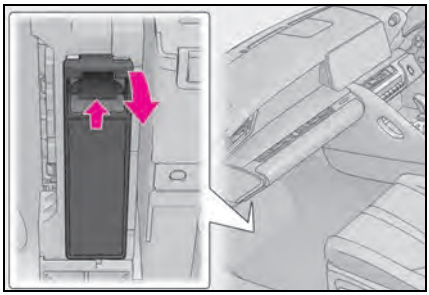
▶ Front passenger's side instrument panel

Remove the cover, and then remove the footwell light connector.



Push the tab in and remove the lid.

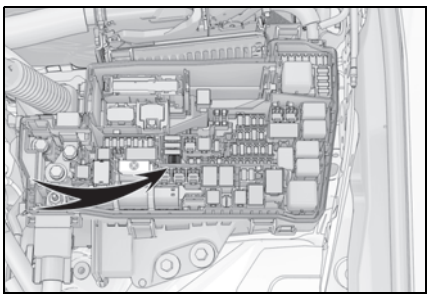
Make sure to push the tab in during removal or installation.



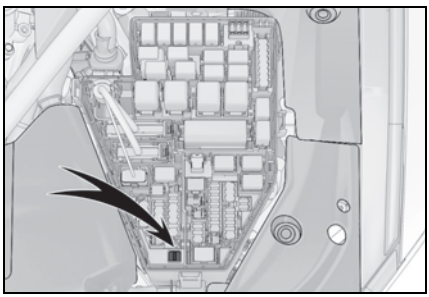
3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only type A fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.

▶ LC500



▶ LC500h

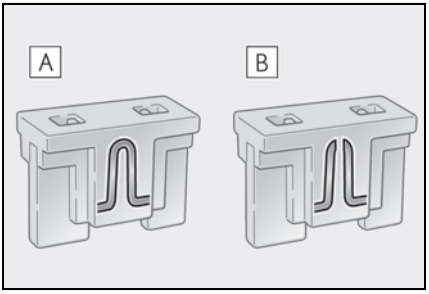


4 Check if the fuse is blown.

Type A and B:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C and D:
Contact your Lexus dealer.

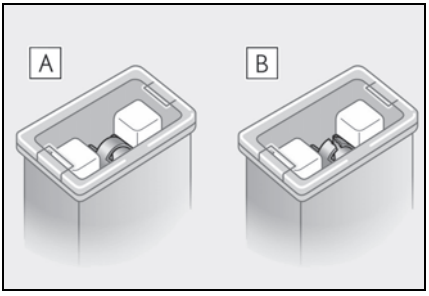
▶ Type A



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

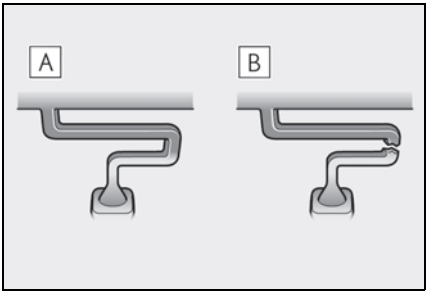
▶ Type B



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

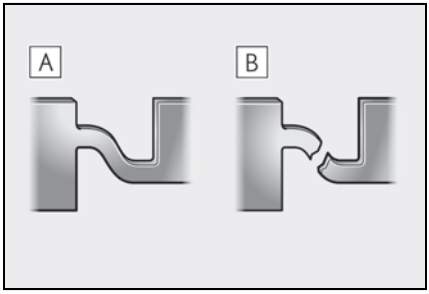
▶ Type C



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

▶ Type D



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

After a fuse is replaced

- When installing the lid, make sure that the tab is installed securely.
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P.380)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

When replacing light bulbs

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

WARNING

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.

WARNING

- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

If any lights burn out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ LED lights

The following lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

- Headlights
- Front position lights and daytime running lights
- Front turn signal lights
- Cornering lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Tail lights
- Stop lights
- Rear turn signal lights
- Back-up lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

WARNING

■ Handling lights

Do not touch the lights while they are on or immediately after they have been turned off. Doing so may result in burns.

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 382

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 382

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising .. 383

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 385

If you think something is wrong 389

Fuel pump shut off system (LC500) 390

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 391

If a warning message is displayed 399

If you have a flat tire..... 405

If the engine will not start (LC500) 406

If the hybrid system will not start (LC500h)..... 407

If you lose your keys..... 409

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 409

If the electronic key does not operate properly 410

If the 12-volt battery is discharged 412

If the soft top roof cannot be closed (Convertible) 420

If your vehicle overheats (LC500) 428

If your vehicle overheats (LC500h)..... 430

If the vehicle becomes stuck 434

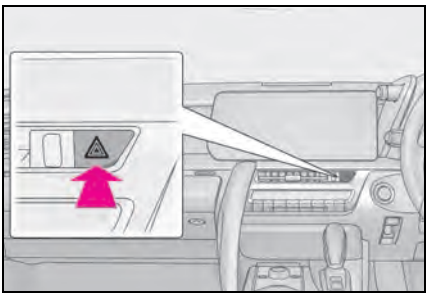
Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch to flash all of the turn signal lights.

To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

- LC500: If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not running, the 12-volt battery may discharge.
  LC500h: If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the hybrid system is not operating (while the "READY" indicator is not illuminated), the 12-volt battery may discharge.
- If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the emergency flashers will turn on automatically. The emergency flashers will turn off automatically after operating for approximately 20 minutes. To manually turn the emergency flashers off, press the switch twice. (The emergency flashers may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

Stopping the vehicle

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift position to N.

▶ If the shift position is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

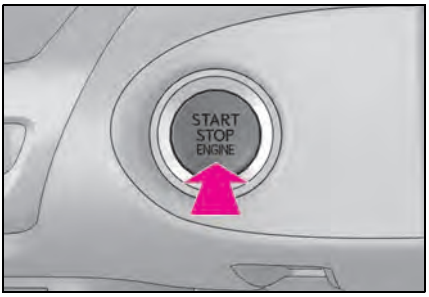
4 Stop the engine <hybrid system>.

▶ If the shift position cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine <hybrid system>, press and hold the engine switch <power switch> for 2 consecutive

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

WARNING

■ If the engine <hybrid system> has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the steering wheel will be lost, making the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine <hybrid system>.

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising

This vehicle is not designed to be able to drive on roads that are deeply flooded with water. Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. It is dangerous to remain in the vehicle, if it is anticipated that the vehicle will be flooded or set adrift. Remain calm and follow the following.

- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door cannot be opened, open the window using the power window switch and ensure an escape route.
- If the window can be opened, exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the door and window cannot be opened due to the rising water, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle and then open the door after waiting for the rising water to enter the vehicle, and exit the vehicle.

When the outside water level exceeds half the height of the door, the door cannot be opened from the inside due to water pressure.

■ Water level exceeds the floor

LC500: When the water level exceeds the floor and time has passed, the electrical equipment will get damaged, the power windows will not operate, the engine stop, and the vehicle may not be able to get moving.

LC500h: When the water level exceeds the floor and time has passed, the electrical equipment will get damaged, the power windows will not operate, the engine and motor stop, and the vehicle may not be able to get moving.

■ Using an emergency escape hammer*

Laminated glass is used in the windshield on this vehicle. Laminated glass cannot be shattered with an emergency hammer*. Tempered glass is used in the windows on this vehicle.

*: Contact your Lexus dealer or aftermarket accessory manufacturer for further information about an emergency hammer.

WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and cannot move, as well as become flooded and set adrift, which may lead to death.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

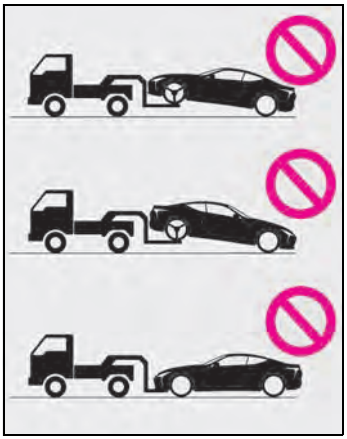
WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When towing the vehicle

LC500: Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged or an accident may occur due to a change in direction of the vehicle.

LC500h: Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged, an accident may occur due to a change in direction of the vehicle or electricity generated by the operation of the motor may cause a fire to occur depending on the nature of the damage or malfunction.



While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not perform any of the following as doing so may cause the parking lock mechanism to engage, locking the rear wheels and possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

WARNING

- Unfasten the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door.
- Turn the engine switch <power switch> off.

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

Situations when it is not possible to be towed by another vehicle

In the following situations, it is not possible to be towed by another vehicle using cables or chains, as the rear wheels may be locked due to the parking lock. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service.

- There is a malfunction in the shift control system. (→P.185, 189, 402)
- There is a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system <immobilizer system>. (→P.95)
- There is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system. (→P.410)
- The 12-volt battery is discharged. (→P.412)

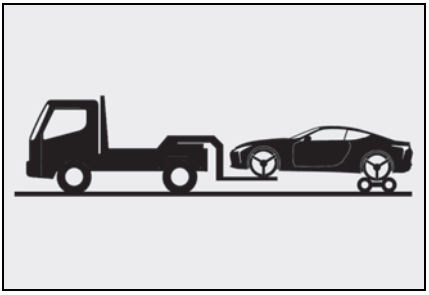
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- LC500: The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- LC500h: The hybrid system warning message is shown on the multi-information display and the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

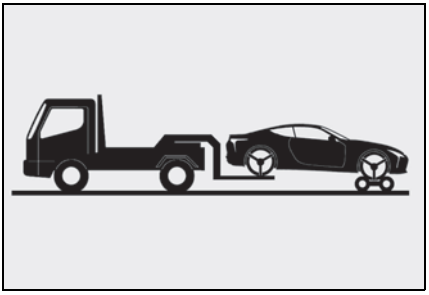
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From the rear

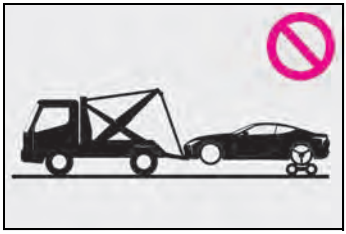


Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

NOTICE

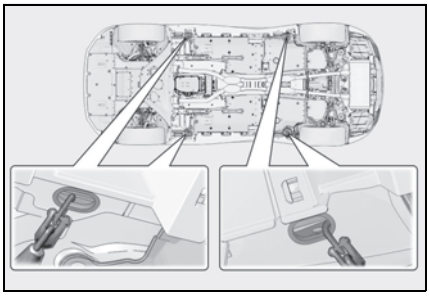
■ Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

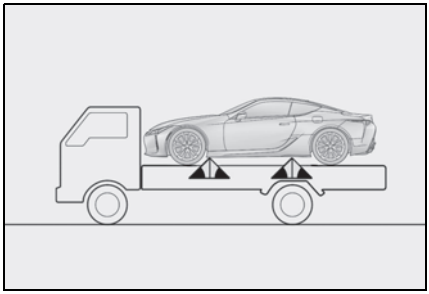


Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.



NOTICE

■ Using a flatbed truck

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances

at under 30 km/h (18 mph).
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

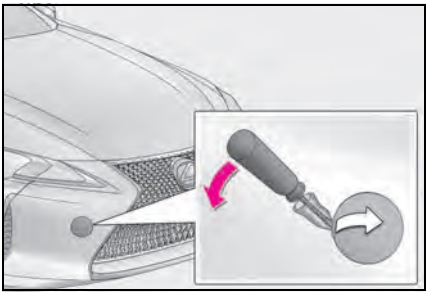
Emergency towing procedure

To have your vehicle towed by another vehicle, the towing eyelet must be installed to your vehicle. Install the towing eyelet using the following procedure.

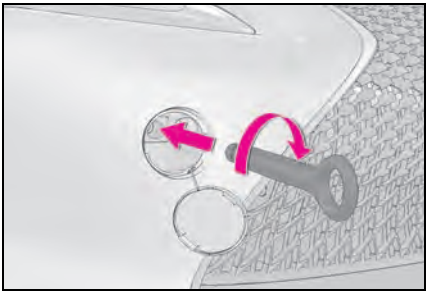
1 Take out the screwdriver and towing eyelet. (→P.365)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

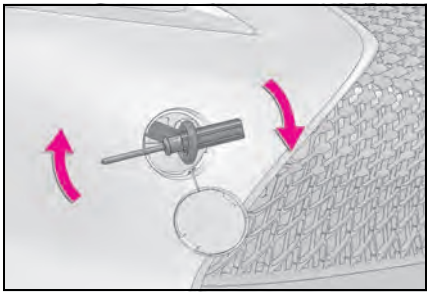
To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body as shown in the illustration.



3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a screwdriver or hard metal bar.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine <hybrid system>.

If the engine <hybrid system> does not start, turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON.

7 Shift the shift position to N and release the parking brake.

Turn automatic mode off. (→P.208)

■ While towing

If the engine is not running <hybrid system is off>, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ Wheel bolt wrench

Wheel bolt wrench can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle. (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine <hybrid system>

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system (LC500)

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACC or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red)	Indicates that: ● The brake fluid level is low; or ● The brake system is malfunctioning This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally. → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.** ● Indicates that the brake pads are worn out (only the right-side pads can be detected) → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.**

■ Charging system warning light*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Low engine oil pressure warning light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.** **(→P.350)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Malfunction indicator lamp (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The electronic engine control system; ● The hybrid system (LC500h); ● The electronic throttle control system; ● The electronic automatic transmission control system (LC500); or ● The electronic hybrid transmission control system (LC500h) → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ SRS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The SRS airbag system; or ● The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ ABS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The ABS; or ● The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red) or  (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ PCS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes or illuminates)	When a buzzer sounds simultaneously: Indicates a malfunction has occurred in the PCS (Pre-Collision System). → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** When a buzzer does not sound: The PCS (Pre-Collision System) has become temporarily unavailable, corrective action may be necessary. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.227, 399)** If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate. → **P.239**

■ LTA indicator (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (orange)	Indicates a malfunction in the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.247)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Slip indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system; ● The TRC (Traction Control) system; or ● The hill-start assist control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** The light will flash when the VSC, TRC, ABS, VGRS* or DRS* system is operating.

*: Only when controlled by the VDIM system.

■ **Brake Override System warning light/Drive-Start Control warning light (warning buzzer)***

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When a buzzer sounds: Indicates a malfunction in the Brake Override System or Drive-Start Control → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the shift position was changed while depressing the accelerator pedal and Drive-Start Control was operated → **Momentarily release the accelerator pedal.** When a buzzer does not sound: Indicates that the accelerator and brake pedals are being depressed simultaneously → **Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ **Brake hold operated indicator**

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ **Parking brake indicator**

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ **Brake system warning light**

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The electronically controlled brake system ● The regenerated braking system (LC500h) ● The parking brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Low fuel level warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 12.1L [3.2 gal., 2.7 Imp.gal.] or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**

■ Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**

*: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

■ Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (warning buzzer*1)*2

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**

*1: Rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer:

The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time, after the seat belt is fastened and unfastened and the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

*2: This light illuminates on the center panel.

■ Master warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P.399

■ Tire pressure warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as ● Natural causes (→P.397) ● Flat tire (→P.405) **→ Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.** When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system **→ Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.**

■ High coolant temperature warning light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine coolant temperature increases **→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method. (→P.428, 430)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Hybrid system overheat warning light (warning buzzer)* (LC500h)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the hybrid system has overheated This light may be displayed when driving under severe operating conditions. (For example, when driving up a long steep hill.) **→ Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method (→P.430)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on a front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the 12-volt battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **Tire pressure warning light**

When a malfunction occurs in the tire pressure warning system, the tire pressure warning light blinks to warn the driver. However, if the warning light blinks for 1 minute, and then remains illuminated, making it difficult to determine whether the warning light is blinking, turn the engine switch <power switch> from off to ON and check if the warning light blinks.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out even after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization. (→P.361)

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not function properly**

→P.359

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

⚠ WARNING

■ **If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted. When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy. When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Decelerate to the lowest appropriate speed as soon as possible. Do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Have the flat tire replaced by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

NOTICE

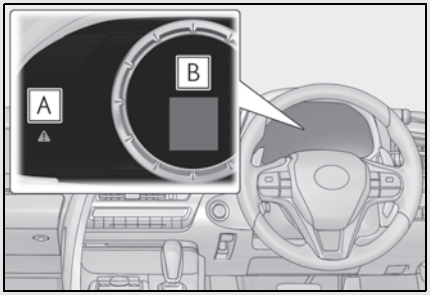
■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

When the main meter is in the center position:



A Master warning light

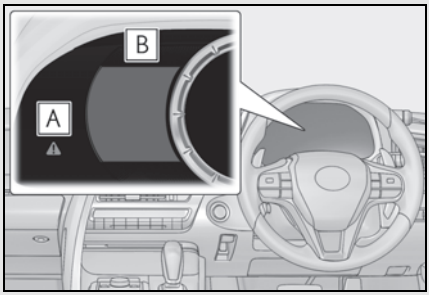
The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages is shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

When the main meter is in the side position:



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages is shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	Comes on	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
Comes on	—	Sounds	
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ Warning messages

The warning messages explained below may differ from the actual messages according to operation conditions and vehicle specifications.

■ System warning lights

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on along with a message or image shown on the multi-information display.

● Malfunction in the ABS

The ABS warning light comes on. (→P.392)

● Malfunction in the charging system

The charging system warning light comes on. (→P.391)

● Malfunction in the brake system

The brake system warning light comes on. (→P.391)

● Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning light comes on. (→P.396)

● Remaining fuel level is low

The low fuel level warning light comes on. (→P.395)

■ **If "Hybrid System Overheated Output Power Reduced" is shown (LC500h)**

This message may be displayed when driving under severe operating conditions. (For example, when driving up a long steep hill.) Stop and check. (→P.430)

■ **If "Traction Battery Needs to be Protected Refrain from the Use of N Position" is shown (LC500h)**

This message may be displayed when the shift position is in N.

As the hybrid battery (traction battery) cannot be charged when the shift position is in N, shift the shift position to P when the vehicle is stopped.

■ **If "Traction Battery needs to be Protected Shift into P to Restart" is shown (LC500h)**

This message is displayed when the hybrid battery (traction battery) charge has become extremely low because the vehicle has been left with the N shift position selected for a certain amount of time.

When operating the vehicle, shift to P and restart the hybrid system.

■ **If "Shift to P Before Exiting Vehicle" is shown**

The driver's door is opened without turning the engine switch <power switch> to off with the shift lever in any position other than P. Shift the shift position to P.

■ **If "Shift Is in N Release Accelerator Before Shifting" is shown**

The accelerator pedal has been depressed when the shift position is in N. Release the accelerator pedal and shift the shift position to D or R.

■ **If "Depress Brake when Vehicle Is Stopped Hybrid System May Overheat" is shown (LC500h)**

The message may be displayed when the accelerator pedal is depressed to hold the vehicle while the vehicle is stopped on an uphill etc. The hybrid system may overheat. Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.

■ **If "Shift system malfunction Shifting unavailable Drive to a safe place and stop" or "Shift system malfunction Driving unavailable" is shown**

There is a malfunction in the shift control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If "Auto Power Off to Conserve Battery" is shown**

LC500:
Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function. Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery.

LC500h:
Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function. Next time when starting the hybrid system, operate the hybrid system for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery.

■ **If a message that indicates the need for the shift lever operation is displayed**

To prevent the shift lever from being operated incorrectly or the vehicle from moving unexpectedly, a message that requires shifting the shift position may be displayed on the multi-information display. In that case, follow the instruction of the message and shift the shift position.

■ **If "Radar Cruise Control Temporarily Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is shown**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range system is suspended temporarily or until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (causes and coping methods: →P.227)

■ **If "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" is shown**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

■ **If a message that indicates the malfunction of front camera is displayed**

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.227, 391)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

■ **If a message that indicates the malfunction of radar sensor is displayed**

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.391, 227)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

■ **If "Engine Stopped Steering Power Low" (LC500) or "Hybrid System Stopped Steering Power Low" (LC500h) is shown**

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy. If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

■ **If "Warming Up Maximum Vehicle Speed: 110km/h" is shown (LC500h)**

The transmission is being warmed up and the vehicle is unable to be driven over 110 km/h (65 mph). Wait until the transmission warms up.

■ **If "Stop the vehicle in a safe place Shift to P position" is shown (LC500h)**

There may be a malfunction in the hybrid system or the shift position may be shifted to N for a long time. Immediately stop the vehicle and contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Oil Maintenance Required Soon" is shown (LC500h)**

The engine oil is scheduled to be changed. Check the engine oil, and change if necessary. After changing the engine oil, the message should be reset. (→P.351)

■ **If "Engine Oil Level Low Add or Replace" is shown**

The engine oil level is low. Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary. (→P.350) This message may appear if the vehicle is stopped on a slope. Move the vehicle to a level

surface and check to see if the message disappears.

■ **If a message that indicates the need for referring to Owner's Manual is shown**

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, follow the instructions.
- "Engine Coolant Temp High" (→P.428, 430)
- "Transmission Fluid Temp High" (→P.192, 199)

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- "Entry & Start System Malfunction"
- "Shift system malfunction Apply parking brake securely when parking See owner's manual"
- "P switch malfunction Apply parking brake securely when parking See owner's manual"
- "Shift system unavailable Apply parking brake securely when parking See owner's manual"
- "Shift system malfunction See owner's manual"
- "Shift system malfunction Stop in a safe place See owner's manual"
- "Battery low Shifting unavailable See owner's manual"

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction in a system or part. Immediately have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- "Hybrid System Malfunction" (LC500h)
- "Check Engine"
- "Hybrid Battery System Malfunction" (LC500h)
- "Accelerator System Malfunction"

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, the vehicle may have run out of fuel. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and, if the fuel level is low, refuel the vehicle. (→P.90)
- "Hybrid system stopped" (LC500h)
- "Engine stopped"(LC500h)

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle and contact your Lexus dealer.
- "Braking Power Low"
- "Charging System Malfunction"
- "Oil Pressure Low"

● LC500h: If "Aux Battery Low" is shown, observe the following.
- If the message disappears in a few minutes*
  Keep the hybrid system operating for more than approximately 15 minutes to charge the 12-volt battery.
- If the message does not disappear
  Refer to "If the 12-volt battery is discharged" (→P.412) to start the hybrid system

*: It is displayed for approximately 6 seconds.

● If "Battery low" is shown, the 12-volt battery charge is insufficient. Recharge or replace the 12-volt battery.

● LC500h: If "Maintenance Required for Traction battery Cooling Parts" is shown, the filters may be clogged, the air intake vents may be blocked, or there may be a gap in the duct. Therefore, perform the following correction procedure.
- If the air intake vents and filters of the hybrid battery (traction battery) are dirty, perform the procedure on P.326 to clean them.

- If the warning message is shown when the air intake vents and filters of the hybrid battery (traction battery) are not dirty, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If a message that indicates the need for visiting your Lexus dealer is shown**

The system or part shown on the multi-information display is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

NOTICE

■ **While the engine oil level warning message is displayed**

Continued engine operation with low engine oil will damage the engine.

■ **If "High Power Consumption Partial Limit On AC/Heater Operation" is shown frequently**

Air conditioning, heater and other operations are temporarily limited due to high power consumption. Turn off unnecessary electronic equipment to reduce power consumption, and wait until the power supply returns to normal. If this message is frequently displayed, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Aux Battery Low See Owner's Manual" is shown frequently (LC500h)**

The 12-volt battery may deteriorate. As it may cause the 12-volt battery discharge, have the 12-volt battery inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead you can continue driving the vehicle with run-flat tires even if any tire goes flat.

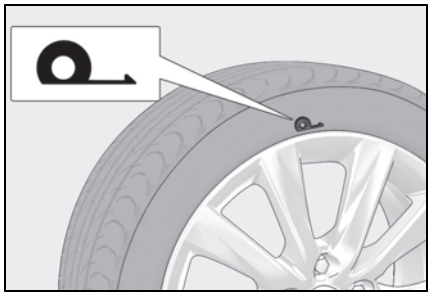
In this case, slow down and drive with extra caution.

Run-flat tires

Take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer as soon as possible if any tire goes flat.

The vehicle can be driven for a maximum of 160 km (100 miles) at a speed below 80 km (50 miles) after the tire pressure warning light comes on. (→P.396)

A run-flat tire has a mark on the sidewall.



■ In some condition (such as at high temperatures)

You cannot continue driving for up to 160 km (100 miles).

■ For the detailed information on run-flat tires

See the tire warranty booklet.

NOTICE

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ When driving over bumps

If a vehicle has a flat tire, the vehicle height will be lower than usual. Ensure that nothing strikes the bottom of the vehicle.

■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P.360)

If the engine will not start (LC500)

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.183), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the correct starting procedure is being followed.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (→P.411)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle. (→P.221)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.95)
- There may be a malfunction in the shift control system.* (→P.185, 401)
- The engine may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, depending on the type of malfunction, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P.407)

*: It may not be possible to shift the shift position from P.

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P.412)
- The 12-volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded. (→P.356)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine.

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the 12-volt battery terminals may be disconnected. (→P.356)
- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P.412)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem

cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Starting the engine in an emergency

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally. Do not use this starting procedure except in cases of emergency.

1 Press the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.207)

Parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACC.

3 Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If the hybrid system will not start (LC500h)

Reasons for the hybrid system not starting vary depending on the situation. Check the following and perform the appropriate procedure:

The hybrid system will not start even though the correct starting procedure is being followed.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (→P.411)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle. (→P.221)
- There may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. (→P.95)
- There may be a malfunction in the shift control system.* (→P.189, 401)
- The hybrid system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, depending on the type of malfunction, an interim measure is available to start the hybrid system. (→P.408)

*: It may not be possible to shift the shift position from P.

The interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P.412)
- The 12-volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded. (→P.356)

The interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P.412)
- One or both of the 12-volt battery terminals may be disconnected. (→P.356)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Starting the hybrid system in an emergency

When the hybrid system does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the hybrid system if the power switch is functioning normally. Do not use this starting procedure except in cases of emergency.

1 Press the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.207)

Parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Turn the power switch to ACC.

3 Press and hold the power switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the hybrid system can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose your keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that were provided with your vehicle.

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

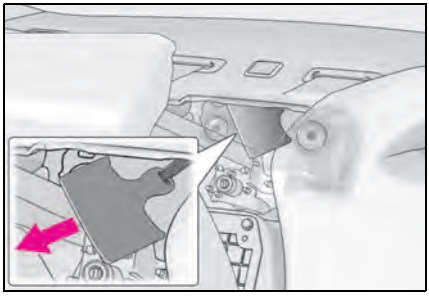
If the fuel filler door opener switch cannot be opened, the following procedure can be used to open the fuel filler door.

Opening the fuel filler door

▶ Except Convertible

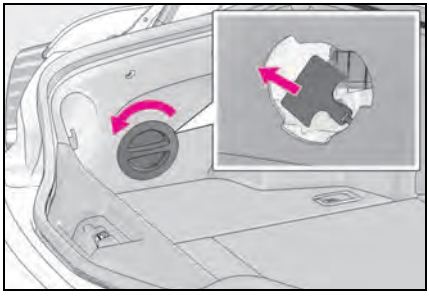
1 Remove the cover in the center of the rear seat. (→P.412)

2 Pull the tab.



▶ Convertible

Open the cover inside the trunk, take out and pull the tab.



WARNING

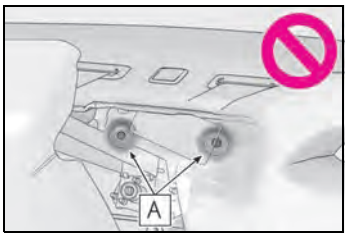
■ **After opening the fuel filler door (except Convertible)**

Make sure to put back the cover to the center of the rear seat. Failure to do so may cause an accident.

NOTICE

■ **After opening the fuel filler door**

- Secure the tab in its original position.
- Except Convertible: Install the tab so that it does not cover the clip installation position A. Failure to do so may cause damage to the clip and make it impossible to install the cover.



If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.142) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened and the engine <hybrid system> can be started by following the procedure below.

■ **When the electronic key does not work properly**

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on. (Customizable features: →P.453)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.142)
- The electronic key function may have stopped. (→P.142)

NOTICE

■ **In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems**

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys (including the card key) provided with your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Locking and unlocking the doors, opening the trunk and using the key linked functions

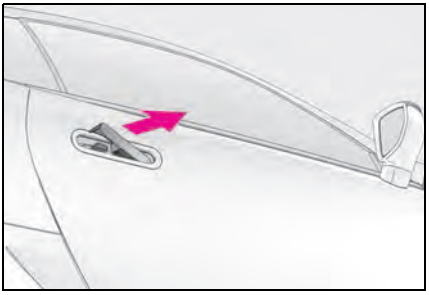
Use the mechanical key (→P.130) in

order to perform the following operations:

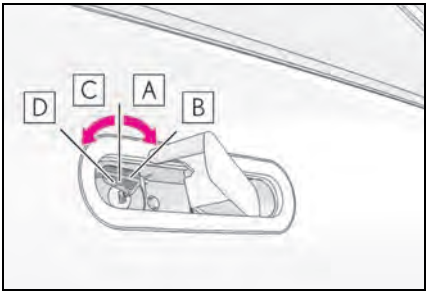
■ Locking and unlocking the door

1 Push in the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle.

2 Insert the mechanical key while pulling on the driver's door handle.



3 Turn the key in order to perform the following operations.



A Locks both side doors

B Closes the windows (turn and hold)*

C Unlocks the door

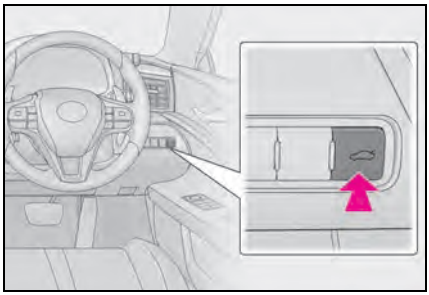
Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again within 5 seconds unlocks the other door.

D Opens the windows (turn and hold)*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Opening the trunk

Unlock the doors, and press the trunk opener switch.



WARNING

■ When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows

Operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window.
Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.

Starting the engine <hybrid system>

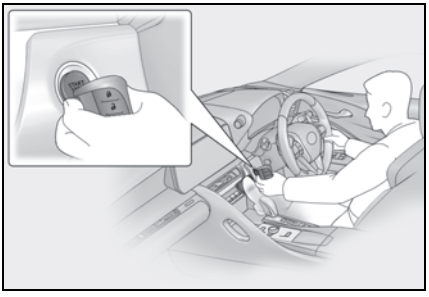
1 Depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch <power switch>.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch <power switch> will turn to ON.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch <power switch> will turn to

ACC.



3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that a message is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch <power switch>.

In the event that the engine <hybrid system> still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Stopping the engine <hybrid system>

Set the parking brake, shift the shift position to P and press the engine switch <power switch> as you normally do when stopping the engine <hybrid system>.

■ Electronic key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P.375)

■ Changing engine switch <power switch> modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch <power switch> in step **3** above.

The engine <hybrid system> does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.185, 189)

If the 12-volt battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine <hybrid system> or open the doors, trunk or glove box if the 12-volt battery is discharged.

You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk

Use the mechanical key (→P.130) in order to perform the following operations:

■ Locking and unlocking the doors

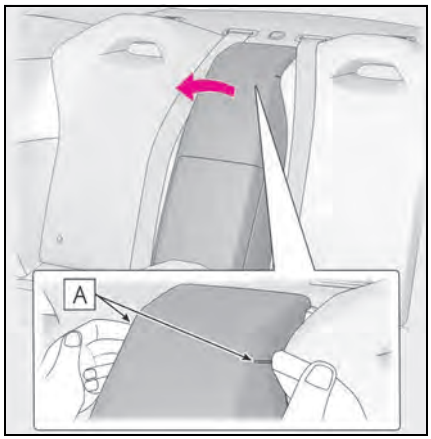
→P.411

■ Opening the trunk (except Convertible)

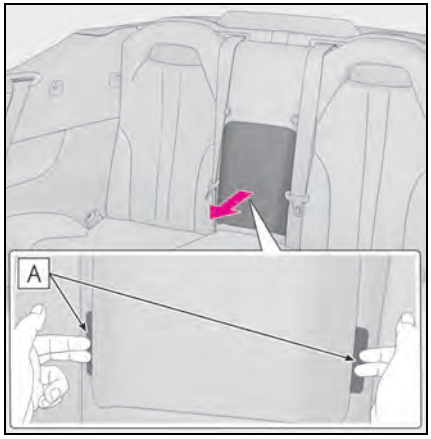
1 Slide the rear passengers' seat belts towards the outside.

2 Insert your fingers at the positions marked A and pull towards you to remove the cover in the center of the rear seat.

▶ Except Convertible

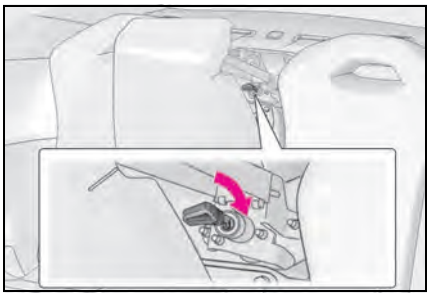


▶ Convertible

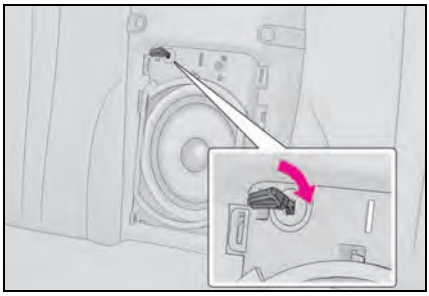


3 Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and turn it clockwise to open.

▶ Except Convertible



▶ Convertible



WARNING

■ After unlocking the trunk

Make sure to put back the cover to the center of the rear seat. Failure to do so may cause an accident.

NOTICE

■ When installing the cover in the center of the rear seat

Make sure that the seat belts are not caught in the cover. Failure to do so may cause damage to the cover installation clip and make it impossible to install the cover.

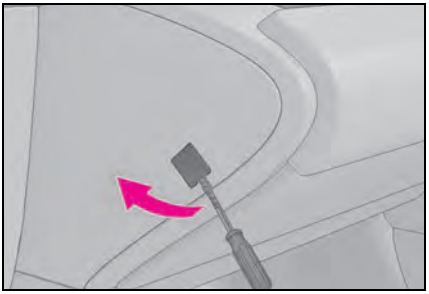
Opening the glove box

The glove box can be opened by performing the following operations after unlocking the doors.

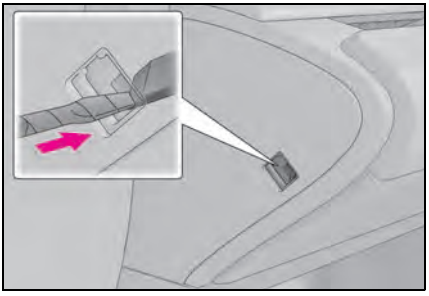
If the glove box is locked, unlock it with the mechanical key. (→P.311)

1 Remove the cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



2 Push the flathead screwdriver into the part shown in the illustration to open the glove box.



■ After opening the glove box

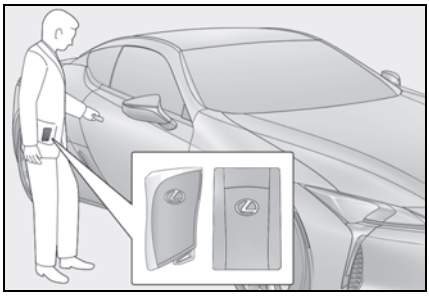
The glove box can be opened normally by closing the glove box after restarting the engine <hybrid system>.

Restarting the engine <hybrid system>

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle using the following procedure.

1 Confirm that the electronic key (including the card key) is being carried.

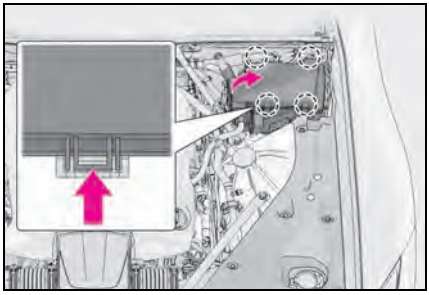
When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and doors locked. (→P.98)



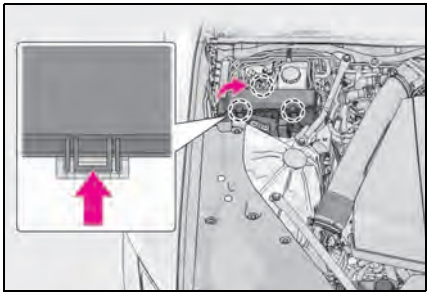
2 Open the hood (→P.345) and open the fuse box cover.

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ LC500

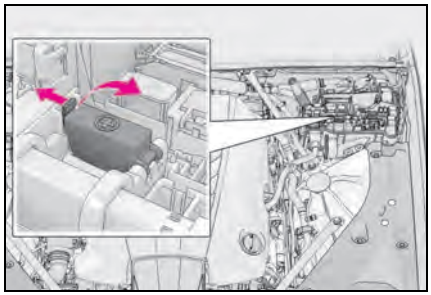


▶ LC500h

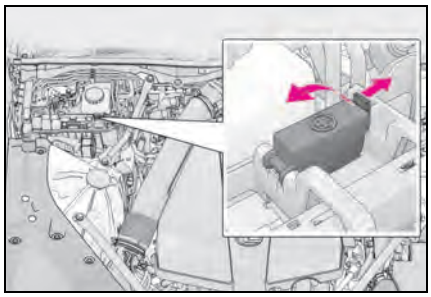


3 Open the exclusive jump starting terminal cover.

▶ LC500

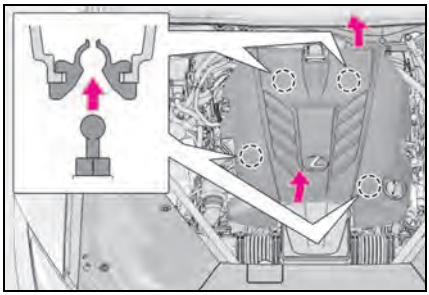


▶ LC500h

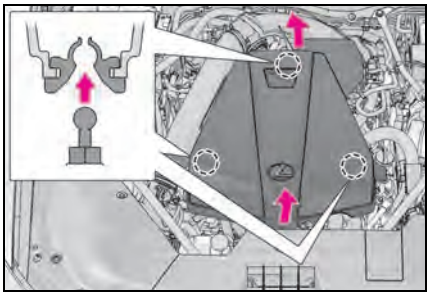


4 Remove the engine cover.

▶ LC500



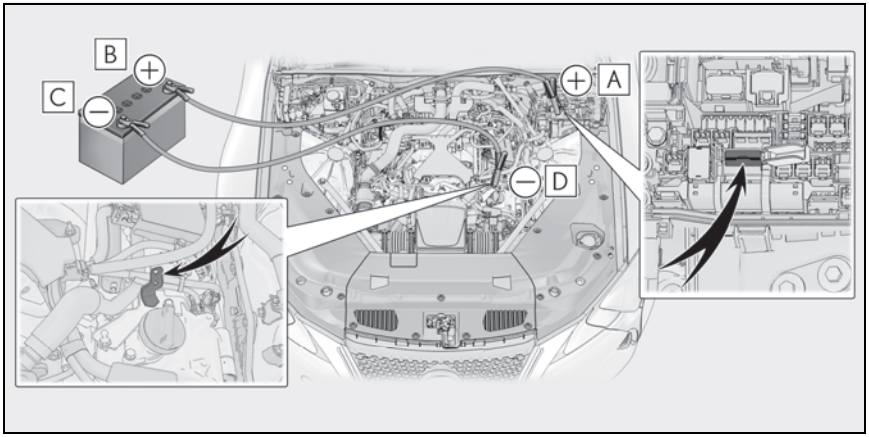
▶ LC500h



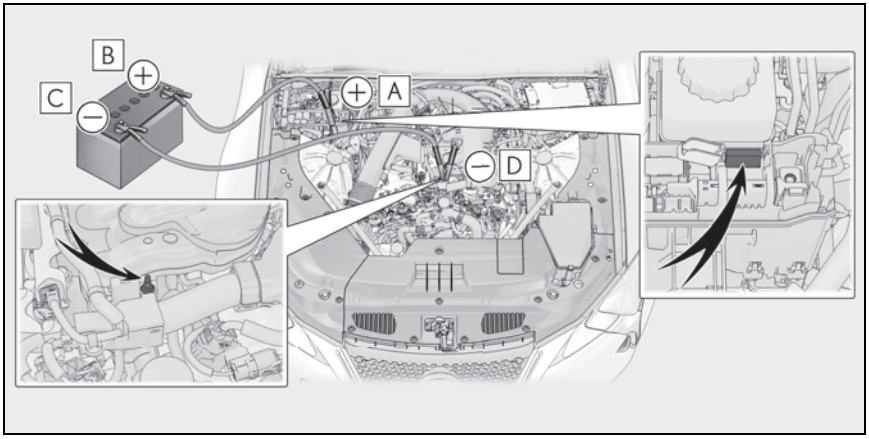
5 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to A on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to B on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to C on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to D.

Use jumper cables that can reach the specified terminals and connecting point.

▶ LC500



▶ LC500h



A Exclusive jump starting terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Metallic point shown in the illustration

6 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery of your vehicle.

7 Open and close any of the door of your vehicle with the engine switch <power switch> off.

8 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine

<hybrid system> of your vehicle by turning the engine switch <power switch> to ON.

9 Once the vehicle's engine <hybrid system> has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

10 Close the exclusive jump starting terminal cover, and reinstall the fuse box cover and engine cover to its original position.

Once the engine <hybrid system> starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine <hybrid system> when the 12-volt battery is discharged

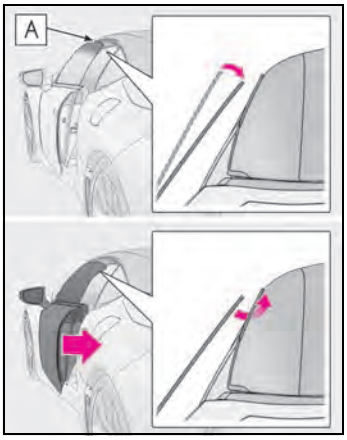
The engine <hybrid system> cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine <hybrid system> is stopped.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ When the battery is removed or discharged

- Convertible: Side window open/close function linked to door operation does not operate. When closing the side window, slowly close the side window while pushing the upper portion A of the side window inside the soft top roof.



- Information stored in the ECU is cleared. When the battery is depleted, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
- Some systems may require initialization. (→P.459)

■ When removing the 12-volt battery terminals

When the 12-volt battery terminals are removed, the information stored in the ECU is cleared. Before removing the 12-volt battery terminals, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Charging the 12-volt battery

The electricity stored in the 12-volt battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the 12-volt battery may discharge, and the engine <hybrid system> may be unable to start. (The 12-volt battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ When recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery

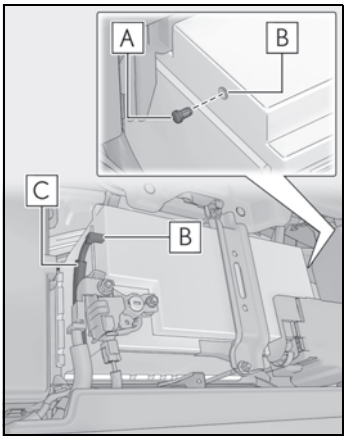
- Convertible: Immediately after replacing the battery, fully open or close the soft top roof, as the luggage cover may be half-opened.
- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the 12-volt battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote

control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.

- The engine <hybrid system> may not start on the first attempt after the 12-volt battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch <power switch> mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the 12-volt battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the 12-volt battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the 12-volt battery, turn the engine switch <power switch> off.
  If you are unsure what mode the engine switch <power switch> was in before the 12-volt battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
- If the 12-volt battery discharges, it may not be possible to shift the shift position to other positions.
  In this case, the vehicle cannot be towed without lifting both rear wheels because the rear wheels will be locked. (→P.386)

■ When replacing the 12-volt battery

- Use a Central Degassing type 12-volt battery (European Regulations).
- LC500: Use a 12-volt battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN4), 20 hour rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (80Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (685A) or greater.
  LC500h: Use a 12-volt battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN3), 20 hour rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (70Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (600A) or greater.
  - If the sizes differ, the 12-volt battery cannot be properly secured.
  - If the 20 hour rate capacity is low, even if the time period where the vehicle is not used is a short time, the 12-volt battery may discharge and engine <hybrid system> may not be able to start.
- Use a 12-volt battery with a handle. If a 12-volt battery without a handle is used, removal is more difficult.
- After exchanging, firmly attach the following items to the exhaust hole of the 12-volt battery.
  - Use the exhaust hose that was attached to the 12-volt battery before exchanging.
  - Use the exhaust hole plug included with the 12-volt battery exchanged or the one installed on the battery prior to the exchange. (Depending on the 12-volt battery to be exchanged, the exhaust hole may be plugged.)



A Exhaust hole plug

B Exhaust hole

C Exhaust hose

For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When removing the 12-volt battery terminals

Always remove the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal contacts any metal in the surrounding area when the positive (+) terminal is removed, a spark may occur, leading to a fire in addition to electrical shocks and death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ Avoiding 12-volt battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the 12-volt battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the 12-volt battery.
- If the 12-volt battery fluid level is excessively low (→P.356), do not use the 12-volt battery.

■ 12-volt battery precautions

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the 12-volt battery:

- When working with the 12-volt battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any 12-volt battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the 12-volt battery.
- In the event that 12-volt battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the 12-volt battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the 12-volt battery.

■ After recharging the 12-volt battery

Have the 12-volt battery inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. If the 12-volt battery is deteriorating, continued use may cause the 12-volt battery to emit a malodorous gas, which may be detrimental to the health of passengers.

■ When exchanging the 12-volt battery

After exchanging, securely attach the exhaust hose and exhaust hole plug to the exhaust hole of the exchanged 12-volt battery. If not properly installed, gases (hydrogen) may leak into the vehicle interior, and there is the possible danger of the gas igniting and exploding.

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fan or engine drive belt.

■ When connecting jumper cables

Make sure to connect jumper cables to the specified terminals and connecting point. Failure to do so may adversely affect the electronic devices or damage to them.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damaging the vehicle

The exclusive jump starting terminal is to be used when charging the 12-volt battery from another vehicle in an emergency. It cannot be used to jump start another vehicle.

If the soft top roof cannot be closed (Convertible)

If the soft top roof cannot be closed even though the roof switch is operated, check that all the operational conditions are met. (→P.164)

If all the operational conditions are met and the soft top roof cannot be closed, there may be a malfunction. Immediately have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

When "Opening Function Unavailable System Overheated" or "Function Temporarily Unavailable System Overheated" is displayed on the multi-information display, do not close the soft top roof manually. If the soft top roof is closed manually, the roof switch may not properly operates next time.

In this case, the soft top roof can be closed by the following procedure as an emergency measure, however, Lexus does not recommend it as this procedure requires specialized knowledge.

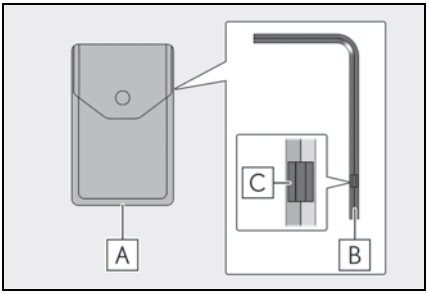
Before closing the soft top roof

- Two or more people are needed for this procedure and some steps requires a large force.
- There is a possibility to damage the vehicle when applying a strong force or removing the parts. Lexus recommends contacting your Lexus

dealer.

- When touching a place where a hand can not easily reach, wear gloves to protect your hands.
- Turn the engine switch off.
- The tool for manually closing the soft top roof is stored in the glove box. (→P.311)

Tool



A Tool bag

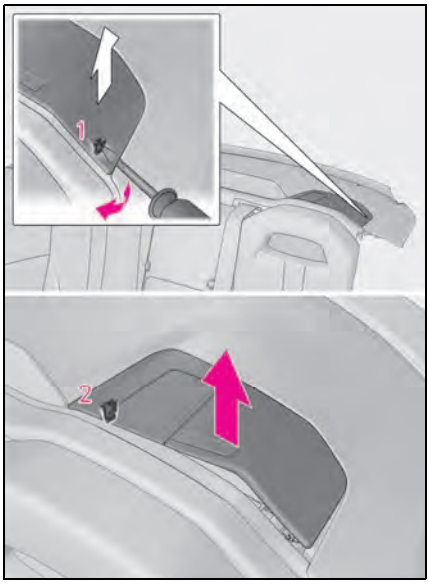
B Tool

C Groove

Closing the soft top roof

1 Press the All window control switch to fully open the side windows and rear quarter windows. (→P.159) If the switch does not operate, contact your Lexus dealer.

2 Remove the cover behind the rear left seat.

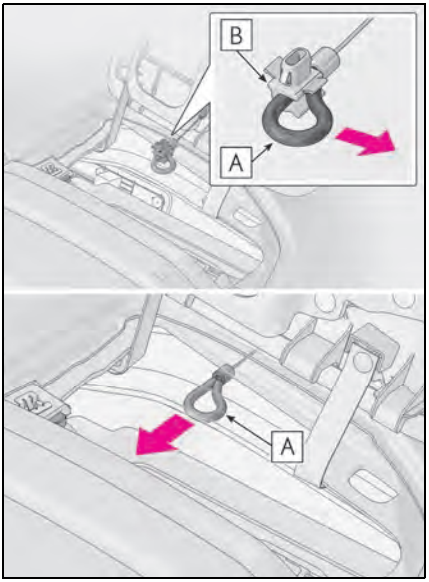


1 Remove the claw on the left side using the flathead screwdriver.

The flathead screwdriver is installed in the trunk.

2 Remove the claw on the right side.

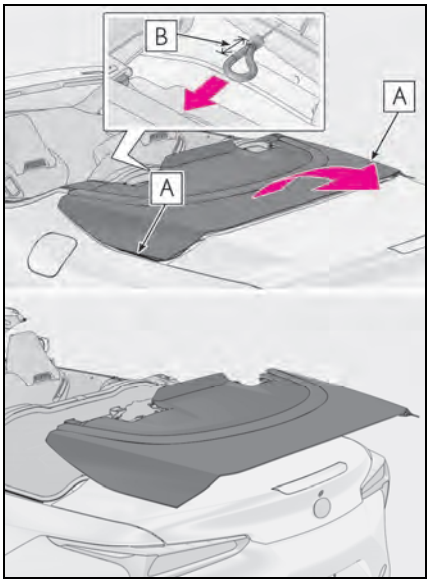
3 Take out the yellow ring [A] from the clamp [B] and pull it.



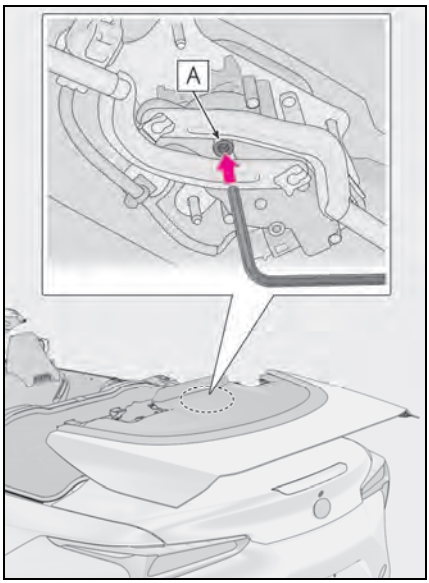
4 While pulling the yellow ring to unlock the luggage cover, hold the portions [A] of the luggage cover and lift it to the rear of the vehicle without tilting laterally.

If your hands are released while lifting the luggage cover, the luggage cover may shut, resulting in hands or arms being caught between the cover and vehicle.

After lifting the luggage cover up, attach the portion [B] between the red line and root of the yellow ring to the clamp.

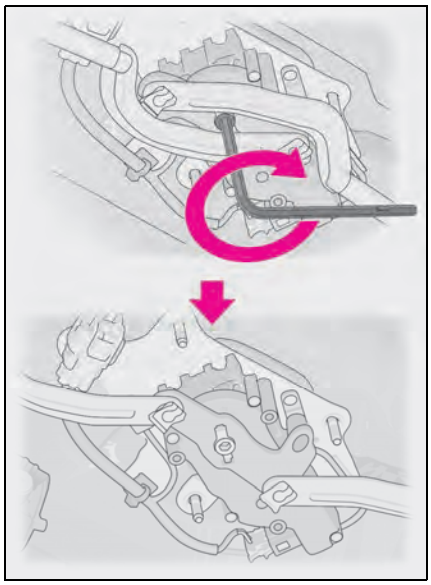


5 Insert the tool into the hole [A] on the center of the back side of the luggage cover.

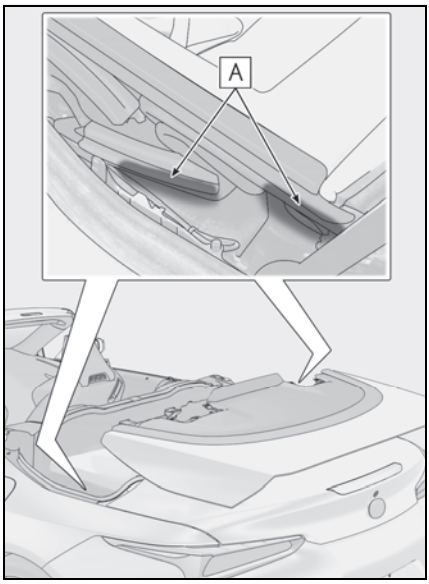


6 Rotate the tool until it no longer moves.

Rotate the tool again with applying more force to check that the tool has been completely rotated.



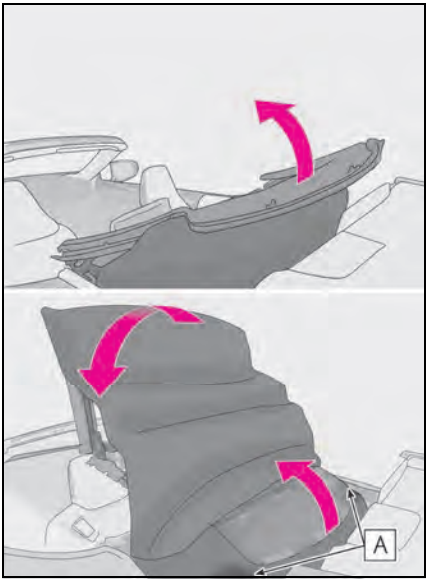
7 Hold the both right and left portions A of the stored soft top roof simultaneously.



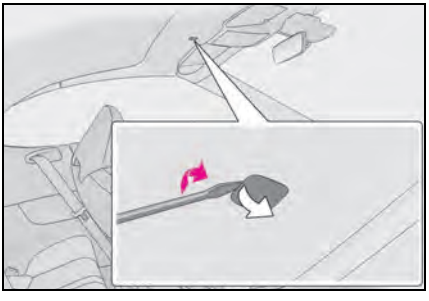
8 Lift up the soft top roof without tilting laterally, move it to the front of the vehicle, and close it.

After lifting up the soft top roof to the position shown in the illustration, lower the front part of the soft top roof holding the

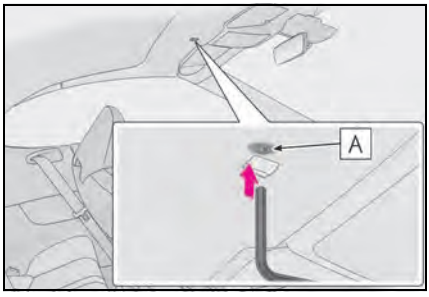
lower part A of the rear window.



9 Remove the cover inside the soft top roof using a flathead screwdriver.



10 Insert the tool into the hole A .

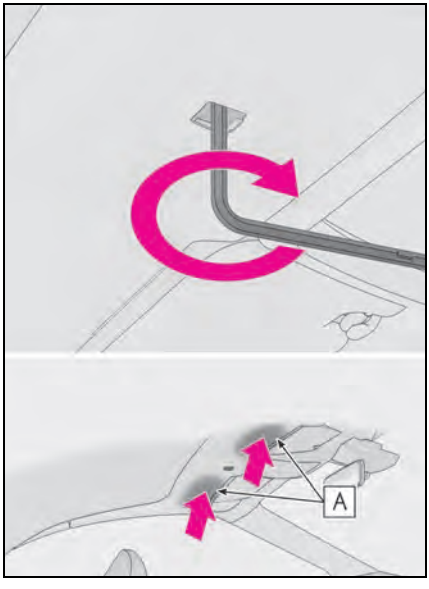


11 Rotate the tool until it no longer moves.

The front side of the soft top roof will be locked.

Push the inner side A of the soft top roof to check that the soft top roof is firmly locked and not raised.

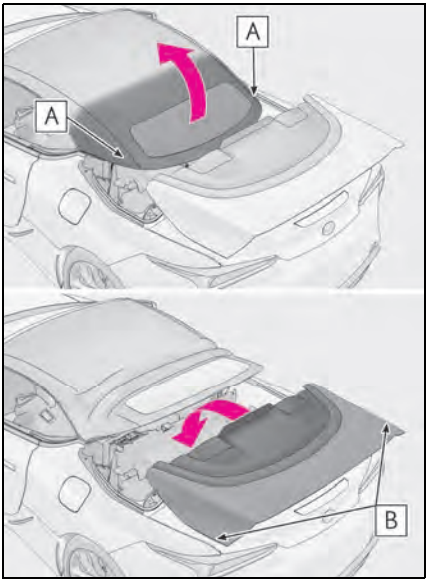
If the soft top roof is not firmly locked, it may be opened by wind pressure while driving.



12 While lifting the portion A of the under the rear window, hold the

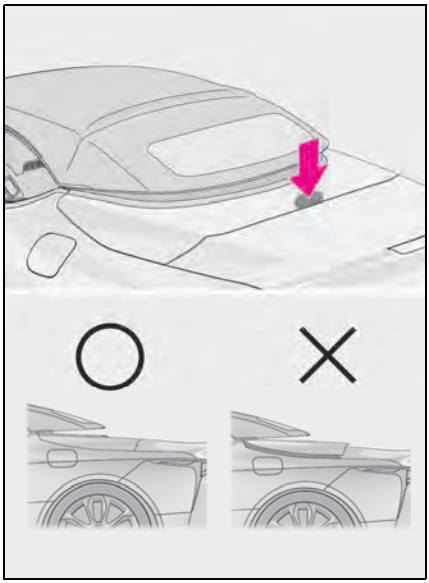
portion B of the luggage cover and move it to the front side of the vehicle and close it.

When closing the luggage cover, be careful that your hand or fingers is not caught in the luggage cover and vehicle.

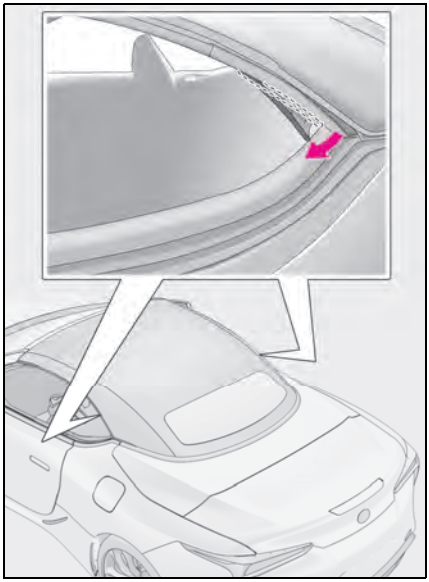


13 Lower the rear window and push the rear center of the luggage cover.

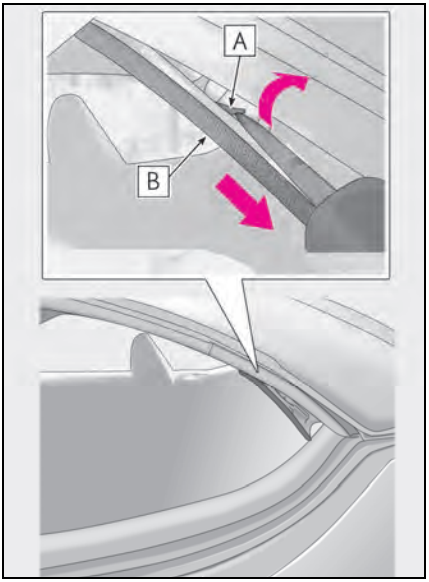
Check that there is no difference in height between the luggage cover and trunk and the luggage cover is properly closed.



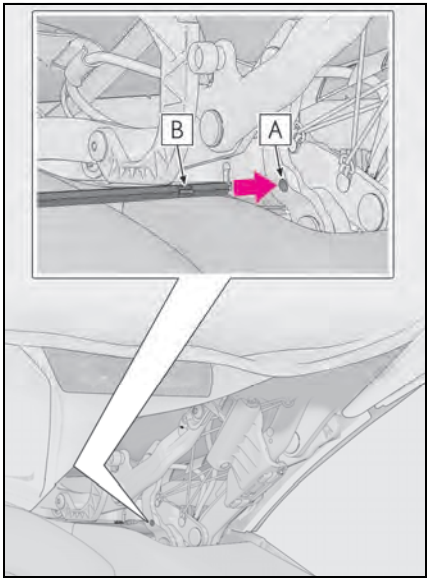
14 Turn the inside of the soft top roof.



15 Lift up the claw [A] using a flathead screwdriver, and pull the portion [B] backward of the vehicle.



16 Insert the tool edge with a groove [B] into the hole [A] until the tool stops.

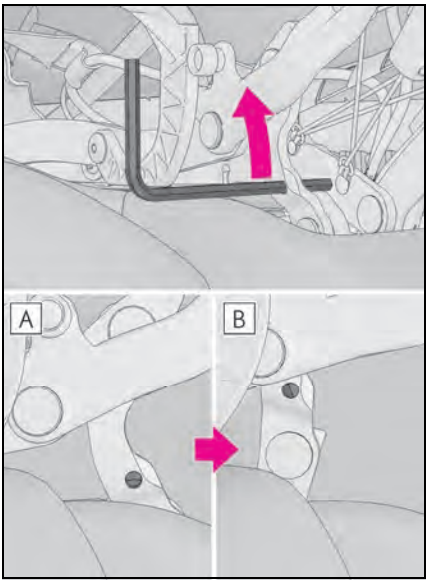


17 Push the tool backward to a slanting side at the rear of the vehicle until it no longer moves.

A large force is required to move the tool.

The tool will move from the position [A] to

the position B in the illustration.



18 Turn the engine switch to ON and check that "Soft Top Operation Not Completed" is not displayed on the multi-information display.

If the message is displayed, check the steps **6**, **11** and **17** have been completed.

19 Reinsert the parts that were removed in the steps **2**, **9** and **15**.

The parts removed in the step **2** cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

■ Parts removed during the manual closing procedure

Keep any parts removed during the procedure inside the vehicle and take all removed parts and the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ When manually closing the soft top roof

Observe the following precautions:

- Stop the vehicle on a flat surface in a safe place.
- Set the parking brake and shift the shift position to P.
- Ensure that there are no occupants inside the vehicle.
- Do not perform this procedure while there are strong winds blowing.
- Turn the engine switch off.
- Be careful not to catch any part of your body or clothing in the moving parts.
- Some parts of this procedure may result in an injury if performed with bare hands. Protect your hands with gloves or a piece of cloth when performing the procedure.

If your vehicle overheats (LC500)

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

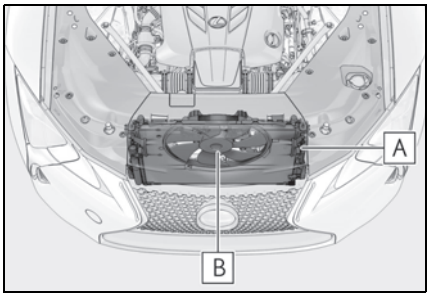
- The engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.108) is in the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

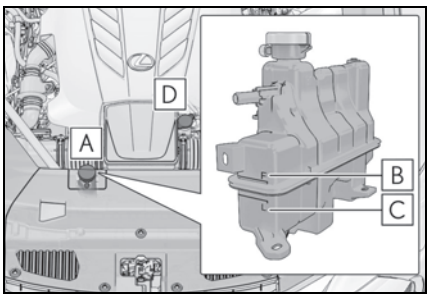


A Radiator

B Cooling fan

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.



A Reservoir

B "F" line

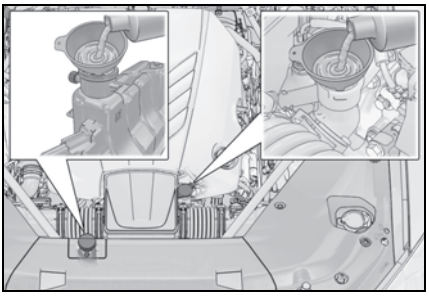
C "L" line

D Coolant inlet cap

5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if

coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

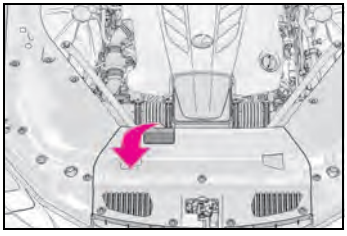
The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fan is not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fan is operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

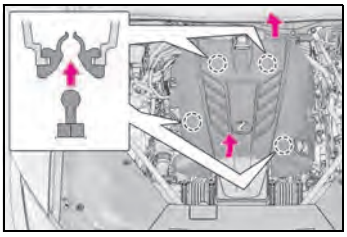
■ When adding coolant

Add coolant in accordance with the following procedure.

1 Remove the service cover.



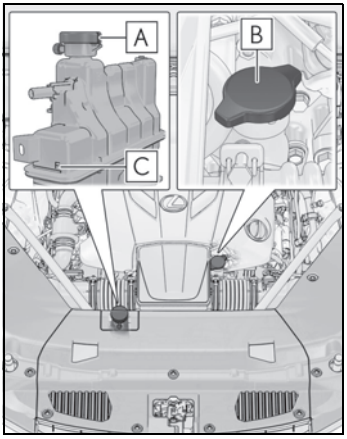
2 Remove the engine cover.



3 Remove the caps A and B .

4 Add coolant through the inlet of the cap A up to the "F" line C , and then replace the cap A .

5 Add coolant through the inlet of the cap B until it is full, and then replace the cap B .



WARNING

■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.

WARNING

- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fan and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- While the engine and radiator are hot, do not loosen or remove the coolant inlet cap or coolant reservoir cap. High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If your vehicle overheats (LC500h)

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.108) is in the red zone or a loss of hybrid system power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" or "Hybrid System Overheated Output Power Reduced" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

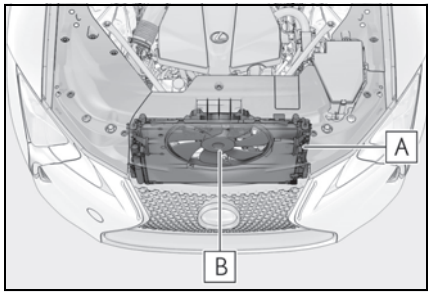
Correction procedures

▶ If the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the hybrid system.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and cooling system for leaks.

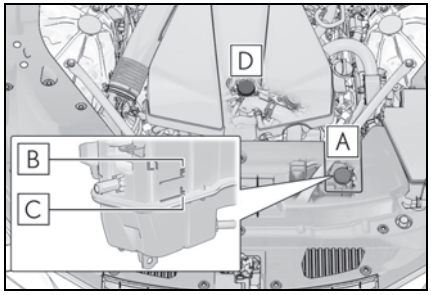


A Radiator

B Cooling fan

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.



A Reservoir

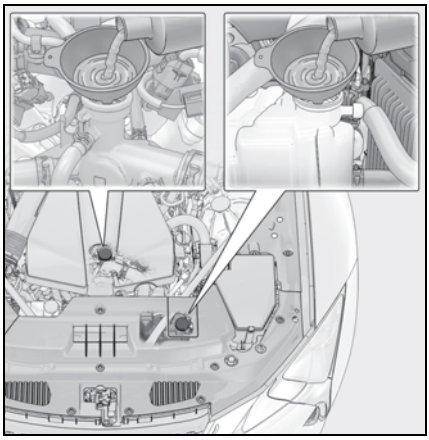
B "F" line

C "L" line

D Coolant inlet cap

5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the hybrid system and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

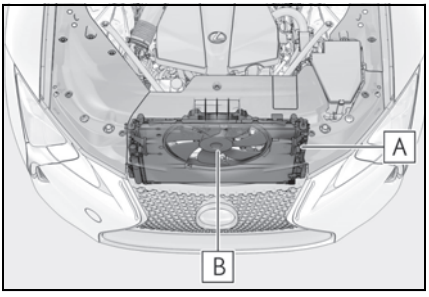
7 If the fan is not operating:
Stop the hybrid system immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fan is operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

▶ If "Hybrid System Overheated Output Power Reduced" is shown on the multi-information display

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

2 Stop the hybrid system and carefully lift the hood.

3 After the hybrid system has cooled down, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

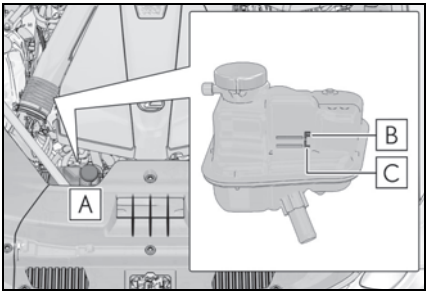


A Radiator

B Cooling fan

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F"/"FULL" and "L"/"LOW" lines on the reservoir.



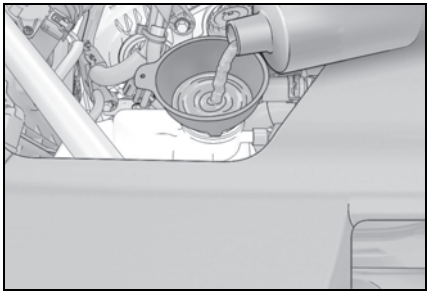
A Reservoir

B "F"/"FULL" line

C "L"/"LOW" line

5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if power control unit coolant is unavailable.



6 After stopping the hybrid system and waiting for 5 minutes or more, start the hybrid system again and check if "Hybrid System Overheated Output Power Reduced" is shown on the multi-information display.

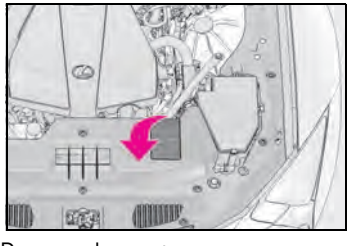
If the message does not disappear:
Stop the hybrid system and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the message is not displayed:
The hybrid system temperature has dropped and the vehicle may be driven normally.
However, if the message appears again frequently, contact your Lexus dealer.

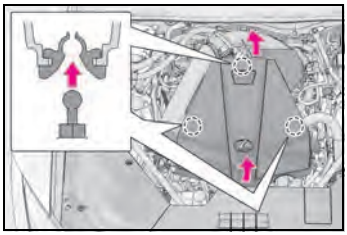
When adding engine coolant

Add coolant in accordance with the following procedure.

1 Remove the service cover.



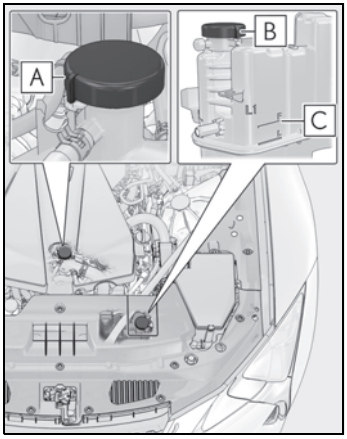
2 Remove the engine cover.



3 Remove the caps A and B .

4 Add coolant through the inlet of the cap B up to the "F" line C , and then replace the cap B .

5 Add coolant through the inlet of the cap A until it is full, and then replace the cap A .



WARNING

■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- After the hybrid system has been turned off, check that the "READY" indicator is off.
  When the hybrid system is operating, the gasoline engine may automatically start, or the cooling fan may suddenly operate even if the gasoline engine stops. Do not touch or approach rotating parts such as the fan, which may lead to fingers or clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) getting caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the coolant inlet cap or coolant reservoir caps while the hybrid system and radiator are hot.
  High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine/power control unit coolant

Add coolant slowly after the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot hybrid system too quickly can cause damage to the hybrid system.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

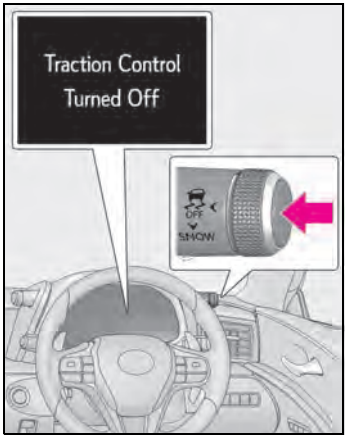
Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedures

1. Stop the engine <hybrid system>. Set the parking brake and shift the shift position to P.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine <hybrid system>.
5. Shift the shift position to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press the OFF SNOW switch to turn off TRC.



WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift position

Be careful not to shift the shift position with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the rear wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

Vehicle specifications

8

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 436

Fuel information 446

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 447

8-3. Items to initialize

Items to initialize 459

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length		4760 mm (187.4 in.)
Overall width		1920 mm (75.6 in.)
Overall height*	Except Convertible	1345 mm (53.0 in.)
	Convertible	1350 mm (53.1 in.)
Wheelbase		2870 mm (113.0 in.)
Tread*	Front	1630 mm (64.2 in.)
	Rear	1635 mm (64.4 in.)

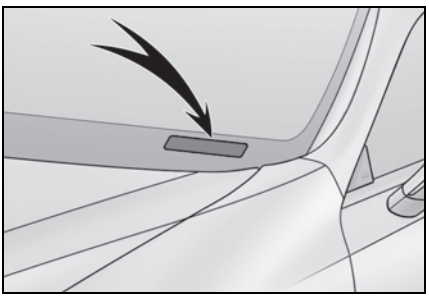
*: Unladen vehicle

Vehicle identification

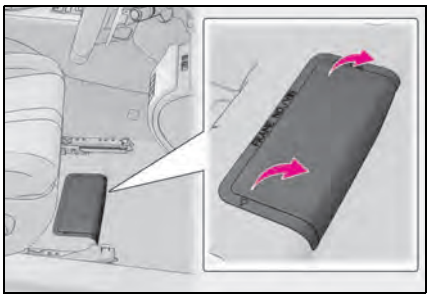
■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.

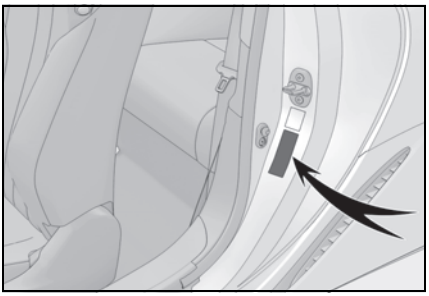


This number is also stamped under the right-hand front seat.

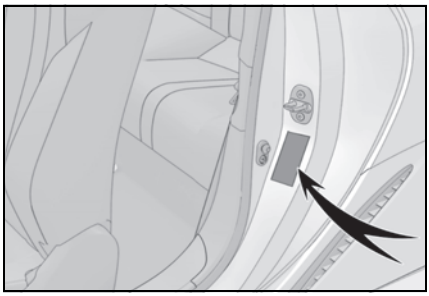


This number is also on the manufacturer's label.

▶ Except Convertible



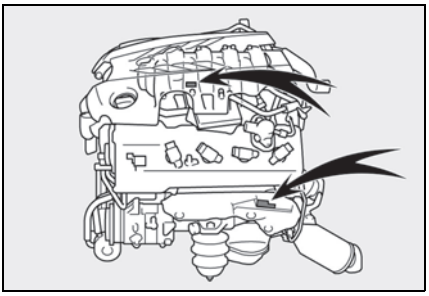
▶ Convertible



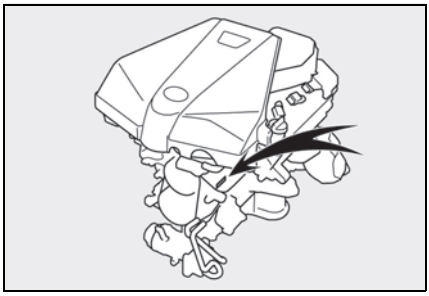
■ **Engine number**

The engine number is located as shown.

▶ LC500



▶ LC500h



Engine

▶ LC500

Model	2UR-GSE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 89.5 mm (3.70 × 3.52 in.)
Displacement	4969 cm^3 (303.2 cu. in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

▶ LC500h

Model	8GR-FXS
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.)

Displacement	3456 cm^3 (210.9 cu.in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type		Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	LC500	98 or higher*
	LC500h	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)		82 L (21.7 gal., 18.0 Imp.gal.)

*: If unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 98 is not available, unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

Electric motor (traction motor) (LC500h)

Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Maximum output	131.9 kW
Maximum torque	300 N•m (30.6 kgf•m, 221.3 ft•lbf)

Hybrid battery (traction battery) (LC500h)

Type	Lithium-ion battery
Voltage	3.7 V/cell
Capacity	4.3 Ah
Quantity	84 cells
Nominal voltage	310.8 V

Lubrication system

▶ LC500

■ Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])

With filter	8.6 L (9.1 qt., 7.6 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	7.9 L (8.4 qt., 7.0 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. When actually adding the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is between the low level mark and refill upper limit mark. (→P.350) Warm up and turn off the engine, wait about 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

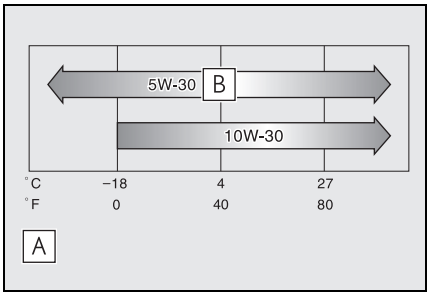
5W-30 and 10W-30:

API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving", SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving" or SP "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC GF-6A multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 5W-30 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

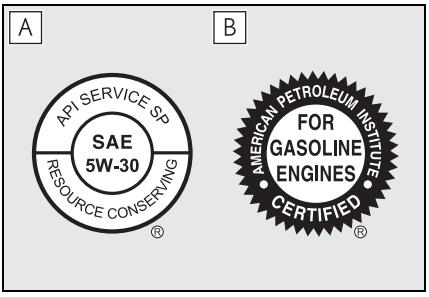
B Preferred

Oil viscosity (5W-30 is explained here as an example):

- The 5W in 5W-30 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SP" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: "SAE 5W-30" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

▶ LC500h

■ **Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])**

With filter	5.7 L (6.0 qt., 5.0 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	5.5 L (5.8 qt., 4.8 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. When actually adding the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is between the low level mark and refill upper limit mark. (→P.350) Warm up engine and turn off the hybrid system, wait about 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ **Engine oil selection**

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

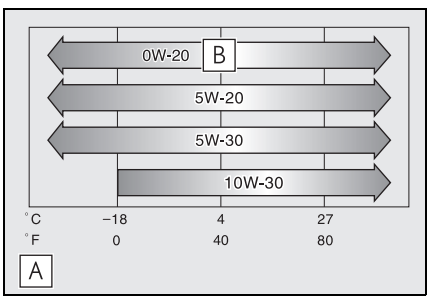
0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:

API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving", SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving" or SP "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC GF-6A multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

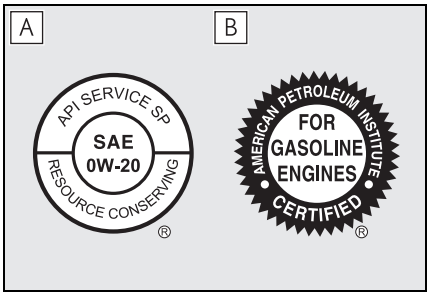
B Preferred

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SP" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*	LC500	12.1 L (12.8 qt., 10.6 Imp.qt.)
	LC500h	▶ Gasoline engine 10.9 L (11.5qt., 9.6 Imp.qt.) ▶ Power control unit 2.3 L (2.4qt., 2.0 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

Ignition system

■ Spark plug

	LC500	LC500h
Make	DENSO FK20HBR-J8	DENSO FK20HBR8
Gap	0.8 mm (0.031 in.)	0.8 mm (0.031 in.)

NOTICE

■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

■ 12-volt battery

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 or higher
Charging rates	5 A max.

Automatic transmission (LC500)

Fluid capacity*	▶ Without air-cooled fluid cooler 8.8 L (9.3 qt., 7.7 Imp. qt.) ▶ With air-cooled fluid cooler 9.0 L (9.5 qt., 7.9 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than the above type may cause abnormal noise or vibration, or damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Hybrid transmission (LC500h)

Fluid capacity*	6.9 L (7.3 qt., 6.1 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ Hybrid transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than the above type may cause abnormal noise or vibration, or ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Differential

Oil capacity	0.85 L (0.90 qt., 0.75 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	▶ Without LSD (Limited Slip Differential) Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent* ▶ With LSD (Limited Slip Differential) Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent*

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1	132 mm (5.2 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1.0—6.0 mm (0.04—0.24 in.)
Brake pad wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)

Parking brake indicator *2	When pushing the parking brake switch for 1 to 4 seconds: comes on When pulling the parking brake switch for 1 to 4 seconds: turns off
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3, SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 500 N (51.0 kgf, 112.4 lbf) while the engine is running <hybrid system is operating>.
When performing the brake pedal inspection, also be sure to check that the brake system warning light is not illuminated when the hybrid system is operating. (If the brake system warning light is illuminated, refer to P.391)

*2: Make sure to confirm that the brake system warning light (yellow) does not illuminate. (If the brake system warning light illuminates, refer to P.394)

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels

Tire size	Front tires: 245/40RF21 96Y Rear tires: 275/35RF21 99Y	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front and rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 220 km/h (137 mph)	300 (3.0, 44)
	220 km/h (137 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	Front wheels: 21 × 8 1/2J Rear wheels: 21 × 9 1/2J	
Wheel bolt torque	140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf)	

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Interior	Vanity lights	2	Double end bulbs

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

LC500:

Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 98 or higher for optimum engine performance.
If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.
The use of such gasoline may cause the engine to knock or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. To avoid this, refill the tank with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.

LC500h:

Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.
If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91. In this case, engine performance may be decreased.

Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed by using the meter control switches, the Center Display or at your Lexus dealer.

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing by using the meter control switches

1 Press ◄ or ► of the meter control switches, select ⚙.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches, select the item, and press "OK".

3 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches, select the desired setting, and press "OK".

To go back to the previous screen or exit the customize mode, press ↩.

■ Changing using the Center Display

1 Select ⚙ on the main menu.

2 Select "Vehicle customize" on the sub menu.

For functions that can be turned on/off, select (on) / (off).

For functions whose level can be adjusted, such as volume, sensor sensitivity, etc., slide the icon on the bar.

■ When customizing using the Center Display

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift position to P. Also, to prevent 12-volt battery discharge, leave the engine running <hybrid system operating> while customizing the features.

⚠ WARNING

■ During customization

As the engine <hybrid system> needs to be running <operating> during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running <hybrid system is operating> while customizing features.

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

A Settings that can be changed using the Center Display

B Settings that can be changed using the meter control switches

C Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, — = Not available

■ **Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P.102, 108, 112)**

Function[*1]	Customized setting	A	B	C
Language	• English • French • Spanish • Simplified Chinese • Korean	—	O	—
Units	• L/100 km • km/L	O	O	—
Eco Driving Indicator Light[*2]	• On (Self-lighting) • Off	—	O	—
EV indicator[*3]	• On (Self-lighting) • Off	—	O	—
Drive information 1	[*4]	—	O	—
Drive information 2	[*4]	—	O	—
Pop-up display	• On • Off	—	O	—
Ring position memory	• On • Off	—	O	—
Rev indicator	• On • Off	—	O	—
Rev indicator red zone setting	• 2000 - 7300 r/min[*2] • 2000 - 6600 r/min[*3]	—	O	—
Rev peak	• On • Off	—	O	—
Suggestion function	• On • On (when the vehicle is stopped) • Off	O	—	O

[*1]: For details about each function: →P.108, 116

[*2]: LC500

*3: LC500h

*4: 2 of the following items: current fuel consumption, average fuel economy (after reset), average fuel economy (after start), average fuel economy (after refuel), average vehicle speed (after reset), average vehicle speed (after start), elapsed time (after reset), elapsed time (after start), distance (driving range), distance (after start), blank.

■ HUD (Head-up Display)*1 (→P.118)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Gauge information	• Tachometer • Eco Driving Indicator Light*2 • Hybrid System Indicator*3 • No display	—	○	—
Driving support display (Navigation system)	• On • Off	—	○	—
Driving support display (Lane display)	• On • Off	—	○	—
Driving support display (Driving assist)	• On • Off	—	○	—
Driving support display (Compass)	• On • Off	—	○	—
Driving support display (Audio)	• On • Off	—	○	—

*1: If equipped

*2: LC500

*3: LC500h

■ LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (→P.239)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lane centering function	• On • Off	—	○	—
Alert sensitivity	• Standard • High	—	○	—

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Vehicle sway warning	• On • Off	—	○	—
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	• Low • Standard • High	—	○	—

■ PCS (Pre-Collision System) (→P.229)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
PCS (Pre-Collision System)*	• On • Off	—	○	—
Adjust alert timing	• Early • Middle • Late	—	○	—

*: The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON.

■ RSA (Road Sign Assist) (→P.248)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
RSA (Road Sign Assist)*1	• On • Off	—	○	—
Excess speed notification method*2	• Display only • Display and buzzer • No notification	—	○	—
Excess speed notification level	• 1 km/h (1 mph) • 3 km/h (2 mph) • 5 km/h (3 mph)	—	○	—

*1: The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch <power switch> is turned to ON.

*2: If a Speed limit with supplemental mark is exceeded, the notification buzzer does not operate.

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.251)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Curve speed reduction function	• High • Low • Off	—	○	—
Dynamic Radar Cruise Control with Road Sign Assist	• On • Off	—	○	—

■ **BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (→P.271)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	• On • Off	—	○	—
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)	• On • Off	—	○	—
Outside rear view mirror indicator brightness	• Bright • Dim	—	○	—
Alert timing for presence of approaching vehicle (sensitivity)*	•  (Early) •  (Intermediate) •  (Late) •  (Only when in blind spot)	—	○	—
RCTA buzzer volume	• Level 1 - Level 3	—	○	—

*: BSM function only

■ **Active rear wing* (→P.280)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operation of the active rear wing	• On • Off	—	○	○

*: If equipped

■ Door lock (→P.132, 136, 410)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Unlocking using a mechanical key	• Driver's door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps • Both side doors unlocked in one step	—	—	○
Speed linked door locking function	• On • Off	○	—	○
Shift position linked door locking function	• On • Off	○	—	○
Shift position linked door unlocking function	• On • Off	○	—	○
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	• On • Off	○	—	○
Locking/unlocking of the trunk when both side doors are locked/unlocked	• On • Off	—	—	○
Time elapsed before the door lock indicator lights turn off	• 30 seconds • 1 minute • 10 minutes • 20 minutes	—	—	○

■ Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.130, 140)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operating signal (Buzzers)	• Level 0 (Off) - Level 7	○	—	○
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	• On • Off	○	—	○
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	• 30 seconds • 60 seconds • 120 seconds	—	—	○
Open door warning buzzer	• On • Off	—	—	○

■ **Smart entry & start system (→P.140)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Smart entry & start system	• On • Off	○	—	○
Smart door unlocking	• Driver's door • Both side doors	○	—	○
Number of consecutive door lock operations	• 2 times • As many as desired	—	—	○

■ **Wireless remote control (→P.130)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wireless remote control	• On • Off	—	—	○
Unlocking operation	• Driver's door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps • Both side doors unlocked in one step	○	—	○
Trunk unlocking operation	• One short press • Push twice • Press and hold (short) • Press and hold (long) • Off	—	—	○
Alarm (panic mode)	• On • Off	—	—	○

■ **Driving position memory (→P.148)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Selecting the door linking driving position memory with door unlock operation	• Driver's door • Both side doors	—	—	○

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat slide movement when exiting the vehicle	• Full • Partial • Off	○	—	○
Steering wheel movement	• Tilt only • Telescopic only • Tilt & telescopic • Off	○	—	○

■ **Outside rear view mirrors (→P.156)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Automatic mirror folding and extending operation	• Linked to the locking/unlocking of the doors • Linked to operation of the power switch • Off	—	—	○

■ **Power windows (→P.159)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Mechanical key linked operation	• On • Off	—	—	○
Wireless remote control linked operation	• On • Off	—	—	○
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)	• On • Off	—	—	○

■ **Turn signal lever (→P.206)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	• 3 • 5 • 7 • Off	—	—	○

■ Automatic light control system (→P.212)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Light sensor sensitivity	• Brighter • Bright • Normal • Dark • Darker	○	—	○
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn on	• Standard • Long	—	—	○
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	• 30 seconds • 60 seconds • 90 seconds • Off	○	—	○

■ Lights (→P.212)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Welcome light illumination control	• On • Off	—	—	○

■ Automatic air conditioning system (→P.298)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	• On • Off	○	—	○
A/C auto switch operation	• On • Off	○	—	○
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	• -3 to 3	○	—	○

■ Seat heater/seat ventilators (→P.305)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	• -2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	—	○
Passenger's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	• -2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	—	○

■ **Heated steering wheel*** (→P.305)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Steering wheel heating preference in automatic mode	• -2 (low) to 2 (high)	○	—	○

*: If equipped

■ **Illumination** (→P.308)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	• 7.5 seconds • 15 seconds • 30 seconds • Off	○	—	○
Operation after the engine switch <power switch> is turned off	• On • Off	—	—	○
Operation when the doors are unlocked	• On • Off	—	—	○
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	• On • Off	—	—	○
Footwell lighting	• On • Off	—	—	○
Door trim ornament lights	• On • Off	—	—	○
Time elapsed before the outside door handle lights turn off	• 7.5 seconds • 15 seconds • 30 seconds • Off	○	—	○
Operation of the outside door handle lights when the doors are unlocked	• On • Off	—	—	○
Operation of the outside door handle lights when a door is opened	• On • Off	—	—	○
Fading out of the outside door handle lights when they turn off	• Long • Short	—	—	○

■ Alarm (→P.97)

Function	Default setting	A	B	C
Cancellation when the mechanical key is used to unlock	• On • Off	—	—	○

■ Rain-sensing windshield wipers (→P.217)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wiper operation when the wiper switch is in the AUTO position	• Rain-sensing operation • Intermittent operation linked to vehicle speed (with interval adjuster)	—	—	○

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.264)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lexus parking assist-sensor	• On • Off	—	○	—
Buzzer volume	• Level 1 - Level 3	—	○	○

■ Driving mode select switch (→P.263)

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Powertrain control in custom mode	• Normal • Power • Eco	○	—	—
Chassis control in custom mode	• Normal • Sport • Comfort	○	—	—
Air conditioning operation in custom mode	• Normal • Eco	○	—	—

■ Vehicle customization

● When the speed-detecting automatic door lock and shift-linked automatic door lock are both on, the door lock operates as follows.

- When shifting the shift position to any position other than P, both side doors will be locked.
- If the vehicle is started with both side doors locked, the speed-detecting automatic door lock will not operate.
- If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed-detecting automatic door lock will operate.

● When the smart entry & start system is off, the entry unlock function cannot be customized.

- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operation buzzer volume and operational signal (Emergency flashers) function setting.
- Some settings can be changed using a switch or the Center Display. If a setting is changed using a switch, the changed setting will not be reflected on the Center Display until the engine switch <power switch> is turned off and then to ON.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the 12-volt battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of the items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system	• When rotating the tires. • When the tire inflation pressure is changed by changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures) • After registering the ID codes. • When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed.	P.360
Power windows	• When functioning abnormally	P.160
Lexus parking assist monitor	• The steering wheel has been moved while the 12-volt battery was being reinstalled. • 12-volt battery power is low.	Refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".
Oil maintenance (LC500h)	• After the maintenance is performed	P.351

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 462
Alphabetical index 465

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.409)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.409)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P.375)
- Is the engine switch <power switch> in ON?

When locking the doors, turn the engine switch <power switch> off. (→P.185, 189)

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?

When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.142)



The trunk lid is closed with the electronic key left inside

- The function to prevent the electronic key from being left inside the trunk will operate and you can open the trunk as usual. Take the key out from the trunk. (→P.138)

If you think something is wrong



The engine <hybrid system> does not start

- Did you press the engine switch <power switch> while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.183, 186)
- Is the shift position in P? (→P.192, 199)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.140)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?

In this case, the engine <hybrid system> can be started in a temporary way. (→P.411)

- Is the 12-volt battery discharged? (→P.412)



The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches (except Convertible)

- Is the window lock switch pressed?

The power window at the passenger's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.162)



The side windows or rear quarter windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches (Convertible)

- Is the window lock switch pressed?

The windows other than the side window at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.162)



The engine switch <power switch> is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACC or ON (the engine is not running <hybrid system is not operating>) for a period of time. (→P.185, 189)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

Are the driver and the passengers wearing the seat belts? (→P.395)

- The parking brake indicator is on

Is the parking brake released? (→P.207)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.391, 399)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle during setting the alarm?

The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P.97)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch <power switch> to ON or start the engine <hybrid system>.



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?

Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.399)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P.391, 399.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Slow down the vehicle, drive with extra caution, and take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer as soon as

possible to have the tire replaced. (→P.405)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.434)

Alphabetical index

A

A/C 298
Air conditioning filter 373
Automatic air conditioning system ... 298
Pollen removal mode 302
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 284
Function 284
Warning light 392
ACA (Active Cornering Assist) 285
Active Cornering Assist (ACA) 285
Active rear wing 280
Active roll bar 54
Package tray 56
Adaptive Variable Suspension System (AVS) 285
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 214
Airbags 38, 46
Airbag operating conditions 40, 48
Airbag precautions for your child 42, 49
Correct driving posture 31
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 40
Curtain shield airbag precautions 42
General airbag precautions 42, 49
Locations of airbags 38, 46
Modification and disposal of airbags 45, 51
Side airbag operating conditions 40, 48
Side airbag precautions 42, 49
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 40
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 42
SRS airbags 38, 46
SRS warning light 392
Air conditioning filter 373
Air conditioning system 298
Air conditioning filter 373
Automatic air conditioning system ... 298
Alarm 97
Alarm 97
Warning buzzer 391
Anchor fitting 69, 81
Antennas (smart entry & start system) 140
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 284
Function 284
Warning light 392
Approach warning 257
Automatic headlight leveling system 213
Automatic light control system 212
Automatic transmission 192
M mode 198
Paddle shift switches 197, 198
Snow mode 197
Auxiliary net 311
Average fuel economy 113
Average vehicle speed 113
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) 285

B

Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 380
Battery (12-volt battery) 354
Battery checking 356
If the 12-volt battery is discharged 412
Preparing and checking before winter 293
Replacing 418
Warning light 391
Battery (traction battery) 90
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 271
Blind Spot Monitor function 273
Brake
Brake hold 210
Fluid 443
Parking brake 207
Regenerative braking 88
Warning light 391, 394
Warning message 400

Brake assist 284
Brake hold 210
Break-in tips 175
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control 111
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 271
Blind Spot Monitor function 273

C

Care 320, 324
Aluminum wheels 321
Exterior 320
Interior 324
Matte paint 332, 336, 338
Seat belts 325
Cargo and luggage 181
Cargo hooks 313
Chains 294
Child restraint systems 58, 70
Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor ...68, 80
Points to remember 59, 71
Riding with children 58
Types of child restraint system installation method 65, 77
Using an anchor fitting 69, 81
Child safety 58
12-volt battery precautions 355, 419
Airbag precautions 42, 49
Child restraint systems 58, 70
Heated steering wheel and seat heater precautions 305
How your child should wear the seat belt 34
Installing child restraints 60, 72
Power window lock switch 162
Power window precautions 161
Seat belt precautions 67, 79
Trunk precautions 136
Cleaning 320, 324
Aluminum wheels 321
Artificial leather 330
Exterior 320
Interior 324
Radar sensor 224, 272
Seat belts 325
Coat hooks 317
Condenser 353
Console box 312
Console box light 312
Coolant
Capacity 441
Checking 351
Preparing and checking before winter 293
Cooling system 351
Engine overheating 428, 430
Hybrid system overheating 430
Cornering lights 213
Cruise control
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 251
Cup holder 312
Current fuel consumption 113
Curtain shield airbags 38
Customizable features 447

D

Daytime running light system 212
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors 299
Rear window 299
Windshield 299
Differential 443
Dimension 436
Display
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 271
Drive information 113
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 251

Head-up display 118
Lexus parking assist 264
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 244
Multi-information display 112
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 275
Warning message 399
Distance 113
Do-it-yourself maintenance 341
Door courtesy lights 308
Door lock
Door lock indicator 135
Doors 132
Smart entry & start system 140
Wireless remote control 130
Door pockets 311
Doors 132
Automatic door locking and unlocking system 135
Door glasses 159
Door lock indicator 135
Door lock 132
Open door warning buzzer 134
Outside rear view mirrors 156
Double locking system 96
Drive info 1/Drive info 2 113
Drive information 113
Driver's seat position memory 148
Driving position memory 148
Memory recall function 150
Power easy access system 148
Drive-start control 175
Driving 174
Break-in tips 175
Correct driving posture 31
Driving mode select switch 263
Hybrid electric vehicle driving tips 291
Procedures 174
Winter drive tips 293
Driving assist systems 284
Driving mode select switch 263
Driving position memory
Power easy access system 148
DRS (Dynamic Rear Steering) 285
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 251
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 259
Warning message 261
Dynamic Rear Steering (DRS) 285

E

ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System) 284
Eco drive mode 263
Eco Driving Indicator 106
Eco Driving Indicator Light 106
EDR (Event data recorder) 8
Elapsed time 113
Electric motor (traction motor) 87
Electric Power Steering (EPS)
Function 285
Warning light 392
Electronically Controlled Brake System (ECB) 284
Electronic key 128
Battery-saving function 142
If the electronic key does not operate properly 410
Replacing the battery 375
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds 391
If a warning light turns on 391
If a warning message is displayed 399
If the 12-volt battery is discharged 412
If the electronic key does not operate properly 410
If the engine will not start 406
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 409
If the hybrid system will not start 407
If the soft top roof cannot be closed 420

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising....383
If you have a flat tire....405
If you lose your keys....409
If you think something is wrong....389
If your vehicle becomes stuck....434
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....382
If your vehicle needs to be towed....385
If your vehicle overheats....428, 430
Emergency brake signal....285
Emergency flashers....382
Engine
ACCESSORY mode....185, 189
Compartment....347
Engine switch....183
Fuel pump shut off system....390
Hood....345
How to start the engine....183
How to start the hybrid system....186
Identification number....437
If the engine will not start....406
If the hybrid system will not start....407
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....382
Ignition switch (engine switch)....183
Ignition switch (power switch)....186
Overheating....428, 430
Power switch....186
Engine coolant....351
Capacity....441
Checking....351
Preparing and checking before winter....293
Engine coolant temperature gauge....108
Engine immobilizer system....95
Engine oil....348
Capacity....439
Checking....348
Oil level warning message....402
Oil pressure warning light....391
Preparing and checking before winter....293
Engine oil maintenance data....351
Engine oil temperature gauge....108
Engine switch (power switch)....183, 186
Auto power off function....185, 189
Changing the engine switch (power switch) modes....185, 189
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....382
Starting the engine (hybrid system) 183, 186
EPS (Electric Power Steering)....285
Function....285
Warning light....392
EV drive mode....190
Event data recorder (EDR)....8
EV indicator....88
Exhaust gas precautions....57

F

First-aid kit storage belt....313
Fixed rear wing....283
Flat tire....405
Tire pressure warning system....359
Floor mats....30
Fluid
Automatic transmission....442
Brake....443
Hybrid transmission....443
Washer....353
Footwell light....308
Front position lights
Replacing light bulbs....380
Switch....212
Welcome light illumination control....213
Front seats....146
Adjustment....146
Cleaning....324
Correct driving posture....31

Driving position memory 148
Head restraints 152
Jam protection function 148
Memory recall function 150
Power easy access system 148
Seat heaters 305
Seat position memory 148
Seat ventilators 305
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 380
Turn signal lever 206
Fuel 221
Capacity 438
Fuel gauge 108
Fuel pump shut off system 390
Information 446
Refueling 221
Type 438
Warning light 395
Fuel consumption
Average fuel consumption after refueling 113
Average fuel economy 113
Current fuel consumption 113
Fuel filler door 221
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 409
Refueling 221
Fuel gauge 108
Fuel pump shut off system 390
Fuses 377

G

Gauges 108
Gear positions 114
Gear Shift Indicator 205
G-force 114
Glove box 311
Glove box light 311
Grocery bag hooks 313

H

Headlight cleaners 217
Headlights 212
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 214
Light switch 212
Replacing light bulbs 380
Head restraints 152
Head-up display 118
Heated steering wheel 305
Heaters
Air conditioning system 298
Heated steering wheel 305
Outside rear view mirrors 299
Seat heaters 305
High-voltage components 90
Hill-start assist control 285
Hood 345
Open 345
Pop Up Hood 52
Hooks
Cargo hooks 313
Coat hooks 317
Grocery bag hooks 313
Retaining hooks (floor mat) 30
Horn 154
Hybrid battery (traction battery)
Location 90
Specification 438
Warning message 93
Hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents 93
Hybrid system 87
Emergency shut off system 93
Energy monitor/consumption screen 123
EV drive mode 190
High voltage components 90
Hybrid electric vehicle driving tips 291
Hybrid System Indicator 122
Hybrid system precautions 90

If the hybrid system will not start 407
Overheating 430
Power (ignition) switch 186
Regenerative braking 88
Starting the hybrid system 186
Hybrid System Indicator 122
Hybrid transmission 199
M mode 205
Paddle shift switches 204, 205
Snow mode 203

I

Identification
Engine 437
Vehicle 436
Ignition switch (engine switch) 183
Auto power off function 185
Changing the engine switch modes. 185
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 382
Starting the engine 183
Ignition switch (power switch) 186
Auto power off function 189
Changing the power switch modes . 189
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 382
Starting the hybrid system 186
Illuminated entry system 309
Immobilizer system 95
Indicators 104
Initialization
Items to initialize 459
Maintenance 351
Multi-information display 116
Power windows 160
Tire pressure warning system 360
Inside rear view mirror 155
Instrument panel light control 111
Interior lights 308
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 98
ISOFIX rigid anchors 68, 80

J

Jack
Positioning a floor jack 345
Vehicle-equipped jack 365
Jack handle 365
Jam protection function
Front seats 148
Power windows 159

K

Keyless entry
Smart entry & start system 140
Wireless remote control 130
Keys 128
Battery-saving function 142
Electronic key 128
Engine switch 183
If the electronic key does not operate properly 410
If you lose your keys 409
Key number plate 128
Keyless entry 132, 140
Mechanical key 128
Power switch 186
Replacing the battery 375
Warning buzzer 141
Wireless remote control 130
Knee airbags 38, 46

L

Lane Tracing Assist (LTA) 239
Operation 239
Warning messages 247
Language (multi-information display) 116
LDH (Lexus Dynamic Handling system) 285
Lever

Auxiliary catch lever 345
Hood lock release lever 345
Shift lever 192, 199
Turn signal lever 206
Wiper lever 217
Lexus climate concierge 296
Lexus Connected Services 83
Lexus Dynamic Handling system (LDH) 285
Lexus parking assist-sensor 264
Warning message 266
Lexus Safety System + ... 224
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 214
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 251
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 239
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 229
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 248
License plate lights 212
Light switch 212
Replacing light bulbs 380
Light bulbs
Replacing 380
Wattage 445
Lights
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 214
Headlight switch 212
Illuminated entry system 309
Interior lights list 308
Interior lights 308
Personal lights 310
Replacing light bulbs 380
Trunk light 138
Turn signal lever 206
Vanity lights 315
Wattage 445
Welcome light illumination control 213
List of storage features 311
Low profile tire 357
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 239
Operation 239
Warning messages 247
Luggage cover 163

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions 343
Maintenance data 436
Maintenance requirements 341
Malfunction indicator lamp 392
Master warning light 395
Matt paint care guide 332, 336, 338
Meter
Changing the display 111
Head-up display 118
Indicators 104
Instrument panel light control 111
Meters 108
Multi-information display 112
Operating the meter control switches 113
Settings 116
Warning lights 391
Warning message 399
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 155
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 299
Outside rear view mirrors 156
Vanity mirrors 315
Multi-information display 112
Audio system-linked 116
Drive information 113
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 251
Eco Driving Indicator 106
Energy monitor 123
Gear positions 114
G-force 114
Hybrid System Indicator 106
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 244
Navigation system-linked 115
Rear wing position 115

Settings 116
Suggestion function 117
Switching the display 113
Tire pressure 359
Warning message 399

N

nanoe™ X 302
Navigation system-linked display ... 115, 118

O

Odometer 108
Oil
Differential oil 443
Engine oil 439
Opener
Fuel filler door 221
Hood 345
Trunk 138
Other interior features 315
Outside door handle lights 308
Outside rear view mirrors 156
Adjustment 156
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 271
Folding 157
Linked mirror function when reversing 157
Mirror position memory 148
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 299
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 275
Outside temperature 108, 110
Overheating 428, 430

P

Package tray 56
Paddle shift switches ... 197, 198, 204, 205
Parking assist sensors 264
Parking brake 207
Indicator 394
Operation 207
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 209
Warning message 208
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 229
Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system 232
Function 229
Warning light 393
Warning message 400
Personal lights 308
PKSA (Parking Support Alert)
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 275
Pollen removal mode 302
Pop-up display 110
Pop Up Hood 52
Power control unit 90
Power control unit coolant 351
Capacity 441
Checking 351
Preparing and checking before winter 293
Power easy access system 148
Power outlet 315
Power steering (Electric power steering system) 285
Warning light 392
Warning message 400
Power switch (engine switch) 183, 186
Auto power off function 185, 189
Changing the power switch (engine switch) modes 189
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 382
Starting the hybrid system (engine) 183, 186
Power windows 159
Door lock linked window operation ... 161
Jam protection function 159
Operation 159

Window lock switch....162
Pre-Collision System (PCS)....229
Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system....232
Function....229
Warning light....393
Warning message....400

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range)....251
Radiator....353
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function....276
RCTA....275
RCTA Function....276
RCTA function....276
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)....275
Rear turn signal lights....206
Replacing light bulbs....380
Turn signal lever....206
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror....155
Outside rear view mirrors....156
Rear window defogger....299
Refueling....221
Capacity....438
Fuel types....438
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened....409
Opening the fuel tank cap....221
Regenerative braking....88
Replacing
Electronic key battery....375
Fuses....377
Light bulbs....380
Tires....364
Rev indicator....109
Rev peak....110
Road Sign Assist (RSA)....248
RSA (Road Sign Assist)....248
Run-flat tires....358, 405

S

Seat belt reminder light....395
Seat belts....33
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt....325
Emergency Locking Retractor....35
How to wear your seat belt....34
How your child should wear the seat belt....34
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use....33
Reminder light and buzzer....395
Seat belt guide....35, 36
Seat belt pretensioners....36
SRS warning light....392
Seat heaters....305
Seat lights....308
Seat position memory....148
Seats....146
Adjustment precautions....146
Adjustment....146
Child seats/child restraint system installation....58, 70
Cleaning....324
Driving position memory....148
Head restraints....152
Jam protection function....148
Power easy access system....148
Properly sitting in the seat....31
Seat heaters....305
Seat position memory....148
Seat ventilators....305
Seat ventilators....305
Sensor
AHB (Automatic High Beam)....214
Automatic headlight system....212
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....272

Inside rear view mirror 155
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 98
Lexus parking assist 264
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 239
Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) 272
Radar sensor 224
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 218
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 272
Service plug 90
Service reminder indicators 391
Shift lever
Automatic transmission 192
Hybrid transmission 199
Shift lever light 308
Shift position and gear position 108
Side airbags 38, 46
Side mirrors 156
Adjustment 156
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 271
Folding 157
Linked mirror function when reversing 157
Mirror position memory 148
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 275
Side turn signal lights 206
Replacing light bulbs 380
Turn signal lever 206
Side windows 159
Slip indicator 393
Smart entry & start system 140
Antenna location 140
Entry functions 132
Starting the engine 183
Starting the hybrid system 186
Snow mode 197, 203
Snow tires 293
Soft top roof 163
Luggage cover 163
Operation 163
"SOS" button 83
Spark plug 442
Specifications 436
Speedometer 108
Sport mode 263
Steering wheel 154
Adjustment 154
Auto tilt away 154
Heated steering wheel 305
Steering wheel position memory 148
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal 285
Replacing light bulbs 380
Storage feature 311
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck 434
Sunshade 317
Sun visors 315
Switches
"SOS" button 83
Active rear wing switch 280
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 214
Brake Hold switch 210
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) switch 272
Cruise control switch 251
Door lock switches 135
Driving mode select switch 263
Driving position memory switches 148
Emergency flashers switch 382
Engine switch 183
EV drive mode switch 190
Heated steering wheel switch 305
HUD (Head-up display) switch 118
Ignition switch 183, 186
Instrument panel light control switch 111
Light switches 212
Meter control switches 113
Outside rear view mirror switches 156
Paddle shift switches 197, 198, 204, 205
Parking brake switch 207
PCS OFF switch 232

Power door lock switch 135
Power switch 186
Power window switches 159
RCTA switch 276
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 298
Roof switch 163
Seat heater switches 305
Seat ventilator switches 305
Snow mode switch 197, 203
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch 154
Tire pressure warning reset switch 361
Trunk opener main switch 139
Trunk opener switch 138
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch 251
VSC OFF switch 287
Window lock switch 162
Windshield wipers and washer switch 217

T

Tachometer 108
Variable red zone 110
Tail lights 212
Light switch 212
Replacing light bulbs 380
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 97
Double locking system 96
Engine immobilizer system 95
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 98
Tire inflation pressure 371
Maintenance data 444
Tire inflation pressure display function 359
Warning light 396
Tire pressure warning system 359
Function 359
Initializing 360
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 360
Registering ID codes 362
Warning light 396
Tires 357
Chains 294
Checking 357
If you have a flat tire 405
Inflation pressure 371
Replacing 364
Rotating tires 358
Run-flat tires 358, 405
Size 444
Snow tires 293
Tire inflation pressure display function 359
Tire pressure warning system 359
Warning light 396
Tools 365, 421
Towing
Emergency towing 385
Towing eyelet 388
Trailer towing 182
Traction battery (hybrid battery) 90
Hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents 93
Location 90
Specification 438
Warning message 93
Traction Control (TRC) 284
Traction motor (electric motor) 87
Trailer towing 182
Transmission
Automatic transmission 192
Driving mode select switch 263
Hybrid transmission 199
M mode 198, 205
Paddle shift switches 197, 198, 204, 205
Snow mode 197, 203
TRC (Traction Control) 284
Trip meters 108

Trunk 136
Smart entry & start system 138
Trunk features 313
Trunk grip 139
Trunk light 138
Trunk opener main switch 139
Trunk opener switch 138
Wireless remote control 138
Trunk light 138
Turn signal lights 206
Replacing light bulbs 380
Turn signal lever 206

U

Units 116

V

Vanity lights 315
Wattage 445
Vanity mirrors 315
Variable Gear Ratio Steering (VGRS) 285
VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 285
Vehicle data recordings 8
Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management (VDIM) 285
Vehicle identification number 436
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 284
Ventilators (seat ventilators) 305
VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering) 285
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 284

W

Warning buzzers
Approach warning 257
Brake system 391, 394
Downshifting 198, 205
Lexus parking assist 264
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 239
Open door 134, 135
Open hood 135
Open soft top roof 164
Open trunk 135
Open window 135
Seat belt reminder 395
Warning label 90
Warning lights 391
ABS 392
Brake hold operated indicator 394
Brake Override System 394
Brake system 391, 394
Charging system 391
Electric power steering 392
High coolant temperature 396
Low engine oil pressure 391
Low fuel level 395
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 393
Malfunction indicator lamp 392
Master warning light 395
Parking brake indicator 394
Pre-collision system 393
Seat belt reminder light 395
Slip indicator 393
SRS 392
Tire pressure 396
Warning messages 399
Warning reflector storage belt 313
Washer 217
Checking 353
Headlight cleaners 217
Preparing and checking before winter 293
Switch 217
Washing and waxing 320, 336
Wheels 372
Replacing wheels 364
Size 444
Window lock switch 162

Windows.....159
Power windows.....159
Rear window defogger.....299
Washer.....217
Windshield wipers.....217
Position.....219
Rain-sensing windshield wipers.....217
Winter driving tips.....293
Wireless remote control.....130
Battery-Saving Function.....142
Locking/Unlocking.....130
Replacing the battery.....375

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

- Audio/video system
- Navigation system
- Lexus parking assist monitor

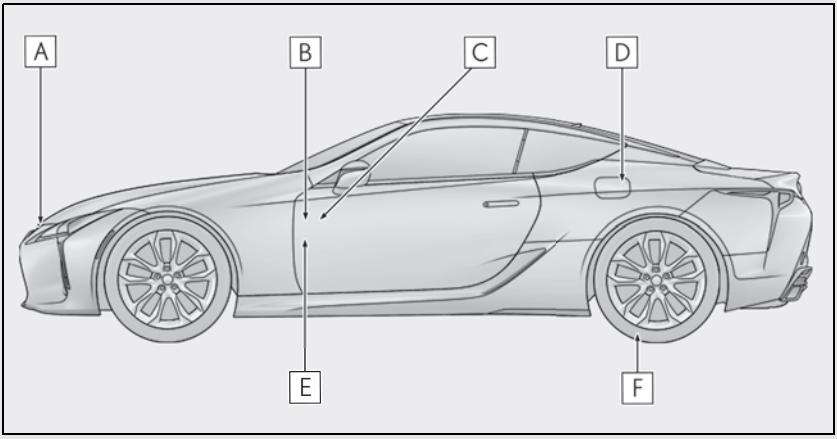
Certification

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)



C3-056

GAS STATION INFORMATION



A Auxiliary catch lever (→P.345)

B Trunk opener (→P.138)

C Fuel filler door opener (→P.222)

D Fuel filler door (→P.222)

E Hood lock release lever (→P.345)

F Tire inflation pressure (→P.444)

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	82 L (21.7 gal., 18.0 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P.438
Cold tire inflation pressure		P.444
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		P.439
Engine oil type		P.439

Publication No. OM11739E
Part No. 01999-11739
Printed in Japan 01-2508 O
LC 500 / LC 500h (豪州E)